

## The English Tenses

### Exercise Book

---

Phil Williams

### Table of Contents

Introduction

How to Use This Book

Tense Forms

Forming the Past

1. Past Simple
2. Past Continuous
3. Past Perfect
4. Past Perfect Continuous

Forming the Present

1. Present Simple
2. Present Continuous
3. Present Perfect
4. Present Perfect Continuous

Forming the Future

1. Future Simple
2. Future Continuous
3. Future Perfect
4. Future Perfect Continuous

Forming Mixed Tenses

1. Mixed Simple Tenses
2. Mixed Continuous Tenses
3. Mixed Perfect Tenses
4. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

Tenses in Use

1. The Past in Use
2. The Present in Use
3. The Future in Use
4. Mixed Tenses in Use

Infinitives and Participles

1. Identifying Bare Infinitives

2. Participles

3. Mixed Verb Types

A Note from the Author

Also by Phil Williams

Answers

Full Exercise List

Copyright

Introduction

Welcome to The English Tenses Exercise Book – a collection of 161 exercises designed to drill the 12 key tenses of English: the past , present and future in their simple , continuous , perfect and perfect continuous forms. This book can be used for general, independent practice, though the exercises roughly match the guidelines laid out in The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide .

This book is designed to make you fully comfortable with forming and using the tenses, both on their own and in conjunction with other tenses. Many other excellent grammar guides and exercise books exist, but it is rare that they offer more than one or two exercises on a particular topic. This book does the opposite: the topic is narrow, but the quantity of exercises and number of examples is vast. Some examples repeat similar ideas or themes – this is to reinforce lessons, demonstrate different usage and (in some cases) provide extra continuity or engagement.

As a writer and teacher for over fifteen years, I have devised these exercises and examples with the aim of presenting English in natural use, considering various styles and subjects. You will find everyday sentences and more unusual examples; short stories and non-fiction passages; academic English and business English; and more. Regardless of your level, my hope is that the examples will help familiarise you with the tenses across a broad range of usage. The vocabulary I have chosen is generally at an intermediate level, occasionally using more basic or advanced language, and the majority of verbs come from lists of those most commonly used. The prose exercises particularly aim to present more varied and fluent use of English, and for wider exposure, some examples have been included to demonstrate how a particular tense could be used. Please do complete the book with an accompanying dictionary if necessary and feel free to get in touch if anything is unclear.

And if you find some examples lean towards life in an English seaside town, that reflects my own setting, and the setting for my website, English Lessons Brighton .

How to Use This Book

The exercises in this book primarily concern verb forms, asking you to choose and correctly form the appropriate tense for each sentence. Sentences are either presented in isolated lists or in prose format. Instructions are given for each exercise as to the tense or tenses being tested, usually indicated in bold .

These exercises usually provide a space for you to fill in the correct tense. The information in brackets lets you know which verb to use and whether any additional words are necessary, such as a subject or adverbs. The spaces are standard sizes depending on the exercise and do not specifically indicate how long the answer should be.

The book is organised into two main sections, Tense Forms and Tenses in Use . These are divided into groups covering the past , present and future tenses, and each also contains mixed tense exercises. Within each grouping, you will find more basic list exercises and more complex prose exercises for comparative use. You may complete the exercises in any order you choose, but be aware that the book becomes more complex as it builds to more comparative use at the end of each section, particularly with the mixed tenses exercises. To present more natural use, there are occasional passive or modal examples to demonstrate wider contexts of the tenses. An additional section, Infinitives and Participles , is included at the back to specifically drill understanding of the verb forms that help complete the more complicated tenses.

You can complete these exercises mentally, but I recommend writing your answers on a piece of paper or in a notebook so that you can check them against the answers. The links at the bottom of each exercise will take you directly to the answers for that exercise, where you will also find links to go back to the exercise. A full list of exercises can be found at the back, if you wish to quickly find a particular topic.

The answers usually demonstrate complete correct sentences. Corrected sentences are shown in italics , occasional highlighted form changes are shown in bold and additional information is given in (brackets).

I hope you will enjoy these exercises and find them educational – now let's get started!

## Tense Forms

The following section drills forming the tenses, to get you used to quickly identifying and using different verb forms in the past, present and future. Each section includes exercises for the simple, continuous, perfect and perfect continuous, covering affirmative and negative statements, questions with and without question words, negative questions and mixed tenses.

The focus here is always on the required tense form. This means that the example sentences in this section are not necessarily the only way to express these points, but are used for illustrative purposes. This is particularly true of the perfect and perfect continuous forms, which can be relatively rare in practice, and usually require specific contexts to make complete sense. The mixed tenses passages are designed to include as many instances of these forms as possible, though in everyday use such passages may be expressed in simpler ways.

### Forming the Past

#### 1. Past Simple

##### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the past simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: I / to know / not / where he lived
- A: I did not know where he lived.
- 1. the postman / to be / late again
- 2. Felicity / to grow / tomatoes in her garden
- 3. he / to understand / not / the project
- 4. we / to fail / to finish in time
- 5. they / to give / not / us the bag of flour
- 6. Liam / to ask / not / the question politely
- 7. the hummingbirds / to build / a nest in our attic
- 8. the piano / to look / too old to use
- 9. she / to say / we / to be / wrong
- 10. I / to pick / not / the right flowers
- 11. our cake / to taste / not / right
- 12. we / to drive / all the way to Scotland
- 13. you / to bring / not / the green umbrella
- 14. they / to arrest / the wrong man
- 15. the lady of the manor / to write / not / a convincing memoir

##### 1.1 Answers

##### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

Convert the following past simple statements into past simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be.

For example:

- Q: We went to Bali on our honeymoon.
- A: Did you go to Bali on your honeymoon?

1. Our dogs were very messy.
2. The chef cooked something spectacular.
3. I read all three of my textbooks this weekend.
4. She asked him to go on a date.
5. You knew about the rotten fruit!
6. The priests demanded that the film be banned.
7. I bought a new bicycle.
8. He hoovered the house because of the dust.
9. The children played on the swings.
10. She was very disappointed with the presentation.
11. We misjudged the time it would take to get to the party.
12. I lost my keys again.
13. The story got a lot more interesting after the main character died.
14. They sent a replacement cabinet after ours broke.
15. The council banned parking on my road.
16. She ran a marathon last spring.
17. It was the hottest day of the year.
18. Ulric visited the doctor for the first time.
19. My computer stopped working.
20. They prepared for the storm months in advance.

## 1.2 Answers

## 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

Convert the following past simple statements into past simple questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be.

For example:

- Q: He purchased two bottles of wine. (what)
  - A: What did he purchase?
1. I helped the old man in the market. (where)
  2. Julian sang a beautiful ballad. (what)
  3. We searched for the doctor in the jungle. (where)
  4. She was very angry because of the train delays. (why)
  5. After the competition, everyone went for ice cream. (when)
  6. They stole the gold necklaces, but not the silver ones. (which)
  7. I gave the homeless man £20. (how much)
  8. The critic hated the director's latest film. (what)

9. He had a disagreement with the man who sold him his car. (who)
10. The great oak tree was cut down yesterday. (what)
11. Tyler wanted to free the guinea pigs. (what)
12. The family took the bottles to the new recycling centre. (where)
13. The girl believed in magic, but not dwarves. (what)
14. We tied the knots by following the instructions on the internet. (how / to tie)
15. Someone ate her last cupcake! (who)

### 1.3 Answers

### 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the past simple negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ his trumpet? (Timmy / to play)
  - A: Why did Timmy not play his trumpet?
1. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (he / to tell)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ like an easy task? (it / to seem)
  3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the students? (Mindy / to take)
  4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ locked? (the door / to be)
  5. How \_\_\_\_\_ there in time? (we / to get)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ any water on the hike? (they / to bring)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ supposed to be in Italy this week? (she / to be)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ for very long? (the spiders / to live)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ sad about the game being cancelled? (you / to be)
  10. When \_\_\_\_\_ a manager? (the football team / to have)

### 1.4 Answers

### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

Complete the following sentences in the appropriate past simple affirmative, negative or question form , without contractions, using the information provided in brackets.

For example:

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_ happy with the result? (she / to be / not)
  - A: Was she not happy with the result?
1. We \_\_\_\_\_ very good at sports. (to be / not)
  2. The Morrisons \_\_\_\_\_ too many chickens. (to own)
  3. Herman \_\_\_\_\_ with his neighbours. (to get on / not)
  4. Where \_\_\_\_\_ my car? (I / to park)

5. \_\_\_\_\_ that new ballet? (you / to see)
6. The builders \_\_\_\_\_ a large breakfast. (to eat)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a good swimmer? (she / to be / not)
8. The lady \_\_\_\_\_ to buy the dress. (to decide / not)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio? (they / to listen / not)
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ all the way around the park. (to run)

#### 1.5 Answers

1. Past Continuous

#### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the past continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: the man / to run / for his train

• A: The man was running for his train.

1. the giraffe / to lie down
2. they / to draw / not / pictures of fruit
3. it / to get / dark outside
4. you / to tell / me about your new phone
5. they / to fly / not / over Mongolia
6. I / to clean / the pans when the police arrived
7. the animals / to dig / a hole
8. Kyle / to read / not / novels this summer
9. we / to paint / the house all day
10. no one / to help / with the display
11. the computer / to load / not / properly
12. you / to sleep / not / in the right room
13. she / to brush / her teeth
14. I / to test / the light switch
15. the rodents / to plan / something

#### 2.1 Answers

#### 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

Form complete past continuous yes or no questions, without question words, using the information provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: he / hang / washing / outside

• A: Was he hanging his washing outside?

1. they / to build / a new school
2. Lily / to hide / something
3. the days / to get / longer
4. you / to ask / about my van
5. the light / to work / when you got home
6. his father / to try / to play the piano
7. the students / to travel / through Bolivia
8. everyone / to wait / for me
9. I / to say / the right word
10. the sailors / to load / the correct boat
11. the bus / to stop / everywhere
12. we / to sing / in tune
13. Rupert and Jim / to fight / again
14. the sun / to shine / on your wedding day
15. the trains / to arrive / on time last weekend

## 2.2 Answers

## 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following past continuous statements into past continuous questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They were cycling in Sweden. (where)
  - A: Where were they cycling?
1. The students were doing very well. (how)
  2. Tim was studying French. (what)
  3. You were flying to Ireland. (where)
  4. The cat was running away. (why)
  5. They were singing the national anthem. (what)
  6. I was living in America for three years. (how long)
  7. Someone was leaving dirty dishes out. (who)
  8. Her husband was watching a detective show on TV. (what)
  9. The tour guide was taking them to the cathedral. (where)
  10. Hailey was smiling because she had flowers. (why)
  11. The Japanese investors were meeting with someone. (who)
  12. The restaurant was getting crowded because it was so busy. (why)
  13. The new shoes were arriving at noon. (when)

14. Alison was preparing a banner for the carnival. (what)

15. We were picking up bad habits from our friends. (what)

### 2.3 Answers

### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past continuous negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio? (you / to listen)

• A: Why were you not listening to the radio?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the party? (you / to enjoy)
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ them? (the man / to show)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the right pen? (I / to hold)
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ warmer? (the weather / to get)
5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ during the cruise? (the boat / to stop)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the correct ingredients? (you / to use)
7. When \_\_\_\_\_? (the bell / to ring)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ more sandwiches? (they / to bring)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ at the back of the class? (he / to sit)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher? (the children / to follow)

### 2.4 Answers

### 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate past continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

The Ice Cream Van

Simon: Do you know what I just saw? An ice cream van (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) down our road.

Carl: Really? (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to sell) ice cream? It's November!

Simon: Well, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to play) music, so I think they wanted customers.

Carl: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the van / to go) to the beach?

Simon: It couldn't have been; (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the driver / to head / not) in the right direction.

Carl: Then where (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to plan) to park?

Simon: Hmm. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (something / happen / not) in the town centre earlier today?

Carl: Of course! (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / open) a new sports shop this morning!

Simon: Oh! I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) about going to that, but I decided not to.

Carl: But (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to expect / not) ice cream! Let's go!

### 2.5 Answers

1. Past Perfect



### 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the past perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: it / to be / twenty long years since he was there
  - A: It had been twenty long years since he was there.
1. they / to start / the party early
  2. it / to snow / overnight
  3. the delivery truck / to park / outside
  4. I / to hear / not / about the Incas before
  5. you / to warn / me not to go there, but I did
  6. she / to arrive / too late for the exam
  7. Simone realised / she / to listen / not / to this tune yet
  8. before finding the lecture hall, we / to go / to Room 2b
  9. we / to agree / not / on a price for the painting by noon
  10. he / to read / the book thirteen times
  11. the picnic was ruined; the rats / to eat / everything
  12. the shop / to close down / for good
  13. I / to ask / not / for a map, because I knew the way
  14. she / to forget / where the cups were kept
  15. Ryan went to see a film, but they / to sell / all the tickets

### 3.1 Answers

### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following past perfect statements into past perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Use the information in brackets when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Maria had studied all night to pass the test.
  - A: Had Maria studied all night to pass the test?
1. They had been to California before.
  2. I had already asked you about your toe.
  3. He hadn't worn his coat to the park.
  4. The horse had eaten already.
  5. Someone had broken the window.
  6. The mice had infested the house.
  7. I had never been able to juggle.
  8. Roger had repaired the bicycle.

9. Jonas had taken the wrong bag.
10. The cleaners hadn't emptied the bins.

### 3.2 Answers

### 3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following past perfect statements into past perfect questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They had driven to the coast for the weekend. (where)
  - A: Where had they driven to for the weekend?
1. Lisa had added something to the soup. (what)
  2. The cows had escaped from the field. (how)
  3. We had discussed many topics in the previous two lessons. (what)
  4. I had put my glasses on the table. (where)
  5. The clock had stopped at 1 p.m. (when)
  6. She had changed her clothes during the break. (when)
  7. The President had appointed a new secretary. (who)
  8. Harry had heard something behind the shed. (what)
  9. All the eggs had gone. (where)
  10. We had stayed in an excellent hotel last time. (where)

### 3.3 Answers

### 3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past perfect negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ your homework? (you / to finish)
  - A: Why had you not finished your homework?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ her about the invitation? (he / to tell)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ in Boston? (where / Charlene / to be)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ together? (the team / to work)
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ the cooker before going out? (I / to turn off)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ the radiator to the right temperature? (the plumber / to set)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ in his report? (what / the night manager / to include)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 a.m.? (why / the alarm / to go off)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ to the soup? (what / the chef / to add)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ the situation clearly? (I / to explain)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ the car's engine before travelling? (why / they / to check)

### 3.4 Answers

### 3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate past perfect affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### A Fresh Cake

Stephen was looking forward to a freshly baked cake. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to leave) it baking for 45 minutes now. This was the final step in a process (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (Stephen / start) four hours earlier, after (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to suggest) that he try a new recipe (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to find). (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / not / to plan) to spend the day baking, but (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to buy) all the ingredients already, and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / not / to make) homemade cake for a long time, so he agreed to give it a go.

Once he started, he realised it was actually good fun. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to measure) everything carefully before combining the ingredients, and then made a terrible mess mixing the batter. It was too sticky. His wife asked: (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / he / not / to use) more flour? (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / read) the recipe correctly?

Eventually, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (Stephen / to wrestle) the mixture under control, and he cleaned the whole kitchen while they waited for it to rise. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to turn out) to be quite simple really. When he put the mix in the oven, he asked himself, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / he / not / to try) this sooner?

After half an hour, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (the kitchen / to start) to smell amazing.

Finally, 45 minutes were almost over, and Stephen's mouth was watering. He opened the oven to find (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (the cake / to rise) beautifully, and (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to develop) a firm, golden top. They would definitely enjoy this, and Stephen admitted, (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to be) right. It was a good idea.

### 3.5 Answers

#### 1. Past Perfect Continuous

#### 4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the past perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: the circus / to come / to town for twenty years

• A: The circus had been coming to town for twenty years.

1. they / to travel / all night
2. I / to listen / not / during the lecture
3. she / dance / with Raul
4. the bird / to sing / for hours
5. it / to snow / not / before they left the hotel
6. the traffic lights / to work / not / that morning
7. Sidney / to learn / to play the bassoon
8. strange symbols / to appear / all over town
9. the price of cauliflower / to rise / throughout January
10. Tina / to wait / for the right man
11. we / to go / to the same holiday villa for years
12. wild dogs / to steal / from the pantry
13. the children / to practise / not / their handwriting

14. they / to camp / not / in Wales before

15. I / to hope / for a good result

#### 4.1 Answers

#### 4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following past statements into past perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Use the information in brackets when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: It had been raining during the night.

• A: Had it been raining during the night?

1. We had been watching Channel 4.
2. The garden seemed dry. (Jim / to water)
3. There was cat hair in the bedroom. (the cat / to sleep)
4. They had been training together for a long time.
5. The carpenter had new chairs in the window. (to make)
6. I had been snoring in my sleep.
7. She knew what they said in their phone call. (to listen)
8. The door had been closing on its own.
9. She had received help with her studies. (Winston / to help)
10. The bracelet had been sitting on the table all along.

#### 4.2 Answers

#### 4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following past statements into past perfect continuous questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: They had been searching for cheap train tickets for hours. (how long)

• A: How long had they been searching for cheap train tickets (for)?

1. She had been hiding the cake. (where)
2. We had been listening to classical music in the car. (what)
3. The dog had been barking at squirrels. (what)
4. Clive had been planning to go on holiday that April. (when)
5. The man had been playing the trumpet all morning. (how long)
6. Mum had been preparing burritos for dinner. (what)
7. I had been sitting on a wet patch of grass. (where)
8. I had been working at the weekend because I wouldn't say "no". (why)
9. They had been thinking about banning whistles. (what)

10. Fiona had been cooking bagels in the oven before she bought the toaster. (how)

#### 4.3 Answers

#### 4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past perfect continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: What \_\_\_\_\_ at school? (they / to learn)

• A: What had they not been learning at school?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ in the right space? (we / to park)
2. Where \_\_\_\_\_ a mess? (the boys / to make)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to the teacher? (she / to listen)
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_? (the water / to boil)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ fast enough? (I / to walk)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ all day? (it / to rain)
7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the books I gave her? (Lily / to read)
8. When \_\_\_\_\_ the truth? (the politician / to tell)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning? (they / to run)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the roses? (the gardener / to trim)

#### 4.4 Answers

#### 4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate past perfect continuous affirmative , negative or question form , without contractions, using the information in brackets.

A Ruined Allotment

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to rain) all night, we could tell. The allotment was flooded. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to warn / not) everyone about this for months? If they had listened, we could have built a shelter. But (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do) other things, like swimming in the lake. Besides, Barry kept arguing, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the potatoes / to grow / not) anyway. Why bother?

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the weather / to get) more unpredictable, that was the main problem. Some months we had no rain at all. As much as two months ago, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (people / to say) we might have a completely dry season. But I remembered the storms, three years ago, when I lost everything. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / not / to listen) when the forecasts offered warnings that time. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / I / not / to pay) more attention during that period? Back when it would have helped ... The same reason no one listened to me this time. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / to go) so well!

#### 4.5 Answers

Forming the Present

1. Present Simple

#### 5.1 Present Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the present simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: I / to eat / not / eggs every day

- A: I do not eat eggs every day.
1. Billy / to like / cats
  2. trains in Japan / always / to run / on time
  3. Tina / to drink / not / banana milkshakes
  4. the shopping centre / to open / every day at 6 a.m.
  5. all cookies / to taste / amazing
  6. I / to find / biology / interesting
  7. Fred and Shirley / to eat / not / after midnight
  8. unhappy employees / to be / not / good for business
  9. the last house on my street / to look / haunted
  10. my car / to have / climate control / but / it / to work / not
  11. flocks of birds / to fly / in interesting formations
  12. peanut butter and cheese / to go / not / well together
  13. reading books definitely / to make / you smarter
  14. we / to travel / not / to the lakes more than twice a year
  15. Grandma's stuffed animal collection / to scare / everyone who / to come / to visit

#### 5.1 Answers

#### 5.2 Present Simple Questions 1

Convert the following present simple statements into present simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

- Q: I own a red bicycle.
  - A: Do you own a red bicycle?
1. I am hungry.
  2. Lily listens to heavy metal music.
  3. All parrots have colourful feathers.
  4. The carnival is safe for children.
  5. Uncle Jeff knows the way to the beach.
  6. You speak a foreign language.
  7. I want another cup of tea.
  8. You are sure this milk is non-dairy.
  9. Howard always talks during class.
  10. Your parents live near your house.
  11. Exercise is important to you.
  12. The campers sleep in tents.

13. My cat seems fat because he is so fluffy.
14. Good grades matter if I want to be an artist.
15. The path under the bridge is safe at night.
16. Abigail works in the library.
17. I need to keep taking these pills.
18. This cauliflower smells strange.
19. Glass bottles are good for storing hot liquids.
20. That man is a friend of yours.

## 5.2 Answers

### 5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

Convert the following present simple statements into present simple questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

- Q: She lives in Spain now. (*where*)
  - A: Where does she live now?
1. There is something in your backpack. (*what*)
  2. The sun rises at 6 a.m. (*when*)
  3. You boil perfect eggs. (*how*)
  4. Brianne buys her hats in the market. (*where*)
  5. The boys play in the park every Tuesday. (*where*)
  6. We always visit the same café. (*why*)
  7. Michael always knows the answers to these questions. (*how*)
  8. You want to go to the cinema. (*when*)
  9. Your father works near here. (*where*)
  10. The running club meets on Saturday mornings. (*when*)
  11. Those teachers wear such smart clothes. (*why*)
  12. I have to do something to open this tin of beans. (*what*)
  13. The gardeners cut the grass twice a week. (*how often*)
  14. The cutlery goes in the middle drawer. (*which*)
  15. The children get home from school at 4 p.m. (*when*)

## 5.3 Answers

### 5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in present simple negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

- Q: What food \_\_\_\_\_? (you / to eat)
- A: What food do you not eat?
- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ milk? (that chocolate / to contain)
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the owner of this car? (he)
- 3. Which \_\_\_\_\_ a swimming pool? (hotel / to have)
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ expected before 7 p.m.? (the guests)
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ a good time to visit? (when)
- 6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ more tennis? (Ben / to play)
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ the colour of their bedroom? (they / to like)
- 8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the boss already? (she)
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_ right in this picture? (what / to look)
- 10. \_\_\_\_\_ if we go to the beach this weekend? (it / to matter)

#### 5.4 Answers

#### 5.5 Mixed Present Simple

Complete the following text with the appropriate present simple affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### Bonfire Night in Lewes

Every year on November 5th, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Lewes / to host) one of the largest bonfire nights in the UK. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (some people / to call) Lewes the "Bonfire Capital of the World". (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to be) so special about these evenings?

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the festivities / to mark) Guy Fawkes Night by bringing together bonfire societies from across Sussex. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (seven local societies / run) six separate parades and firework displays, but (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be / not) alone. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (the town / to draw in) as many as 30 other societies from across Sussex. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the evening / to be / not) a small event: up to 5,000 people take part in the celebrations, and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the town / to welcome) tens of thousands of spectators; as many as 80,000 one year!

On these evenings, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (the trains / take) a long time to queue for, and the locals might complain: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / these people / to go / not) somewhere else?! With a population of only 17,500, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the market town / to have / not) the facilities for such a big crowd.

(13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / so many people / to travel) so far for these parades?

(14) \_\_\_\_\_ (the history / to go) back a long way. In the past, the celebrations were more like riots, which gradually became the processions (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to see) today. Even now, (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (the evenings / to stir) controversy: many people ask that (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (the societies / to burn / not) effigies that cause offence. Between the many memorable evenings, the rich history and the media attention, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be / not / inevitable) that so many people should visit?

#### 5.5 Answers

1. Present Continuous

#### 6.1 Present Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the present continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: Freddie / to play / in the garden
- A: Freddie is playing in the garden.
- 1. my mother / to watch / the television



2. the cat / to sleep / on the sofa
3. it / to rain / not / anymore
4. the phone / to ring
5. you / to learn / very fast
6. we / to work / not / together today
7. the tap / to drip / again
8. I / to write / not / about the Egyptians
9. the nuns / to dance / to disco music
10. she / to sing / far too loudly
11. the plants / to grow / very fast
12. Oliver / to sleep / not / in his own bed
13. raccoons / to steal / from our bins
14. that man / to stare / at you
15. you / to sit / not / in the right seat

#### 6.1 Answers

#### 6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Tim plays the flute.
  - A: Is Tim playing the flute?
1. You are writing an essay.
  2. The council are building a new swimming pool.
  3. He is avoiding his boss.
  4. We are heading north.
  5. That girl is carrying too many books.
  6. Your son behaves well at school.
  7. I feel like I am catching a cold.
  8. Chelsea are winning the match.
  9. Melissa eats healthy food.
  10. There could be buns baking in the oven.
  11. Her pregnancy shows.
  12. The walls in our building are getting dirty.
  13. Our creative team generates a lot of ideas.

14. Henry is sharing his cake with everyone.
15. I could be looking at this picture the wrong way around.

## 6.2 Answers

## 6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following present continuous statements into present continuous questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Julie is applying to a college. (which)
  - A: Which college is Julie applying to?
1. I am trying to do something. (what)
  2. He is drilling into that wall. (why)
  3. Nancy is thinking about something. (what)
  4. We are walking to the casino. (where)
  5. They are investing their savings. (how)
  6. The business is expanding slowly. (why)
  7. Hank is storing his old photos in a strange box. (where)
  8. Something is drawing lots of birds to the garden. (what)
  9. The wind is blowing from the north. (which direction)
  10. The councillors are insisting on raising taxes. (why)
  11. The kitchen staff are preparing food for many guests. (how many)
  12. Lula is parking the car in the street. (where)
  13. The nurse is giving you medicine. (what)
  14. Something is making that awful sound. (what)
  15. Thirteen visitors are waiting in the hall. (how many)

## 6.3 Answers

## 6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in present continuous negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Which dish \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner? (we / to prepare)
  - A: Which dish are we not preparing for dinner?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ his dog? (Charles / to bring)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ enough homework? (the teachers / to set)
  3. Which ingredient \_\_\_\_\_? (I / to taste)
  4. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the children? (she / to take)
  5. Why \_\_\_\_\_ their juice? (my children / to drink)

6. \_\_\_\_\_ wet in the rain? (the bikes / to get)
7. Which places \_\_\_\_\_ on your honeymoon? (you / to visit)
8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ in this room? (the towels / to dry)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ her boyfriend? (she / to miss)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the poetry competition? (Joe and Kyle / to enter)

#### 6.4 Answers

#### 6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate present continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

Proud Mr Duff

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Duff / to build) a new shed in his garden. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to borrow) tools from his neighbour, Mr Benton, but (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to work / not) well because Mr Duff has not fully charged them. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the shed / to fall) behind schedule. Mr Duff's wife has asked, "(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / to go / not) to plan?"

Mr Duff is a proud man. Though the problem persists, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to admit / not) it, so over time (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to ask) more questions about the delayed shed. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (winter / to come), and while Mr Duff works on the shed (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the family / to store) their outdoor things under the porch.

"(10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to do) something wrong," Mrs Duff insists.

"(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to talk) about?" Mr Duff replies, stubbornly.

(12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the situation / to worry) Mrs Duff. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (her husband / to get) upset and (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to spend) too much time out there. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (how / she / to go) to help? She decides to ask Mr Benton.

Mr Benton suggests that (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Duff / to take / not) proper care of the tools. Benton listens, and realises (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (the tools / to make) the wrong noises. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the man / to charge / not) them properly?! Knowing Mr Duff is proud, Mr Benton suggests Mrs Duff charge the tools at night, when (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (her husband / to watch / not). She does, and soon the construction speeds up. (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (everything / to come) together – just in time.

#### 6.5 Answers

##### 1. Present Perfect

##### 7.1 Present Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the present perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: the engineer / to repair / the van

• A: The engineer has repaired the van.

1. Remi / to choose / her dress carefully

2. the sailors / to paint / the boat bright green

3. the dentists / to order / a new chair

4. my father / to retire / not / yet

5. you / to create / a wonderful display

6. the Robinsons / to prepare / not / the table for dinner

7. we / to pay / the delivery man for the pizza

8. I / to refuse / to take part in the parade

9. the police / to identify / not / the thief
10. she / to mention / her family's wealth many times
11. Edward / to believe / not / in Santa since he was young
12. the bus service / to improve / not
13. I / recommend / this movie many times
14. the storm / to destroy / our fence
15. my parents / to decide / not / which house to buy

#### 7.1 Answers

#### 7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: She has visited over 50 countries.
  - A: Has she visited over 50 countries?
1. You have seen the newspaper this morning.
  2. The weather is getting better. (to improve)
  3. All the boxes are gone. (they / to take)
  4. We have got some bread.
  5. Drew has told you about her exam results.
  6. The postman has delivered your package.
  7. Your wife has agreed to a colour for the walls.
  8. I'm unsure if we've brought enough cheese.
  9. The teacher set some homework.
  10. The grass looks like it has been cut. (the gardener / to cut)
  11. Carl and Harry spent all their holiday money.
  12. You must listen to this new song. (to hear)
  13. My mother is going to the market.
  14. I understand this correctly.
  15. All the teams are submitting their final answers.

#### 7.2 Answers

#### 7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following statements into present perfect questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They have offered us a free box of muffins. (what)

• A: What have they offered you?

1. I received this package. (why)
2. You have not been in the office this month. (where)
3. Rebecca did something with her hair. (what)
4. Something fell out of the basket. (what)
5. The farmer has raised many pigs. (how many)
6. The club has closed. (why)
7. My sweets are gone. (where)
8. You have chosen some socks to wear. (which)
9. The scientist has never been wrong. (when)
10. The company supplied us with recycled paper. (which paper)
11. She has failed to convince them. (why)
12. This musician remains unknown. (how)
13. You put my violin somewhere. (where)
14. You have fed something to those ducks. (what)
15. Sally flew to Portugal. (why)

### 7.3 Answers

### 7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the present perfect negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: \_\_\_\_\_ to Belgium? (who / to be)

• A: Who has not been to Belgium?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the news? (you / to hear)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ him? (why / his sister / to forgive)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ? (what / the mice / to eat)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ yet? (the meeting / to finish)
5. Which rooms \_\_\_\_\_ ? (they / to clean)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ enough? (these people / to suffer)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ more umbrellas? (why / the store / to sell)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ in this report? (what problems / the team / to analyse)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ about the cinema? (Terry / to reply)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ of? (what / we / to think)

### 7.4 Answers

### 7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate present perfect affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

### Molly's Travels

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Molly / to return) after a year of travelling. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to bring) her family many gifts, but they are more interested in her stories. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / she / to be)? What fascinating sights (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to see)?

"(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to experience) many things," Molly says. "(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to wasted / not) the time I had. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to read / not) my blog about it?"

Most of her family read the blog, but (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (her Dad / to find / not) the time yet. He asks, "What exotic foods (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to try)?"

"(10) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to write) so many things about the dishes in China already!" Molly says. "(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (one blog post / to reach) 5,000 visitors so far."

Everyone congratulates her. Dad wonders, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / so many people / to visit) Molly's blog? He did not know she was a talented writer.

"Which country did you like most?" Mum asks.

"America is nice," Molly says, "but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (Australia / to steal) my heart for good. (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to enjoy / not) better weather anywhere else in my life! (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (my new friends / to invite) me back to Melbourne already."

(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to make) new friends across the world, to go with this successful blog? (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (travelling / to change) his daughter, Dad can see. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / his shy little girl / to go)? Perhaps now the better question is, (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / she / to be / not)? He is happy for her, though, and (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to learn) his lesson. Next time she goes away, he will pay more attention!

### 7.5 Answers

#### 1. Present Perfect Continuous

#### 8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the present perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: Billy / to feed / the ducks all week

• A: Billy has been feeding the ducks all week.

1. we / to live / here for eight years
2. I / to listen / to pop music
3. it / to get / harder to park on my road
4. those boys / to sit / there for hours
5. Ferdinand / to take / not / French lessons
6. our car / to make / strange noises
7. he / to talk / for 30 minutes
8. pigeons / to nest / on our roof
9. the pie shop / to turn / people away
10. she / to sell / her paintings cheaply
11. you / to watch / not / TV all morning
12. Eric / to draw / not / funny cartoons

13. the phone / to ring / non-stop
14. I / to read / a book about trees
15. more raccoons / to steal / from our bins

#### 8.1 Answers

#### 8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I have been running today.
  - A: Have you been running today?
1. I haven't been practising hard enough.
  2. We have been making too much noise.
  3. She has been swimming in the lake.
  4. I'm not sure if you heard. (to listen)
  5. The days seem to be getting dark earlier.
  6. No one has watered the plants.
  7. They have been waiting for a long time.
  8. Tim might be working for your father.
  9. I might have been paying too much for soap.
  10. The fox has been sleeping in the garden.

#### 8.2 Answers

#### 8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into present perfect continuous questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: William has been feeding his rabbit grass. (what)
  - A: What has William been feeding his rabbit?
1. This story has been going somewhere. (where)
  2. My computer has been heating up. (why)
  3. Oliver has been riding horses for many years. (how long)
  4. She has been sending out invitations. (why)
  5. Something has been happening in town this weekend. (what)
  6. They have been delivering our mail to the wrong address. (where)
  7. I don't know what the trucks have been carrying this week. (what)
  8. The geography club has been exploring in a jungle. (which)

9. Mr Jones has been teaching us anatomy. (what)
10. The batteries have been charging for two hours. (how long)

### 8.3 Answers

### 8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the present perfect continuous negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Where \_\_\_\_\_ cookies? (the girl / to deliver)
  - A: Where has the girl not been delivering cookies?
1. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (Len / to tell)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_? (anyone / to study)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend? (who / to read)
  4. What \_\_\_\_\_ right? (she / to do)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ to dance class regularly? (you / to go)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ Wanda enough attention? (I / to give)
  7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ this spring? (the wind / to blow)
  8. What questions \_\_\_\_\_? (the reporters / to ask)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ you? (that sound / to worry)
  10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ harder? (the team / to work)

### 8.4 Answers

### 8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate present perfect continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### Cleaning the Beach

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (the council / to make) efforts to improve Worthing's beach. For a long time, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (the beach / to suffer) from soiled water. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (the daily tests / to meet / not) expected hygiene levels. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to cause) this?

The council claims there are two main problems with the water. One is waste from people, where (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (holiday-makers / to pick up / not) after themselves. Another is waste from animals – where (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (people / to clean up / not) after their dogs.

(7) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / the council / to do) to change this?

Litter pick stations have been set up. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (visitors / to collect) rubbish whilst walking on the beach. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the council / to provide) bags and "grab sticks" to encourage this. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (children / to treat) this as a game: how much litter can they pick up in an hour?

Meanwhile, dogs are no longer allowed on the beach during summer. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (dog walkers / to ignore) the signs, so there are now big fines in place. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (beach patrols / to warn) dog walkers not to use certain areas to avoid being fined. Not everyone is happy about this. Hillary Menrose complained, "(13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / they / to focus) so hard on dogs, when seagulls make just as much mess. We always pick up after Fluff Doogle on our walks, but (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to watch) those birds, and they drop litter, too!"

There were big protests when the council wished to further limit dog walkers, and (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (the truth / to come out). Actually,



there is a third reason that the sea is dirty: (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (the water company / to dump) waste into the sea. (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the council / to focus / not) on them? One thing's for sure: (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (the beach / to get / finally) the attention it deserves!

## 8.5 Answers

### Forming the Future

#### 1. Future Simple

#### 9.1 Future Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the future simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form when necessary.

For example:

- Q: we / to be going to / not / to travel / for three months
- A: We are not going to travel for three months.
- 1. the final exam / will / to be / difficult
- 2. our friends / will / to come / for dinner
- 3. they / to be going to / not / to watch / the show together
- 4. Sasha / will / not / to buy / the next round of drinks
- 5. Amy / to be going to / to regret / her decision
- 6. my shoes / to be going to / not / to last / another winter
- 7. you / will / not / to agree / with me
- 8. the church bells / to be going to / to ring / today
- 9. those geese / will / to steal / your bread
- 10. the client / will / to approve / these new designs
- 11. I / to be going to / not / to lend / Charles any more money
- 12. Mrs Freda / will / not / to teach / noisy children
- 13. the festival / to be going to / to include / a lot of musicians
- 14. your new table / will / to arrive / tomorrow
- 15. this course / to be going to / not / to take / very long

#### 9.1 Answers

#### 9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I'm not sure if the waiter will clear away my dirty dishes.
- A: Will the waiter clear away your dirty dishes?
- 1. You are going to the party on Saturday.
- 2. I wonder if he is going to give back my book.

3. The actor must remember his lines. (will)
4. I'm not sure if this bus stops in Portsmouth. (to be going to)
5. The performance had better start on time. (will)
6. Vera hopes to meet the man of her dreams. (will)
7. The Olympics might be held in Italy. (to be going to)
8. Tom will admit that he ate the cake.
9. Our house should sell by September. (to be going to)
10. You have not finished your coffee. (to be going to)
11. The old bicycle might need to be repaired. (will)
12. James should bring his wife to the concert. (will)
13. The doors need to be replaced. (to be going to)
14. That truck might not fit in the parking space. (to be going to)
15. I think the T-shirt is going to shrink in the washing machine.
16. We want to split the bill evenly. (will)
17. She must learn these words by Tuesday. (will)
18. I am hoping to see my cousins at the weekend. (to be going to)
19. Our town might change over the next five years. (will)
20. It looks like that young man is about to propose to his girlfriend. (to be going to)

## 9.2 Answers

### 9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future simple questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Dom is going to ask for a raise tomorrow. (when)
  - A: When is Dom going to ask for a raise?
1. Someone must pay for this damage. (who / to be going to)
  2. The builders will finish the roof soon. (when)
  3. Something is going to happen to the vacant beach huts. (what)
  4. Harry intends to climb that tree. (how / to be going to)
  5. The papers are writing about the new President. (what / will)
  6. You are going to lose your job. (why)
  7. My father will return from his holiday this Monday. (when)
  8. The barbecue is going to be held in the park. (why)
  9. We need to find a good carpet. (where / to be going to)
  10. The mice will cause havoc. (how)

11. I must do something while my computer is updating. (what / will)
12. She is going to cook something for her lunch. (what)
13. The new product is going to be ready by autumn. (when)
14. I need someone to volunteer to take my Saturday shift. (who / will)
15. You will go somewhere for your summer holiday. (where)

### 9.3 Answers

### 9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future simple negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: What \_\_\_\_\_ her parents? (Olivia / to be going to / to tell)
  - A: What is Olivia not going to tell her parents?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ next year? (you / will / to return)
  2. When \_\_\_\_\_ at home? (they / to be going to / to be)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ on his trip? (what / Drew / to be going to / to take)
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ TV for a week? (how / I / will / to watch)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ pasta for dinner? (we / to be going to / prepare)
  6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ them more toys? (their mother / to be going to / to buy)
  7. What terms \_\_\_\_\_ to? (they / will / to agree)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ with us to Kent? (who / will / to come)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ ? (that tall cake / to be going to / to fall over)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ to her wedding? (who / she / will / to invite)

### 9.4 Answers

### 9.5 Mixed Future Simple

Complete the following text with the appropriate future simple affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

The Spaceship

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / to build) a spaceship in our back garden. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will / not / to be) easy, but we have the plans and the right tools. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (my Uncle Jimmy / will / to help) put it together, as (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to need) to earn his keep while he stays with us this summer. We haven't asked him yet, but (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / will / to say) yes, I am sure. But (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / to share) all our plans with him? I hope (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / will / to agree) without knowing how valuable the project is.

(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the rocket / will / to fly) faster and higher than any before. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be going to / not / to cost) much to make, because (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (my dad / will / to find) good materials in the dump. I do have some unanswered questions, though: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (how many / people / will / to fit) inside? (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the government / to be going to / to notice) what we are doing? If they hear about our amazing rocket, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / not / to allow) us to succeed. The government does not want competition – (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (our rocket / to be going to / to reach) Venus. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to discover) valuable diamonds before they do.

Mum thinks I can't do it. She says, "(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / will / to use) to fuel the rocket?"

"Hope," I tell her. "(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be going to / to work) because we have hope."

And anyway, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to persuade) Jimmy to deal with the other problems. We are the brains and the planners, after all: (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (the adults / will / to build) it. As long as (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Uncle Jimmy / to be going to / not / to steal) our ideas.

## 9.5 Answers

1. Future Continuous

## 10.1 Future Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the future continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Jamie / will / to attend / the conference with Howard.
  - A: Jamie will be attending the conference with Howard.
1. I / will / to ask / everyone two questions
  2. the days / to be going to / to get / longer
  3. my friend / will / to drive / us to Oxford
  4. we / will / to play / football all morning
  5. you / to be going to / to wait / for hours
  6. Richard / to be going to / not / to research / traffic control this week
  7. she / will / to sweep / the floor
  8. the company / to be going to / to organise / a trip soon
  9. I / to be going to / not / to work / this afternoon
  10. Penny / will / to aim / for the best results
  11. he / to be going to / to add / songs to his playlist all night
  12. the bank / will / not / to open / a new branch in Rye
  13. we / to be going to / to dance / on stage this Friday
  14. you / to be going to / not / to sit / there when I get back
  15. the baby / will / to wake up / soon

## 10.1 Answers

## 10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form and particular verbs. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I would like a break soon. (to be going to / to get)
  - A: Are you going to be getting a break soon?
1. You are going to be washing these dishes.
  2. Jools should go to Detroit by train. (will / to take)
  3. They might supply us with milk. (will / to supply)
  4. Eric is going to be expanding his gallery.

5. I hope she is going to be speaking on the panel.
6. The badgers might be sleeping during the day. (will)
7. No one is sure if the producers will be continuing the radio show. (will)
8. They might be closing more stores. (to be going to)
9. The planes could be landing at this airport. (will)
10. Mrs Antwerp may spend time here during her visit. (to be going to)
11. The Duke might discuss his retirement this week. (to be going to / to announce)
12. We will be meeting the neighbours together.
13. They said they might collect the sofa today. (will / to collect)
14. That field is where the farmer should grow wheat. (to be going to / to plant)
15. I heard you might perform at the Royal Albert Hall. (to be going to)

## 10.2 Answers

### 10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future continuous questions, using the question words and other information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: The boat is leaving at 3 p.m. (when / to be going to)
  - A: When is the boat going to be leaving?
1. Everyone will be sitting in the living room this evening. (where)
  2. You are going to be doing lots in Bali. (what)
  3. Tristan plans to exercise more this month. (how often / to be going to / to exercise)
  4. Greta is giving a speech on Wednesday. (what / will / to talk about)
  5. I must share a room. (who / to be going to / with)
  6. She should be jogging tomorrow. (when / to be going to)
  7. They need to clear away this mess. (will)
  8. I will read a crime thriller next week. (what)
  9. The barman is hanging his new fairy lights all over the bar. (where / will)
  10. Clive has been fixing that van for a long time. (how long / to be going to / to fix)
  11. We are going to be skating outside tomorrow. (where)
  12. There will be a prize for the best costume. (who / will / to wear)
  13. The school is starting to teach Pilates this spring. (what / to be going to / to teach)
  14. The bakers sell their doughnuts at unusual times. (when / to be going to / to sell)
  15. Someone must accept the award. (who / to be going to / to accept)

## 10.3 Answers

### 10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

• Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ his calls? (will / Grant / to answer)

• A: Why will Grant not be answering his calls?

1. When \_\_\_\_\_ this week? (you / will / to study)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow? (the girls / to be going to / to swim)
3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the horse? (he / to be going to / to ride)
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the party? (they / will / to attend)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a new dish? (the chef / will / to prepare)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ for the President's arrival? (the flag / to be going to / to fly)
7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ for the escaped mongoose with us? (they / will / to look)
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ on this trip? (Liz / will / to bring)
9. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the badminton club? (you / to be going to / to join)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the boiler over lunch? (the plumber / to be going to / to repair)

#### 10.4 Answers

#### 10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate future continuous affirmative , negative or question form , using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

#### The Scout Trip

The Wood Row (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (scouts / will / to go) to the New Forest for four days next week. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / to camp) in a field where they will study the local wildlife. Their leader, Mr Ryan, said, "(3) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / to be going to / not / to laze) about. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to challenge) themselves all weekend, so they can learn more."

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / will / the scouts / to do) on their adventure? A full itinerary has been prepared:

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / will / to make) notes about the animals they see. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to hike) for three hours each day, and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / not / to rest) much at camp, as (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (everyone / to be going to / to cook) two meals each day. Phones are banned, so (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / will / not / to call) home.

(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what else / to be going to / to happen) over the weekend? Well, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the weather / will / to change) on Saturday morning – from sunny to rainy – but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Ryan / will / not / to let) that stop them. He asked himself, "When (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will / not / to rain)?" and made sure that (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (their activities / to be going to / to occur) at those times.

"(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to prepare) alternative indoor activities, too", he said. "(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / we / will / to do) while it's raining? Well, there's a nice old car museum to explore, for starters."

One thing is for sure: the young scouts are going to be tired.

#### 10.5 Answers

1. Future Perfect

#### 11.1 Future Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the future perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

• Q: the burritos / will / to eat / by dawn

• A: The burritos will have been eaten by dawn.

1. we / will / to decide / by 1 p.m.
2. she / will / to sell / the dress before noon
3. I / to be going to / not / to finish / this book by nightfall
4. the workers / will / to paint / our bedroom
5. you / will / to accept / my proposal by Friday
6. Regina / to be going to / to design / a new logo before the meeting
7. the champion / to be going to / to play / his last game by December
8. the scientists / will / to add / the new planets to the map
9. the council / will / to clear / the roads for the festival
10. our neighbours / to be going to / to replace / their windows by Monday
11. the keys / will / not / to be / found / by then
12. the university / will / to award / my niece a prize
13. Victor / to be going to / to escape / before we get back
14. the groundsman / will / to plant / new grass over the old field
15. the eggs / will / not / to go / bad

#### 11.1 Answers

#### 11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: I am not sure if I will finish my essay in time.

• A: Will you have finished your essay in time?

1. They have to replace the batteries by tomorrow. (will)
2. You are going to measure the temperature.
3. You must wash the dishes in time for dinner. (will)
4. I wonder if the dentist has raised her prices. (will)
5. They are going to have fixed the leaking sink by 10 a.m.
6. I am not sure if I am going to have managed this project well.
7. The new batteries are going to arrive in time.
8. Perhaps the hats will have sold.
9. Billie will have brought her best socks.
10. Mrs Carter should have visited her daughter. (to be going to)

11. Petrol prices might have risen again. (will)
12. The priest must learn to dance before the ball. (to be going to)
13. The geese are going to have left the park.
14. We must make enough scones for everyone. (will)
15. The panel will have discussed the important issues.

#### 11.2 Answers

#### 11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future perfect questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: They will have built three new condos by spring. (what)
  - A: What will they have built by spring?
1. Some people are going to have eaten before the party. (who)
  2. The wall will have been damaged. (what / to happen)
  3. You are going to have stayed in many places this summer. (where)
  4. Manny must not have returned that book yet. (when / to be going to)
  5. The pirates will have hidden the treasure. (where)
  6. The manager will have handled his own accounts. (how)
  7. Our clients are going to have paid us by Wednesday. (when)
  8. I will have learned many things on the course. (what)
  9. The sandwiches will have been prepared before lunch. (when)
  10. The traders are going to have docked the ship in Portsmouth. (where)

#### 11.3 Answers

#### 11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future perfect negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_ the assignment on time? (who / will / to complete)
  - A: Who will have not completed the assignment on time?
1. Where \_\_\_\_\_? (Darren / to be going to / to be)
  2. What \_\_\_\_\_ through? (the gerbils / will / to bite)
  3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ from their mistakes? (they / will / to learn)
  4. How many \_\_\_\_\_ by Saturday? (cakes / you / to be going to / to make)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ her article on time? (the reporter / will / to write)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ this puzzle before the bell? (who / to be going to / to solve)



7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ her dress before tomorrow? (Mrs Harris / to be going to / to fix)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ a delay? (the traffic / will / to cause)
9. Where \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of my reading tour? (I / to be going to / to speak)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the bad news before he arrives? (they / will / to deliver)

#### 11.4 Answers

#### 11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate future perfect affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

#### The Big Presentation

Bob and Charlotte are giving a big presentation tomorrow at 2 p.m. Their (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (German clients / will / to arrive) by then, and it is important to impress them. There is lots to do. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to finish) the overall report by this evening, but the graphs will be incomplete as (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / not / to process) all the data in time. Charlotte is worried because she has to take her children to school before work in the morning, but (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bob / will / to start) on the graphs before she arrives.

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / he / will / to do)? She hopes (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to call) the research department and compiled their data. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / he / will / not / to complete)? The graphs themselves. Unfortunately, Bob is not very good with graph software. But Charlotte imagines (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / will / to create) all the necessary graphs before noon. That will give them time to prepare to greet the clients.

Charlotte will be so busy, she will not have time for lunch. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / will / to prepare) smoothies in the morning, though. Hopefully the clients won't notice (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to be going to / to eat / not) lunch. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (the pair / will / to polish) their presentation to such a high standard, the clients should be too impressed to care about anything else. By tomorrow afternoon, Charlotte imagines (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to seal) the deal.

#### 11.5 Answers

1. Future Perfect Continuous

#### 12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the future perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Herman / will / to live / in Dresden for two years by this summer
  - A: Herman will have been living in Dresden for two years by this summer.
1. I / will / to learn / Mandarin for a month by this Friday
  2. soon, the couple / will / to argue / for 20 minutes
  3. we / to be going to / to dance / all night long
  4. you / will / to choose / the flowers carefully
  5. the storm clouds / to be going to / to gather / for a while
  6. Georgie / will / to listen / to pop music again
  7. our dog / will / to sleep / while we were out
  8. I / to be going to / to cycle / all morning, so I'll need a shower
  9. Carl / will / to practise / for the Olympics

10. the boats / will / to bump / into each other overnight
11. the spies / will / to listen
12. my uncle / to be going to / to research / our family history ahead of the reunion
13. it / will / to get / hotter before we go on holiday
14. the tree / will / to shed / its leaves for weeks
15. she / to be going to / to laugh / at her own radio show

#### 12.1 Answers

#### 12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Where necessary, the questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: He will have studied in Wales for a long time.
  - A: Will he have been studying in Wales for a long time?
1. We might be waiting all morning. (to be going to)
  2. Nancy will have been singing throughout the first act.
  3. They will bake a cake. (will)
  4. I am going to have been wasting my time.
  5. The shoppers are going to queue for hours.
  6. I hope Charlie shaves regularly during the holiday. (will)
  7. We will have been writing to each other a for long time.
  8. Sally is going to have been working in insurance for two years.
  9. The tide should have been going out. (to be going to)
  10. The grapes might have been getting mouldy. (will)

#### 12.2 Answers

#### 12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future perfect continuous questions , using the question words provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They will have been travelling by boat. (why)
  - A: Why will they have been travelling by boat?
1. She will have been practising for a long time. (how long)
  2. Jim will have been swimming in the creek. (where)
  3. You are going to have been travelling a great distance. (how far)
  4. The trucks are going to have been carrying crackers. (what)
  5. The children will have been walking home. (why)

6. We are going to have been working on this project for months. (how long)
7. They are going to have been waiting for a decision. (what)
8. The foxes will have been gathering in the garden. (why)
9. He is going to have been asking for help. (who)
10. The intern is going to have been saying good things about his job. (what)

### 12.3 Answers

### 12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future perfect continuous negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_? (the surgeon / will / to operate)
  - A: Why will the surgeon not have been operating?
1. Where \_\_\_\_\_? (the tractor / will / to go)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ enough? (I / to be going to / to participate)
  3. How long \_\_\_\_\_ for? (your aunt / to be going to / to work)
  4. What \_\_\_\_\_? (we / to be going to / to see)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ hope? (they / will / to lose)
  6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ for the test? (he / to be going to / to prepare)
  7. Which buildings \_\_\_\_\_? (the company / will / to develop)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ in the right places? (the coats / to be going to / to hang)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ upright? (the guard / will / to stand)
  10. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (our friends / will / to show)

### 12.4 Answers

### 12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate future perfect continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

#### The Fish of Mgrub

Things have been changing in the fishing village of Mgrub. By November, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / will / to change) for five years. Lots of new buildings have been built there; some residents feel that when the next few projects begin (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to build) apartments forever. Resident Liam McDonald said, "And because of the noise, when they finish, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / not / to sleep) for years!"

Tourists and researchers have been coming to Mgrub to see a new glowing fish, discovered almost five years ago. If projections are met this December, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the population / will / to grow) by 25% each year. Should the latest tackle shop get permission, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (new shops / will / to open) at a rate of four a year. But has happiness been increasing in the same way?

"(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to live) here for three decades this August," McDonald said. "And (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / not to work) for almost half of that. I liked the peace and quiet before. The mayor says it will calm down, but (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (these outsiders / to be going to / not / to hovering) around for five years, soon?"

Not everyone is as unhappy with the changing village. Shop owner Jenny McCluck looks forward to the future: "I imagine (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to get) visitors from all over the world during the summer. They cannot resist the village, and though

(10) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / not / to expect) to stay for long, they will do. It's good for business."

It's also good for the glowing fish. This summer, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (local researchers / will / to apply) for grants each year for the past five years – and they are confident Mugrub's popularity will finally secure funding this time. Dr Bailey said, "Next year, we expect to uncover the mysteries of the glowing fish, as (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / not / to waste) time searching for funding!"

## 12.5 Answers

### Forming Mixed Tenses

#### 1. Mixed Simple Tenses

## 13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete past simple, present simple or future simple statements and questions using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: washed / Mary / in the river / her clothes

• A: Mary washed her clothes in the river.

1. isn't / ? / this / easy
2. too many people / were / on the boat / there
3. not / seem / Paul / does / ? / quiet today
4. loud / swans / very / are
5. to go swimming / not / is / it / a good day
6. will / to the gala / wear / ? / what / you
7. waited / we / for hours
8. be / before noon / they / at the dock / will
9. this photo / ? / real / to you / does / look
10. did / her house / ? / Nina / when / buy
11. she / for more mushrooms / to the shop / went
12. always / I / my wallet behind / leave
13. later / your room / won't / ? / tidy / you
14. too tired / you / to swim / look
15. a new boat / the fisherman / did / ? / how / buy
16. to me most / this tie / appeals
17. their medicine / who / ? / did / take / not / this morning
18. give up / not / on this reform / will / the President
19. over a period of many years / fell apart / our house
20. perfect / practice / makes

## 13.1 Answers

## 13.2 Simple Questions

Form past simple , present simple or future simple questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: I could not find my book. (where / to be)

• A: Where was your book?

1. I'm not sure what rabbits eat. (to eat / grass)
2. Jimmy was muddy. (to fall / the mud)
3. The circus always makes you happy. (you / to enjoy)
4. Wendy should be in the market tomorrow, but she hasn't confirmed.
5. The river runs through the north part of town. (where / to run)
6. Dozens of men waited in the street. (how many)
7. The man was still on the bench, two hours later. (he / to sit / for two hours)
8. There should be twenty people at dinner.
9. We cannot wait past noon for the delivery. (what time / the delivery / to arrive)
10. They study very hard just before exams. (when)
11. Cape Town was the busiest city that year. (which)
12. Someone must watch my child tomorrow. (who)
13. He claims men are less healthy than women. (men)
14. The squirrels will steal those nuts.
15. The radio stopped working. (the radio's battery / to run out)
16. She likes many flowers, but especially marigolds. (the marigold / to be / her favourite)
17. I saw Polly with a bicycle but I'm not sure if it is hers. (Polly / to own)
18. The lifeguards saved all the children. (who)
19. When I am older, I intend to get twenty cats.
20. Before the war, this shop had fresh bread. (to sell)

### 13.2 Answers

### 13.3 Simple Negative Questions

Form past simple , present simple or future simple negative questions using the information provided, with or without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Children are playing outside today when they should be in school. (the school / to open)

• A: Is the school not open today? or Isn't the school open today?

1. Robert only has vegetables on his plate. (to eat / meat)
2. The investigator wrote a confusing summary of the report. (to understand / the report)
3. Our charity isn't getting donations. (why / people / will / to give)

4. She refuses to see her mother again. (she / to visit)
5. You don't look happy about the bagpipes playing. (you / to like)
6. Harry is unwell, perhaps he will not go to school tomorrow.
7. Our friends did not meet until college.
8. These questions are very strange.
9. Running every day might make me fit, but I'm not sure.
10. The ducks look hungry again. (you / to feed)
11. Julian does not practise guitar very often. (who)
12. The council did not remove our rubbish this week. (why)
13. There is nowhere to park, but our friends are coming. (they / to be able to / their car)
14. Simon took his driving test but is not driving. (Simon / to pass)
15. Something is not right. (what / to look)

### 13.3 Answers

### 13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following simple tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

• Q: She watch TV every day.

• A: Incorrect – She watches TV every day.

1. The employee will wait until he is called.
2. I do live there anymore.
3. The kitchen smell like sweet apple pie.
4. I did not pass my exams last week.
5. Herman and Claire enjoys playing chess on Saturdays.
6. That woman is exactly who she says she is.
7. You will not improve if you do not study.
8. This aeroplane will flies if it is repaired.
9. He did not arrived in time for the show last night.
10. The greyhounds returns after they escaped.
11. The little children seem tired at the moment.
12. The car looked dirty now.
13. The toaster works when we tried it earlier.
14. Dani will not come to the seminar this evening.
15. They want all the different flavoured pizzas available now.

### 13.4 Answers

### 13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

Complete the following text with the appropriate past simple , present simple or future simple forms, using the information in brackets.

### A House by the Sea

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to live) in a bungalow by the sea, now. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (his house / to sit) opposite the beach. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / always / to dream) of owning a house with a sea view, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / finally / to have) it. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to take) him fifteen years to find the right home. At times, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / not / to believe) it would be possible. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (his friends / often / to ask), “(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / you / to want) a home by the sea? (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (did / anyone / not / to tell) you that the sea is dangerous? (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / will / not / to drown)?”

Indeed, before he moved, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (many people / to say) that storms and floods could damage a seaside home. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (beach property / to tend) to be expensive, too. And in England, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be / not / easy) to find space along the sea, certainly not near big towns. (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (these details / to bother / not) Bill. Whatever the price, (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to determine), his dream would come true.

Finally, (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to save) enough money and found exactly the right place. (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to buy) his bungalow outright. Now, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to enjoy) sitting on the porch watching the waves. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (the water / to come / not) high enough to damage the house. (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to be going to / invite) all his friends down during the summer, and (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to see) for themselves how wonderful it is here.

But now Bill has achieved his dream, (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / will / he / to do) next? (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to have) other plans? Yes. (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to imagine) what life would be like on the sea. (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to study) to become a boat captain. Then, (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to buy) a boat. (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (nothing / to be going to / to stop) him.

### 13.5 Answers

1. Mixed Continuous Tenses

### 14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete past continuous , present continuous or future continuous tense statements using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: in the parade / to carry / will / Carlos / the flag

• A: Carlos will be carrying the flag in the parade.

1. here after he buys some wine / to come back / will / he
2. to enjoy / everyone / themselves before we got there
3. Rita / to sew / a new dress two days ago
4. exceptionally well today / Joe / to dance
5. to perform / you / will / first tonight
6. will / people / this for a long time to come / to discuss
7. I / to party / all night, so I needed to rest
8. to sit / she / in the wrong seat, someone tell her
9. in the street / we / to arguing / but got told to stop
10. the giraffe / while it rained / to stand / under the tree
11. their wounds later / the defeated team / to lick / will
12. to try / to sleep but / it is too noisy outside / I
13. will / to learn / exciting new techniques / we / next week

14. the cleaners / to empty / the bins right now

15. to annoy / you / me, please go away

#### 14.1 Answers

#### 14.2 Continuous Questions

Form past continuous , present continuous or future continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Kim has the TV on. (what / she / to watch)

• A: What is she watching?

1. It seemed like we were working all night. (how long)
2. They will be climbing the mountain in the morning. (when)
3. Our boy is not improving with his studies. (to study / enough)
4. Jenny has booked another language test. (to take / again)
5. He was fighting with a gorilla in the jungle. (where)
6. She has prepared an entry for the contest. (to enter)
7. Rupert is getting very fit. (to do / lots of exercise)
8. Everyone seemed angry at the volume of my voice. (to talk / too loudly)
9. The gang was hanging out near the club. (where)
10. Everyone is getting sweets from Charlotte! (Charlotte / to give out)
11. The police suspect a pink car was used in the crime. (why / the police / to search)
12. She's not sure how long this mess will take to clean up.
13. I've arranged to meet Bob in the foyer at 9 p.m. (Bob / to wait)
14. The unhappy workers were gathering below the balcony. (who)
15. Wait for Charles, I think his shoelaces are undone! (Charles / to tie)

#### 14.2 Answers

#### 14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

Form past continuous , present continuous or future continuous negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: We are not travelling to Scotland.

• A: Are you not travelling to Scotland?

1. You are not eating well.
2. They arrived unexpectedly. (they / to plan / to come)
3. I hope you will be joining us.
4. I feel like it is getting warmer.



5. You must recycle more plastic. (why)
6. The coastguard is patrolling the east beach. (where)
7. Henry has decided not to give any presents this Christmas. (why)
8. The foxes were not standing on the roof.
9. The bookshop is opening late today. (why / early)
10. I don't think our team is playing in the match this weekend.
11. Sheila would not reveal the truth about her birdcage. (what / to reveal)
12. The girl was not standing there when you took the photo.
13. We have no fresh water for the campers. (the campers / will / to expect)
14. Should that lion be this close to the shelter? (that lion / to get)
15. You weren't waiting in the parlour last night. (why)

#### 14.3 Answers

#### 14.4 Continuous Contractions

Form past continuous, present continuous or future continuous negative questions using the information provided, with contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They were not listening to the professor during the lecture.
  - A: Weren't they listening to the professor during the lecture?
1. You are not reading that magazine.
  2. They stopped work during yesterday's storm. (they / to work)
  3. We have hardly any tissues left. (your tissues / to run out)
  4. I'm not sure if Danny will be waiting at home.
  5. It seemed like you took a long break from studying. (how long / to study / for)
  6. We are not sitting close to the stage. (why)
  7. Hailey will not be skiing with us.
  8. They were fighting over the last piece of cheese.
  9. The weather is changing rapidly.
  10. Something was definitely missing from the recipe. (what / they / to include)
  11. The field seems very empty. (the farmers / to work)
  12. Howard may have been pretending to gather mushrooms last week. (to gather)
  13. The fireman is not listening. (why)
  14. The tulips are turning a curious shade of purple.
  15. Your notepad was empty! (to take / notes)

#### 14.4 Answers

#### 14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following continuous tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

• Q: He was not listen to the teacher.

• A: Incorrect – He was not listening to the teacher.

1. You was singing the right tune.
2. The band will not be coming unless we pay them more.
3. He is moving to Seattle today.
4. I are baking a wonderful cake.
5. His parents will visiting tomorrow.
6. The birds were not sit there yesterday.
7. It is raining too heavily for us to go out.
8. We are shopping in the mall when the alarm went off.
9. The guards are not watching the diamonds right now.
10. She was practising piano last summer.
11. We will not be waited very long if you call ahead.
12. The men will be drinking all night, now the bar has a new license.
13. Brenda was washing the windows last week.
14. The cat are staring out of the window again.
15. They will not performing this evening, after all.

#### 14.5 Answers

#### 14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate continuous forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

Going to the Cinema

Billy: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to book) tickets for the cinema. Do you want to come?

Angela: Hmm. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to play)?

Billy: It's a superhero movie. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will not / show) for much longer, so we need to go now.

Angela: Another superhero movie! (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / they / to make / still) them?

Billy: This is the best one yet – (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to get) amazing reviews.

Angela: I don't care – (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / not / to go) to another superhero film.

Billy: Well, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to watch) it whether you come or not. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to do), anyway?

Angela: (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to be / study) for my exam on Friday before you interrupted, actually.

Billy: (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to revise / not) all day yesterday?

Angela: Yes, and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to read) all day tomorrow, too. So what?

Billy: (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to work) too hard! Come to the cinema and have a break.

Angela: Fine. I'll come, but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to see / not) that superhero film.

Billy: (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to think) of watching instead?

Angela: There's a new thriller. With a twist. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bridget / tell) me about it last week.

Billy: Hmm. Fine. But (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / drive)!

#### 14.6 Answers

##### 1. Mixed Perfect Tenses

#### 15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete perfect tense statements and questions, without contractions, using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: to fifteen countries / Felicity / to be / so far

• A: Felicity has been to fifteen countries so far.

1. my essay but / I / to finish / was not happy with it
2. Ryan / a new camera / and cannot stop talking about it / to buy
3. before you get there / to close / the shop / will
4. you / to prepare / have you / ? / the salad, / not
5. to record / many artists / the tune / before John produced a cover
6. the door / ? / forced open / to be
7. to arrive / yet, by this time tomorrow / will / our friends / not
8. will / the weather / to change / by the weekend / ?
9. she / a new book / to start / even though she was still reading one
10. Sam / will / to walk / home, if he is not at the school
11. this film before; / to see / I / it looks good / not
12. they / so many scones / to eat / ? / that they could not have cake
13. to build / the children / a den, so the living room is a mess
14. the priest / to go / ? / before she arrived
15. will / dinner / the restaurant / to serve / not / by 7 p.m., as the chef is missing

#### 15.1 Answers

#### 15.2 Perfect Questions 1

Form past perfect, present perfect or future perfect questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Frederick has passed his written exam.

• A: Has Frederick passed his written exam?

1. You have been to Hungary before.

2. They weren't sure if they'd locked the door before going out. (to lock)
3. I hope we have soup today. (the chef / to cook)
4. We need time to rest before the train comes. (will / to rest)
5. The wheel had been punctured deliberately.
6. I feel like I have told her this before.
7. The water might have boiled. (to boil / yet)
8. The minister discovered his backpack was full of oranges. (to take / the wrong backpack)
9. Hopefully the snow will have cleared by morning.
10. You seem to like Japanese cinema. (you / to see / many Japanese films)
11. I have not heard from the university about my application yet. (the university / to receive)
12. They should have released the lobsters later. (to release / too early)
13. She was unsure if she entered the right answer. (to write)
14. I think Maria will have done the pies by 2 p.m. (the pies / will / to cook)
15. They say it has become harder to buy property.

#### 15.2 Answers

#### 15.3 Perfect Questions 2

Form past perfect, present perfect or future perfect questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: The postman has left something by the door. (what)
  - A: What has the postman left by the door?
1. Shirley has done something bad. (what)
  2. He was inside, but no one knew how. (how / to get)
  3. The courier will have left the package under the porch. (where)
  4. Luke has put all the empty milk cartons in the garage. (where)
  5. I did not hear what the man at the front desk had said. (what / the man)
  6. It is stuffy in here and the windows are closed. (why / no one / to open)
  7. My papers have been drawn all over. (who / to draw)
  8. We could not find the badgers. (where / the badgers / to hide)
  9. The boats will have docked by sunset. (when)
  10. Tim's phone was broken. (how / to break)
  11. She has lost the remote control. (where / to put)
  12. The caretaker had cleaned the floor with a new product. (what)
  13. The package was waiting when we got home. (when / the package / to arrive)
  14. The award will go to whoever has showed the most potential this year. (who / to show)

15. We have stored some decorations in the garage. (what / to store)

### 15.3 Answers

### 15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

Form past perfect , present perfect or future perfect negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I have not received any emails today. (why)
- A: Why have you not received any emails today?
  1. You have not seen Alfred this month.
  2. The mail is not here yet. (to arrive)
  3. It seemed the explorers had taken the wrong turn. (to take / the correct turn)
  4. The hosts will not have prepared for 100 guests.
  5. I think we put the bread in the oven 45 minutes ago. (to be / 45 minutes / since)
  6. I needed a new question to ask. (what question / to ask / before)
  7. Their seats at the theatre will not be reserved. (to reserve)
  8. The cupboard had not squeaked as loudly that morning.
  9. She is waiting for her boyfriend to return. (her boyfriend / to return)
  10. I thought we paid for this meal already. (to pay)
  11. I fear the shops will have closed by 7 p.m.
  12. Harriette had not packed the correct shoes. (why)
  13. He seemed tired when he started work. (to rest / before)
  14. I don't see your name on the list for lessons. (to sign up)
  15. The taxi might not arrive by midnight.

### 15.4 Answers

### 15.5 Perfect Contractions

Form past perfect , present perfect or future perfect negative questions using the information provided, with contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They will never complete the project before sundown.
- A: Won't they have completed the project before sundown?
  1. The President has not achieved all his goals. (which goals)
  2. I can't believe you have not heard this tune before. (why)
  3. The thieves had not hidden the jewels.
  4. The men will not have distributed the presents in time.
  5. She had not wanted everything that she received. (what)

6. The tour group has not visited the Alps. (where)
7. They hadn't known the door would be locked. (how)
8. Our opponents cannot plan for everything. (what / to plan)
9. I thought I helped with the dishes.
10. The kitten has not damaged all the chairs. (which / chair)
11. The creature was following him, unnoticed. (he / to notice)
12. Let's consider what we will not have completed by New Year.

#### 15.5 Answers

#### 15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following perfect tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

• Q: Clive has eat all the pudding.

• A: Incorrect – Clive has eaten all the pudding.

1. I have not see that play, but I hear it is good.
2. Gill has not eaten her carrots because they looked green.
3. The team will have repaired the boat in time for the race this Saturday.
4. Victor has learned to play the piano yet.
5. Why have you not given me my watch back?
6. It had not was easy, but the girls replaced the punctured tyre.
7. We hadn't bring a map and got hopelessly lost.
8. Had Sue feed animals before or not?
9. He will has heard the good news before the meeting.
10. Hadn't I seen Martin's new guitar somewhere before?
11. They will have collect all the flowers before the wedding day.
12. The magicians have not agreed on a trick, so we have cancelled the performance.
13. She have not lived here for long, have she?
14. I will recovered by the time they arrive tomorrow.
15. The project won't exceed its budget if we stay on track.

#### 15.6 Answers

#### 15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

Complete the following text with the appropriate perfect forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

#### The House that Would Not Sell

The building on Grand Avenue (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) up for sale for a long time now. The owners (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to renovate) it recently: (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / decorate) all the rooms, and are currently building a new garage. They claim (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to spend) more than £10,000 on these improvements once they are done. But (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the house / will / to be) on the market six months by next week.

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / it / to fail) to sell?

The property probably (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sell) because of the damp problems. One couple who went to view it complained that (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the owners / to paint) over mould on one wall before they visited. The real estate agent expressed frustration: "I wish (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to ask) more questions before taking on the house. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the owners / to hire) two different estate agents already? Because the others quit after they discovered the damp!"

The owners, Jeff and Winn Murray, insist (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do / not) anything wrong. Jeff said, "(12) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to live) here for ten years and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (the damp / never / to bother) us. When we first moved in, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (mushrooms / to grow) on the carpet. Did we complain? No, because (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to expect) a few problems beforehand. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (anyone / to move / ever) house without problems?"

(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Murray / to find / not) his potential customers forgiving, however. Buyers can easily spot damp now, as moisture scanners (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) so effective. Winn Murray said, "One young couple's clothes beeped while we showed them around. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / they / to bring) in their pockets? A damp-measuring device! Perhaps we need a new estate agent, who will bring less devious buyers. But (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (how many agents / we / will / to try) then? Perhaps we should just keep the house!"

## 15.7 Answers

### 1. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

## 16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete perfect continuous tense statements and questions, without contractions, using the words provided.

For example:

- Q: the sea / to get / warmer since April
- A: The sea has been getting warmer since April.
- 1. Ben / TV for an hour / to watch / while the soup simmered
- 2. your phone / why / to ring / your shower / ? / since you started
- 3. our friends / to visit / us once a week until they left town
- 4. the gate / to open / properly for a week now / not
- 5. to study / medicine for / you / two years last time I saw you
- 6. they / you get to the party / will / to wait / all evening by the time
- 7. Jason / to call / the council every day / not / this week
- 8. to travel / I / for / how / will / when I finally get home / ?
- 9. to see / each other / we / for a year before we got married
- 10. the men / they reach the summit / to climb / for days before / will
- 11. she / to learn Spanish before / to try / ? / her holiday next month
- 12. whether or not to / I / to consider / go out this evening

## 16.1 Answers

### 16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Form past perfect continuous, present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I estimate that the bus has been stopping every two minutes.

• A: Has the bus been stopping every two minutes?

1. He had been studying for a long time before the exam.
2. They will have been building that wall all summer.
3. I'm not sure if we were sitting or standing when the bell rang.
4. I have been reading about giraffes this week.
5. They say Ben will have been living on a boat for two years this August.
6. I'm worried she has been staring at me all morning.
7. I think you had been looking for a new bag last time I saw you.
8. Someone, possibly my wife, has been cooking something that smells delicious.
9. We were afraid that mushrooms had been growing under the floorboards.
10. Our nephew will have been walking for months before we see him.
11. The neighbours seem angry with Hillary. (Hillary / to argue)
12. The squirrels will have been sleeping all winter.

#### 16.2 Answers

#### 16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Form past perfect continuous , present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Bob has been making a model aeroplane. (what)

• A: What has Bob been making?

1. There was lots of banging on the door that night. (who / to bang)
2. She must be hiding her silverware in the cellar. (where / to hide)
3. Greg has sent the TV station angry letters. (why)
4. The plumber has been in the basement for a long time. (what / to do)
5. Jane will have been learning to ride camels for a year come March. (how long)
6. Simon had an important phone call before dinner. (who / to talk to)
7. The cake will cool on the windowsill for three hours before tea. (where)
8. The birds arrived at the lake after two hours of flying. (how long / to fly)
9. You keep writing things in your journal. (what)
10. We will need two weeks to practise this dance before the show.

#### 16.3 Answers

#### 16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

Form past perfect continuous , present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:



- Q: Clive has not been swimming this week.
  - A: Has Clive not been swimming this week?
1. I don't think the tomatoes have been growing in this soil. (the tomatoes / to grow)
  2. Veronica had refused to send the letters. (to send)
  3. They claimed they had collected no names during the survey. (to collect)
  4. You will not have been working here long enough for a raise this month.
  5. She might not have been paying attention when the homework was set.
  6. The old man still has a full cupboard of beans. (to eat / his beans)
  7. The couple will not have been renting for long before they buy.
  8. Roger and Kelly's towels seem very dirty. (to wash / their towels)
  9. My aunt had not been buying anything online.
  10. Sandy will not have been working today. (why)

#### 16.4 Answers

#### 16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

Form past perfect continuous, present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous negative questions using the information provided, with contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I have not been making pies. (what)
  - A: What haven't you been making?
1. The Queen had not been wearing her crown at night. (who)
  2. He might not have been travelling through Europe next month.
  3. Sally had not been sharing her chocolate with anyone. (what)
  4. I think you should have been using the blue pen.
  5. Dennis thought he had been searching for this wallet all morning.
  6. I have been trying to watch all the new cookery shows, but might have missed some. (which / cookery shows / to watch)
  7. She has been ignoring my messages for two weeks. (how long / she / to reply)
  8. It's uncertain if the club will have been expanding quickly enough to earn a bonus.
  9. The charity has not been accepting donations since January. (why)
  10. He claimed the cupboard had not been squeaking last time we were there.

#### 16.5 Answers

#### 16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following perfect continuous tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect.

For example:

- Q: The children have been gathered flowers for hours.
- A: Incorrect – The children have been gathering flowers for hours.

1. The pot plants will have been getting enough water this week.
2. The Smiths have not been closing their windows at night, even when it rained.
3. The children have playing outside this week.
4. Will they have been preparing for long enough by next week?
5. We have not to be meeting as often now as we used to.
6. The goats had not been cooperating with the farmer yesterday.
7. Mandy had been let her sister use the computer that summer.
8. You have not been listening to me, please do!
9. Won't Felicity have been cycling at all this winter?
10. She will has been reading the correct book.
11. Jim had been working for eight days by tomorrow morning.
12. Had Ralph been putting the clean cups in the wrong cupboard all along?
13. People had not been returning books to the library last month.
14. Has our guests been waiting long? They look bored.
15. My car will have not been starting since the accident last Thursday.

#### 16.6 Answers

#### 16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate perfect continuous forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

#### Extreme Endurance

Janet (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to train) to complete the Extreme Endurance Race in July. The race (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take place) in Devon for eight years now, and involves swimming, running, cycling and climbing. Janet (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) and cycling since she was young, but before last January she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim / not) for a long time and she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to climb / never). By the time of the race, she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) to climb for only six months!

(7) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / she / to work) so hard for this? Before Christmas, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (Janet / to get) ill frequently. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to see) doctors two or three times a week, and all of them said she needed more exercise. Her friend (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (Claude / to compete) in tough races for decades, and he suggested she try one. So she chose the toughest. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / she / to think)?

By February, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to rise) every morning at 5 a.m. for two months. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (her diet / not / to help), so she cut out sugar and dairy. The improvements were rapid. Janet has not only lost weight and raised her stamina, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to feel) more awake and alive. What's more – (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / not / to get) ill anymore. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (her life / to improve / also) in other ways she did not expect – (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / even / to sleep) better.

But the Extreme Endurance Race is quickly approaching, and (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to grow) more nervous by the day. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to practise) for long enough to face it? She isn't sure, but one thing is certain: by the time it's over, (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Janet / to work) hard enough to form a habit. Now she's started getting fit, she doesn't expect to stop.

#### 16.7 Answers

#### Tenses in Use

The following section is designed to drill usages of the different tenses, so you can get a feel for the appropriate application of each tense in context. These are divided into the past, present and future, with each section including exercises that cover the uses of the simple, continuous, perfect and perfect continuous forms. There are also comparative exercises that relate the tenses to each other, as referenced in the book *The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide*. Following the specific uses, there is a group of mixed tenses exercises, drawing all the tenses together

for drills of more free and flexible use.

## 1. The Past in Use

### 17.1 Complete or Process 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form. Remember, we use the past simple for actions completed in the past, while we use the past continuous for ongoing or interrupted processes.

For example:

- Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ my dog when it started to rain. (to walk)
  - A: I was walking my dog when it started to rain.
1. Billy \_\_\_\_\_ his homework before tea. (to complete)
  2. We \_\_\_\_\_ to meet at 4 p.m. (to agree)
  3. Lynn called while I \_\_\_\_\_ for a bus. (to wait)
  4. He is only here because you \_\_\_\_\_ him. (to invite)
  5. We could see that the ship \_\_\_\_\_ . (to sink)
  6. John \_\_\_\_\_ into the room to deliver the news. (to burst)
  7. She \_\_\_\_\_ her glasses under the sofa. (to find)
  8. Only three students \_\_\_\_\_ their essays early. (to submit)
  9. They left early because they \_\_\_\_\_ the film. (to enjoy / not)
  10. The boy cried when a bee \_\_\_\_\_ him. (to sting)
  11. I lost my phone while I \_\_\_\_\_ in Spain. (to relax)
  12. Vera \_\_\_\_\_ to lock the door again. (to forget)
  13. Ruth \_\_\_\_\_ for her mother, so could not go to the party. (to care)
  14. The dog snarled because it \_\_\_\_\_ its toy. (to protect)
  15. Fred \_\_\_\_\_ the car when he remembered his goggles. (to load)
  16. We discovered our parents \_\_\_\_\_ too much for gas. (to pay)
  17. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the time that the fire started? (you / to do)
  18. When \_\_\_\_\_ how to turn on the fridge? (she / explain)
  19. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the diamonds? (the thieves / to hide)
  20. Why \_\_\_\_\_ during the meeting? (Julia / to laugh)

### 17.1 Answers

### 17.2 Complete or Process 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form. Remember, we use the past simple for actions completed in the past, while we use the past continuous for ongoing or interrupted processes. Use contractions where possible.

For example:

- Q: "Is the new cinema open yet?"
- A: "I think so – when I looked, they \_\_\_\_\_ tickets online." (to sell)

• A: "Is the new cinema open yet?"

"I think so – when I looked, they were selling tickets online."

1. "Are you going on holiday this year?"

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ on one already." (to go)

1. "I heard you gave up science classes."

"Yes, I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ enough." (to learn / not)

1. Penny collected model buses for many years. She \_\_\_\_\_ to get enough to start a museum. (to try)

2. "Why did we stop using disposable cups?"

"Because management \_\_\_\_\_ to reduce plastic." (to decide)

1. Sparrows \_\_\_\_\_ in our loft. We could hear them above us. (to nest)

2. "What did that sign say?"

"I couldn't see, it \_\_\_\_\_ in the wind." (to sway)

1. The new restaurant was a massive success. Hundreds of customers \_\_\_\_\_ in the first two days. (to come)

2. "You're home early tonight."

"Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ back to watch the game." (to hurry)

1. Didn't that man look terribly cold? \_\_\_\_\_ all over? (he / to shake / not)

2. "Look at how many burgers I have!"

"Wow, \_\_\_\_\_ them all?" (to buy)

1. "Your father called to ask where you were. \_\_\_\_\_ him we were going to the beach?" (you / to tell / not)

2. "I heard they gave Michelle a first-class ticket to Bali."

"Yes, I think so – \_\_\_\_\_ on the site of a new hotel?" (she / to consult / not)

## 17.2 Answers

### 17.3 Complete or Process 3

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, we use the past perfect for actions completed at a particular point in the past, while we use the past perfect continuous for processes ongoing or interrupted at a particular point in the past.

For example:

• Q: We \_\_\_\_\_ the sink before John came home. (to fix)

• A: We had fixed the sink before John came home.

1. There were no biscuits left because she \_\_\_\_\_ them all. (to eat)

2. The guests surprised her, as their flight \_\_\_\_\_ early. (to arrive)

3. Our neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ for hours when we asked them to stop. (to shout)

4. All our lights went out. I \_\_\_\_\_ to pay the meter. (to forget)

5. Raccoons \_\_\_\_\_ our bins every night, so we added locks. (to raid)

6. She \_\_\_\_\_ a presentation but went out before it was finished. (to prepare)

7. He left the café because his friends \_\_\_\_\_ at him. (to laugh)
8. Anna \_\_\_\_\_ all the author's books except one. (to read)
9. Which book \_\_\_\_\_ before she found this one? (she / to read)
10. When \_\_\_\_\_ the new bar? It looked very vibrant. (they / to open)

### 17.3 Answers

### 17.4 Past States 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the past simple is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

- Q: The postman arrived when I \_\_\_\_\_ in the shower. (to be)
- A: The postman arrived when I was in the shower.

\_\_\_\_\_

1. Sheila \_\_\_\_\_ her dress during a storm. (to iron)
2. When we arrived at the hotel, it \_\_\_\_\_ closed. (to look)
3. Though they \_\_\_\_\_ dim, the lights were on. (to seem)
4. By 3 p.m. all his shares had risen; he \_\_\_\_\_ a good day. (to have)
5. No one moved: the man \_\_\_\_\_ a gun. (to have)
6. Her husband always bought books when he \_\_\_\_\_ bored. (to feel)
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ a bad dream, so I woke you. (to have)
8. At the time, they \_\_\_\_\_ the problem. (to understand / not)
9. Throughout July, we \_\_\_\_\_ to paint our shed. (to try / often)
10. Geoff \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio at 11 a.m. (to listen)
11. She had not fully decided, but she \_\_\_\_\_ the yellow curtains. (to prefer)
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ War and Peace but took a break to read a comic. (to read)
13. The man \_\_\_\_\_ a tie for so long that they closed the shop. (to choose)
14. As she entered the garage, Enid \_\_\_\_\_ a curious sound. (to hear)
15. Luke studied hard because he \_\_\_\_\_ to get top marks. (to aim)
16. Would work send me to Italy? It was exactly what I \_\_\_\_\_. (to want)
17. He waited for a decision. \_\_\_\_\_ his story? (they / to believe)
18. When we met Lana, \_\_\_\_\_ of smoke? (she / to smell)
19. The parrots surprised everyone – why \_\_\_\_\_ so angry? (they / to appear)
20. While I made tea, \_\_\_\_\_ in my diary? (you / to look)

### 17.4 Answers

### 17.5 Past States 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions.

Remember, the past perfect is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

• Q: The guard investigated after he \_\_\_\_\_ that something was wrong. (to sense)

• A: The guard investigated after he had sensed that something was wrong.

1. I was tired because I \_\_\_\_\_ in the library. (to study)
2. Jolene \_\_\_\_\_ her backpack, but it was time to give it away. (to love)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ success while working at the bank. (to taste)
4. Two wolves \_\_\_\_\_ near the camp at night. (to lurk)
5. Though he \_\_\_\_\_ kind when he visited, he stole my ring. (to seem)
6. The shop \_\_\_\_\_ from a lack of donations, so they ran an advert to help. (to suffer)
7. Marius \_\_\_\_\_ in Lewes for thirteen years before he moved to Germany. (to live)
8. Claude \_\_\_\_\_ in Lewes for thirteen years when he was asked to move. (to live)
9. The cheese \_\_\_\_\_ fine in the morning, but was bad by lunch. (to smell)
10. Tammy \_\_\_\_\_ it was impossible until she discovered the answer. (to believe)

17.5 Answers

17.6 Past Sequences 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past perfect indicates an action was completed at a particular point in the past.

For example:

• Q: We \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) dinner before we \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) out.

• A: We had prepared dinner before we went out.

1. The hotel \_\_\_\_\_ (to cost) a lot because it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) the height of summer.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to exchange) letters only after they \_\_\_\_\_ (to separate).
3. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) a new car two days before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) us.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) my driving test once I \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) 40 lessons.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to ride her bike but the chain \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) the day before.
6. Miles \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) the guitar for three years before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) interest in it.
7. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) the water he \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) for?
8. Shelly \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) early because she \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete) her assignment.
9. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ (to prescribe) some medicine but Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) taking it after a day.
10. By the time the firemen \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive), the building \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) evacuated.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) boiled eggs but they \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) me beans on toast.
12. The bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) repairing because the river \_\_\_\_\_ (to flood) that morning.
13. The children who \_\_\_\_\_ (to achieve) the best results \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) hardest.
14. By the time the procession \_\_\_\_\_ (to start), thousands of people \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) to see the Queen.

15. Our aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (to retire) early because she \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) saving at an early age.

#### 17.6 Answers

#### 17.7 Past Sequences 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or past perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past continuous indicates an action was in progress at a particular point in the past, while the past perfect indicates the action was completed.

For example:

• Q: When I \_\_\_\_\_ every day, I felt very healthy. (to swim)

• A: When I was swimming every day, I felt very healthy.

1. They needed to hurry because the ice \_\_\_\_\_. (to melt)
2. Roland could not find the toy because his friend \_\_\_\_\_ it. (to hide)
3. The pie \_\_\_\_\_, so I switched the oven off. (to burn)
4. Grandma \_\_\_\_\_, so we sent out a search party. (to escape)
5. Hillary knew a lot because she \_\_\_\_\_ all the books in the library. (to read)
6. I could not hear the news because my son \_\_\_\_\_. (to talk)
7. Though Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his computer, the screen still did not work. (to repair)
8. She called her mum while she \_\_\_\_\_ home. (to walk)
9. The family \_\_\_\_\_ a garden party until they forecast rain. (to plan)
10. Claus could not go to the shops because Herman \_\_\_\_\_ his car that morning. (to borrow)
11. Though the game \_\_\_\_\_, the crowd did not go home. (to end)
12. We sat on the bench as the bus \_\_\_\_\_ a long time to arrive. (to take)
13. Neil stopped studying the letter; he \_\_\_\_\_ the answer. (to find)
14. When she \_\_\_\_\_ across Europe, Gina visited Switzerland. (to travel)
15. Because the tree \_\_\_\_\_, the road was blocked. (to fall)

#### 17.7 Answers

#### 17.8 Processes in the Past

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or past perfect continuous form. Remember, the past perfect continuous is used to demonstrate duration before a particular time in the past.

For example:

• Q: Her dress won the contest because she \_\_\_\_\_ it for three days. (to improve)

• A: Her dress won the contest because she had been improving it for three days.

1. By the time I left Romania, I \_\_\_\_\_ there for three years. (to teach)
2. While Jen \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes, Roy cleaned the table. (to wash)
3. We sheltered in the barn because it \_\_\_\_\_. (to rain)
4. The track was impassable as it \_\_\_\_\_ heavily. (to snow)
5. Alan \_\_\_\_\_ to his bank manager all morning. (to speak)

6. You would have heard my answer if you \_\_\_\_\_. (to listen)
7. I didn't use the sink as the tap \_\_\_\_\_ lately. (to leak)
8. The bus \_\_\_\_\_ funny noises, so we pulled over. (to make)
9. He could not drive home because he \_\_\_\_\_ wine. (to drink)
10. The cleaners \_\_\_\_\_, and decided it was time to take action. (to talk)

#### 17.8 Answers

#### 17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past simple form, without contractions.

##### Felix and the Umbrella

Felix (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to decide) to go the park last Saturday. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to see the pond and feed the ducks. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) a sunny day, so he needed an umbrella. The umbrella (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) in its usual place. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) his sister: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have / she) his umbrella? She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) no.

"(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave / you) it at school?" she replied.

He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not). He (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the umbrella when he (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) home on Thursday. He (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remember) leaving it to dry in the bathroom.

Felix (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) the bathroom door locked. His father (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) him the bath (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) replacing.

"(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / you) my umbrella in there?" Felix (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask).

"Why (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put / not / you) it back by the door?" his dad (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to answer).

Felix (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to explain) that it had been wet. But the umbrella (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) in the bathroom when he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lock) the door, his dad (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) sure. (24) Where \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) it?

Felix (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) on the stairs, sad. It (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) possible to visit the park without the umbrella. What else (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / can / to do)?

Just as he (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) about to give up hope, his mother (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (return) from shopping. She (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the umbrella!

Felix (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grab) the umbrella from her startled hands, and (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to charge) outside, finally ready to visit the park. He (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) down the road, and (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop / not) for anything on the way. He (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at the pond, at long last. The ducks (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) there. (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / they / to go)?

Of course, Felix (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to understand), standing in the rain. The ducks (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like / not) the rain either. They (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) safe, inside, out of sight.

He would have to come back another day.

#### 17.9 Answers

#### 17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past continuous form, without contractions.

##### An Unsatisfactory Restaurant

When I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to search) for a new restaurant, I discovered Calbini's had opened in the town centre. They (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) a promotion that week: three courses for £12.95. Very cheap, as others nearby (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to provide) a main course for £18! (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the place / to sell) itself short? Or (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to offer) a worse service?

I visited on a Wednesday night with my colleague Gunther. He (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to decide what to eat on the way, from the online



menu, but he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to discuss / not) it with me. Gunther is a quiet man.

On our arrival to the restaurant, the building (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to bustle) with people. Very busy for a Wednesday night! And the staff (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to handle / not) it well: waiters (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) around, hot-faced, and the man who welcomed us was tired and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to smile / not). Moreover, what (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to wear)? Not a smart uniform, but brightly patterned rags covered in stains. Why (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (the managers / dressing) their staff like clowns?

Our table was at the back of the room, next to the kitchen. The door (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open / and / to close) constantly. Even worse, we (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for fifteen minutes before a waiter gave us a menu. The writing was badly printed: (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (how / they / to expect) anyone to read this?

We used Gunther's online menu instead. By then, my stomach (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rumble). We had to give our orders twice because the waiter (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen / not). He (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) the other tables; with so many people there, (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to plan / he) a route of attack?

Eventually, our order was placed: for the main course, I (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the calzone and Gunther chose tortellini.

Our starters arrived – prawns for both of us. The prawns (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim) in brine. Undercooked. I stood and demanded to know if they (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) us garbage.

The waiters, of course, were too busy to notice. The other customers (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) noisier as the restaurant only got busier. And now, as I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand), I saw the food on other tables. All as bad as ours.

I told Gunther we (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) at once, only to discover he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) the vile prawns!

"It's not bad," he told me. Clearly he (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come / not) with me.

He wasn't the only one happy. Other people (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to laugh). They (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) this cheap, busy restaurant! (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (the chefs / to put) something special in the food? Or (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (everyone / to question / not) the quality because it was so cheap?

Either way, it (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fool / not) me. I gathered my things and left. The last time I saw him, Gunther (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to devour) my meal, too.

#### 17.10 Answers

#### 17.11 Mixed Past Perfect in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions.

#### The Mystery of the Missing Sandwich

Lunch was approaching. Xavier (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) forward to his sandwich all morning. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) a special sandwich today: halloumi, salad with hummus that his wife (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make). She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) her own hummus for years, and it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to reach) perfection.

But when Xavier opened the fridge, the sandwich (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disappear). He stared in disbelief: he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) it there last night. His wife (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to comment) on it at 9 a.m., when she took milk for her tea, "That looks nice!" Where (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to go)?

Xavier was alone that morning. His wife (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the train to York for the day. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (someone / to sneak) in while he (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) TV? He (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear / not) anything, but he (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen / not) carefully.

Xavier searched the house for signs of an intruder – or clues to what (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) of the missing sandwich. His daughter's room was locked, because she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) for university a week ago. The other bedroom and the living room (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disturb / not).

The garden door was open, because Xavier (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) some fresh air. He stood checking the trees. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (a squirrel / to come) inside and opened the fridge? (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to notice / not) a genius thief?

After searching the garden for crumbs, Xavier returned to the kitchen. He (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find / not) any evidence of an intruder or the sandwich's fate. Why (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to play) the TV so loud? His distraction (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) some terrible person

steal his amazing sandwich.

Finally, Xavier decided to call his wife and tell her about this tragedy. But first, he saw he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to receive) a message from her already.

“Thank you for preparing that lovely sandwich – it was everything I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to dream) of all morning!”

Xavier stared in horror. His wife (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) the sandwich was for her. She (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) it with her when she left! But he could only blame himself. Why (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to prepare / not) one for her, too?

#### 17.11 Answers

#### 17.12 Mixed Past Matching

Form logical past sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. The detective followed the clues to the creepy house.
- b. The detective was following clues when the thief struck again.
- c. The detective had followed many clues before he found the suspect.
- d. The detective had been following clues for three days while the thief was still out there.

1.

2.

3.

4.

#### 17.12 Answers

#### 17.13 Past Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple past tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which started first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: When his patient arrived, the doctor was having a coffee.

• A: A) the doctor was having B) his patient arrived

was having = past continuous, action was in process

arrived = past simple, action completed

1. Carl washed the dishes after he ate dinner.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She was preparing her speech when the ambassador arrived.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I had been studying for weeks by the time I took the exam.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The cat slept in the living room because Boris closed the door to the garden.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Helga was listening to music while she travelled on the bus.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. We could not enter the house because someone had taken the spare key.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. While he was fixing the sink, the post arrived.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Kim went to the gym after she finished work.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Our neighbours were talking loudly before they left this morning.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Roland returned the bike that he had borrowed.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What were you eating when you stayed in Japan?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Did he wipe his feet when he came in from the rain?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Had Jim been asking for volunteers when you sent the email?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who was playing the piano while we were painting in the attic?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The cake tasted incredible – what did they put in it?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 17.13 Answers

#### 17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

The following passage describes the everyday routine of Jen the Magician. Indicate which states are true at the listed times.

Jen the Magician wakes each day at 07:00. She has a shower before breakfast and she finishes eating by 07:30. She does not own a car, so Jen catches the 07:45 bus for a twenty-minute journey into town. She listens to music and checks her emails on the way. Jen starts her workday at the Friends Centre at 08:30, after buying a coffee. She entertains children for an hour, then walks for fifteen minutes to perform at a care home.

Jen usually has lunch at 12:00, at Buster's Burritos. She stays there for an hour, reading magazines about magic. Her friend Mary comes in around 12:30. They have tea, but do not eat together as Jen usually finishes her burrito before Mary arrives.

In the afternoon, Jen visits schools in the suburbs. She demonstrates magic to classes of children, and teaches them tricks. This occupies her until 16:00, at which time she travels back to the Friends Centre. Jen runs magic classes for adults from 17:00 until 19:30, then takes the bus home. Usually, she cooks dinner and eats before practising new tricks from 21:00 to 22:00. Then she settles down with a good book before falling asleep at 23:00.

For example:

At 07:45 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen had a shower.

b. ... Jen was getting the bus. – TRUE

c. ... Jen drove to work.

d. ... Jen had eaten breakfast. – TRUE

1. At 07:55 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was on the bus.

b. ... Jen was listening to music.

c. ... Jen was checking her make-up.

d. ... Jen arrived at the Friends Centre.

1. At 09:35 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was entertaining children.

b. ... Jen had drunk a coffee.

c. ... Jen was walking through town.

d. ... Jen had started her second job.

1. At 12:45 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen had eaten a burrito.

b. ... Jen was reading a magazine.

c. ... Jen had been reading a magazine.

d. ... Mary bought a burrito.

1. At 15:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was travelling to the Friends Centre.

b. ... Jen had been visiting schools for over two hours.

c. ... Jen was teaching adults.

d. ... Jen finished visiting schools.

1. At 19:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen finished work for the day.

b. ... Jen had taught magic to adults.

c. ... Jen was cooking dinner.

d. ... Jen went to get the bus.

1. At 10:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen practised new tricks.

b. ... Jen fell asleep.

c. ... Jen had eaten dinner.

d. ... Jen was reading a book.

17.14 Answers

### 17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses

To practise understanding of the different uses of the past tenses, the following passage contains many highlighted verb phrases. Choose which use is being demonstrated for each phrase from the list below.

- Past Action
- Past State / Possession / Sense
- Ongoing Past Process
- Past Action Completed Earlier
- Earlier Past State / Possession / Sense
- Earlier Ongoing Past Process

#### The Forgotten Book

Richard (1) was standing at the Petersons' door, trying to decide if he should knock. It (2) was cold and dark, and very late. The lights (3) were off. He (4) had noticed that from the road; everyone inside (5) had gone to bed. They (6) had probably been sleeping for hours. But he (7) needed to get his book back. He (8) had an exam the next day, and he needed to study. (9) Why had he left the book there this afternoon? Was it because (10) he had been flirting with Paula?

He (11) wished he (12) had not been so foolish. Last time this happened, her parents (13) had been angry at him for weeks. They (14) had been sleeping when he knocked then, too, and they (15) had shouted at him. He (16) did not want that to happen again.

He (17) chose not to knock.

He (18) began to walk quietly away. As he (19) was leaving, someone shouted from the window. It was Paula! She (20) was waving at him.

"Richard!" she (21) called out. "You left your book behind!"

He (22) smiled, this (23) was going well, after all.

Paula (24) threw the book, and it hit him on the nose. As he stumbled in pain, she (25) was laughing hysterically. He suspected that she (26) had done that on purpose.

### 17.15 Answers

### 17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

Complete the following text with the appropriate past forms, without contractions, using the information in brackets and the context of the text.

#### A New Pier

In April, the seaside town of Trilby-on-Sea (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to announce) plans to build a new pier. Before this decision, Trilby's council (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) with local charities and tourist organisations for six months. A Scottish architect (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to submit) designs including shops and rides. Most of the town (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to love) the designs, but the council were unsure. They (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to experience) budget cuts for the past few years.

Local residents (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to form) a group called Pier Alliance in January to convince the council. They (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to argue) that the new pier would bring wealth to Trilby. Visitor numbers (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to decrease) since two summers before, and everyone (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to find a solution. They remembered: Trilby's old pier (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to draw) massive crowds, many decades ago.

Newspaper clippings (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) that hundreds of people (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) on the pier daily. It (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) unstable in the 1980s, when the supports (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) damaged in a terrible storm. The council (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remove) the pier, saying they (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (can / not) afford to maintain it.

Technology (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to improve) a lot since then, so Pier Alliance (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to insist) the new pier would be cheaper and safer. By time of the final decision, they (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) ten different experts to speak to the council about it. In March, a gentleman from America (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) the town. He (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to research) piers for thirteen years and said he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) a better design than Trilby's new proposal. Slowly, Pier Alliance (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to persuade) the council. The men in charge (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to delay) the decision, so the town finally (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hold) a

rally to demonstrate how support (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grow) for the new pier.

Finally, the council (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) in, and the April announcement (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lead) to great celebrations. The new pier (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) at last!

#### 17.16 Answers

#### 17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

Complete the following text with the appropriate past forms, without contractions, using the information in brackets and the context of the text.

#### The Pen Thief

Vicky was certain Clive (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) her pen. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disappear) while she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to repair) the printer.

"What (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) ten minutes ago?" Vicky asked. "You (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit / not) at your desk, I am sure."

"(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to watch) me?" Clive replied.

She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look / not) his way, no. But he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) when she fixed the printer, not if he stole her pen. She (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) him to answer her question.

"I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) tea," he told her.

Vicky (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) a mug of tea on his desk. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to drink) it already? She (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to suspect) not. "You (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wander) around my desk, weren't you?"

"Absolutely not!" Clive protested. He (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) near her desk since Vicky (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to catch) him stealing her paper a month ago. She (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) him to stay away, and she (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) the results ever since.

(19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to let) her guard down too soon?

"(20) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to take) my pen?" she asked, plainly.

Clive shook his head, but (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) scared. "I did not, I would not, I never!"

He (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to admire) her pen ever since she bought it; it (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a platinum grip. Vicky decided he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) honest. But she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) nowhere with words. She (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grab) him quickly, and he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to cry) out when she found the pen in a pocket. He (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lie) all along!

Vicky (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) to her manager, but when she got there Clive (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave / already). The manager (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand) nearby. (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to watch) all along?

"What (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to steal) this time?" the manager asked.

Vicky (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) him the pen, and the manager sighed sadly. Clive (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) away with these thefts for too long. But they (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to expose) him, at last.

#### 17.17 Answers

##### 1. The Present in Use

#### 18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is mostly used for timeless actions while we use the present continuous for ongoing or interrupted temporary processes.

For example:

- Q: Brianne \_\_\_\_\_ green beans every week. (to buy)
- A: Brianne buys green beans every week.

1. My family usually \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at 7 p.m. (to eat)

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ for this meal. (to pay)
3. Jonas \_\_\_\_\_ at St Mary's High School. (to teach)
4. Our children \_\_\_\_\_ any instruments. (to play / not)
5. This bed always \_\_\_\_\_ noisily. (to creak)
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ a new house. (to buy)
7. Albert \_\_\_\_\_ hard enough – he can do better. (to try / not)
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ in my chair, please move. (to sit)
9. Every time I \_\_\_\_\_ Gran, she \_\_\_\_\_ me sweets. (to visit / to give)
10. Her friends \_\_\_\_\_ her this time. (to help / not)
11. This professor's course \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly each year. (to fill)
12. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ food at the soup kitchen on Tuesdays. (to serve)
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ to become a lawyer anymore. (to study / not)
14. Why \_\_\_\_\_ south each winter? (the geese / to fly)
15. How \_\_\_\_\_ through the mountains on her trip? (Jenna / to travel)
16. \_\_\_\_\_ a new tie for the wedding ceremony? (you / to choose)
17. Which shops \_\_\_\_\_ non-dairy chocolates? (to offer / not)
18. What \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach right now? (to happen)
19. Who \_\_\_\_\_ that bright pink car? (to own)
20. Where \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend? (your parents / to stay)

#### 18.1 Answers

#### 18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

Complete the following sentences in the present simple or the present continuous form, without contractions, using the information in brackets.

For example:

• Q: Alexa gets up at 6 a.m. every day. Today, \_\_\_\_\_. (later)

• A: Today, Alexa is getting up later.

1. Dominic is usually so nice. Why \_\_\_\_\_? (naughty)
2. The sun is setting very late this month. Usually, \_\_\_\_\_. (earlier)
3. She refuses to say sorry. She \_\_\_\_\_. (to apologise / not)
4. Harry just climbed a tree. He \_\_\_\_\_. (to swing / a branch)
5. You will love the way Deidre cooks potatoes. She always \_\_\_\_\_. (to fry / them)
6. Mia has not given an answer yet – she \_\_\_\_\_. (to think / it)
7. I never usually buy nectarines for myself, but today I \_\_\_\_\_. (to buy / some / for my mother)
8. The boy is watching TV. He \_\_\_\_\_. (to bounce / not / his ball)
9. "Where is my magazine?"

"I think it \_\_\_\_\_." (to lie / by the sofa)

1. "We are decorating our living room."

"Oh, what colour \_\_\_\_\_?" (to paint)

1. "Mr Harris is not coming to dinner."

"Strange. He \_\_\_\_\_." (to cancel / not / often)

1. "The volleyball team surprised everyone by reaching the final."

"\_\_\_\_\_?" (to win / not / normally)

1. "\_\_\_\_\_ a bottle of wine?" (to hold / you)

"No, it's a bottle of olive oil."

1. The building supervisor does not allow smoking. We \_\_\_\_\_! (to break / the rules)

2. "I drew this picture."

"Ah, you \_\_\_\_\_!" (to improve / quickly)

## 18.2 Answers

## 18.3 Present States

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ you have a new puppy. (to hear)

• A: I hear you have a new puppy.

1. This fish \_\_\_\_\_ strange, is it old? (to taste)

2. Caroline \_\_\_\_\_ very elegant in her new dress. (to look)

3. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ a biography of Julius Caesar. (to read)

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ your banana, thank you. (to want / not)

5. The cows \_\_\_\_\_ on all the flowers. (to stomp)

6. Leo \_\_\_\_\_ to understand algebra. (to struggle)

7. Our neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ very quiet today. (to seem)

8. Laila and Howard \_\_\_\_\_ their peanuts. (to share / not)

9. Finley \_\_\_\_\_ all the best Xbox games currently available. (to have)

10. The customers \_\_\_\_\_ that they are being given a good deal. (to doubt)

11. Eli \_\_\_\_\_ everyone a round of beers. (to get)

12. I might not go to Calcutta – I \_\_\_\_\_ second thoughts about it. (to have)

13. Though she needs a new chair now, Anna \_\_\_\_\_ all the options first. (to compare)

14. We \_\_\_\_\_ to deliver the table by Friday. (to promise)

15. Why \_\_\_\_\_ to be so dirty? (my hands / appear)

16. \_\_\_\_\_ new batteries too, now? (that clock / to need)



17. Who \_\_\_\_\_ to my radio show this week? (to listen)
18. What \_\_\_\_\_ to school today? (you / to wear)
19. \_\_\_\_\_ that singing bird? (Maria / to hear / not)
20. Why \_\_\_\_\_ building dams? (beavers / to love)

### 18.3 Answers

### 18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

Complete the following sentences with either the present simple or the present continuous form, without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ (to wash) my car every Tuesday.

• A: I wash my car every Tuesday. (repeated event)

1. She's frustrated because she \_\_\_\_\_. (to clean up / always)
2. The beach \_\_\_\_\_ crowded today. (to be)
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ dark, I don't think we should walk home. (to get)
4. They usually \_\_\_\_\_ in the dining room. (to eat)
5. When you flick a switch, the light \_\_\_\_\_ on. (to come)
6. This cheese \_\_\_\_\_ awful. (to smell)
7. "Now, I \_\_\_\_\_ this store open!" (to declare)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ for new books to read. (to look / always)
9. Our grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ twice a month. (to visit)
10. They say actions \_\_\_\_\_ louder than words. (to speak)
11. The swimmers \_\_\_\_\_ for the gold medal. (to compete)
12. Gary is not home, he \_\_\_\_\_ the dog. (to walk)
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ we take a different route home. (to propose)
14. Seagull numbers \_\_\_\_\_ because tourists \_\_\_\_\_ food around. (to increase, to leave)
15. Look, that tree \_\_\_\_\_ in the wind! (to sway)

### 18.4 Answers

### 18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or present perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past simple only tells us something was completed in the past, while the present perfect shows it is relevant to the present.

For example:

• Q: You \_\_\_\_\_ the door open – please close it. (to leave)

• A: You have left the door open – please close it.

1. This bread \_\_\_\_\_ mouldy. (to go)
2. Alison \_\_\_\_\_ a website this morning. (to create)

3. He \_\_\_\_\_ the floor before dinner. (to sweep / not)
4. The boiler \_\_\_\_\_ again, so there is no hot water. (to break)
5. I cannot come to class. Last time, Mr Rogers \_\_\_\_\_ me not to come back. (to tell)
6. Nathan has passed his driving test because he \_\_\_\_\_. (to quit / not)
7. My cousin hates spiders, so he \_\_\_\_\_ all of his windows. (to seal)
8. The garden \_\_\_\_\_ with the recent hot weather. (to bloom)
9. The sailors \_\_\_\_\_ quickly because the winds were favourable. (to move)
10. Chloe is visiting, but she \_\_\_\_\_ how long she will stay. (to say / not)
11. My phone battery \_\_\_\_\_, can I use your charger? (to die)
12. She could not find her purse, so \_\_\_\_\_ with her credit card. (to pay)
13. The school want to speak to me because my essay \_\_\_\_\_ the competition. (to win)
14. Did you receive the coffee machine you \_\_\_\_\_? (to order)
15. We put our poster up in the hall, \_\_\_\_\_ it? (you / to see)
16. \_\_\_\_\_ the candles when you went shopping yesterday? (you / to buy)
17. \_\_\_\_\_ in your assignment yet? (you / to give / not)
18. Why \_\_\_\_\_ all the baguettes? There are none left! (that woman / to take)
19. Lola is telling everyone about her new job, \_\_\_\_\_ to you about it? (you / to speak)
20. \_\_\_\_\_ (the farmer / to deliver) that milk, or have you been to the shop?

### 18.5 Answers

### 18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or present perfect continuous form. Remember, the past continuous tells us an action was ongoing in the past, while the present perfect continuous shows an action started in the past is ongoing in the present.

For example:

• Q: Our relatives \_\_\_\_\_ us every Christmas since 1987.

• A: Our relatives have been visiting us every Christmas since 1987.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ to pottery classes earlier this year. (to go)
2. Tristan \_\_\_\_\_ fake money and now he is in jail. (to print)
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ too hard this month, take a break. (to work)
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ her dad build the shed until Friday. (to help / not)
5. The teenagers \_\_\_\_\_ the streets last week. Are they back? (to clean)
6. Hundreds of thousands of people \_\_\_\_\_ the petition. It could reach a million by tomorrow. (to sign)
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ lessons since January, to improve our pronunciation. (to take)
8. The king \_\_\_\_\_ his responsibilities, so a committee was formed. (to avoid)
9. The ivy \_\_\_\_\_ over our wall. We must cut it back before it gets worse. (to spread)

10. They \_\_\_\_\_ the window – it stinks in here! (to open / not)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ here before me? (you / to wait)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ this exhibit for long? (the museum / to show)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you today? (the children / to bother)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ when you used the bike? (the wheel / to squeak)

#### 18.6 Answers

#### 18.7 Past Present Emphasis

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the past simple or present perfect form, without contractions. The past simple may be used instead of the present perfect when we wish to emphasise completion or to emphasise the subject that completed an action.

For example:

• Q: Yes, the dishes are clean. I \_\_\_\_\_ them, not Harry. (to wash)

• A: Yes, the dishes are clean. I washed them, not Harry.

1. Who left this bag here? It \_\_\_\_\_ a stain. (to leave)
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ me to come to the game. (to convince / not)
3. I know Germany well, because I \_\_\_\_\_ there for six months last year. (to live)
4. The car just made an awful noise – I think we \_\_\_\_\_ a log. (to hit)
5. She was sure about it: Simon \_\_\_\_\_ the vase. (to break)
6. I could not bring the book home. The librarian \_\_\_\_\_ to lend it to me. (to refuse)
7. This kitchen is unsanitary. Rats \_\_\_\_\_ the cellar. (to infest)
8. My phone \_\_\_\_\_ working. Can I borrow yours? (to stop)
9. What is in the oven? \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes? (you / to cook)
10. Who designed these wonderful curtains? \_\_\_\_\_ them? (you / to do)
11. Someone is stealing my socks. \_\_\_\_\_ them? (Billie / to take)
12. How is your degree? \_\_\_\_\_ any easier? (it / to get)

#### 18.7 Answers

#### 18.8 Duration in the Present 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present continuous or present perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present continuous tells us an action is ongoing now, while the present perfect continuous shows an ongoing action started in the past.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ to download this movie for hours. (to try)

• A: I have been trying to download this movie for hours.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ this washing machine for fifteen years. (to use)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ to work for the whole week, starting today. (to walk)
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ which scarf to buy. (to consider)
4. The couple \_\_\_\_\_ for a while. (to shop)

5. William \_\_\_\_\_ computer games for very long. (to play / not)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ me since I came in – stop it! (to watch)
7. Alice \_\_\_\_\_ doughnuts every day this week, we have decided. (to buy)
8. That man \_\_\_\_\_ hats at a discount for the next two hours. (to sell)
9. You've been quiet. \_\_\_\_\_ all morning? (you / to read)
10. I need the car later. \_\_\_\_\_ it all day? (you / to use)
11. She has been unwell for weeks. \_\_\_\_\_ her medicine? (she / to take / not)
12. Why \_\_\_\_\_ me so many questions right now? (he / to ask)

#### 18.8 Answers

#### 18.9 Duration in the Present 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present perfect or present perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present perfect is used for states and to discuss occasional events, while the present perfect continuous shows an ongoing process.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ to Vilnius many times. (to go)

• A: I have gone to Vilnius many times.

1. Martha \_\_\_\_\_ six shops in Brighton. (to open)
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ in hotels many times this year. (to stay)
3. The sea \_\_\_\_\_ warmer all summer. (to get)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ to class a single time this week. (to go / not)
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes twice today. (to wash)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ as many letters as I used to, and hope that will change. (to receive / not)
7. Claudia \_\_\_\_\_ on her brother for fifteen minutes. (to spy)
8. Eliot \_\_\_\_\_ any television since yesterday. (to watch / not)
9. Margaret \_\_\_\_\_ her geography textbook since last Wednesday. (to study)
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes in the wrong cupboard for months. (to put)
11. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ his teacher an apple once a week this year. (to give)
12. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to school almost every day this year, but sometimes walks. (to take)
13. How many times \_\_\_\_\_ they would repair the road? (they / to say)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ in Oxford recently? (you / to bowl)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ her hair short for a long time? (she / to cut)
16. How long \_\_\_\_\_ for? Get them some water! (the clients / to wait)

#### 18.9 Answers

#### 18.10 Duration in the Present 3

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the present perfect or present perfect continuous form, without contractions.

Remember that the present perfect is used for states, possession and senses.

For example:

- Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ in Hamburg for sixteen months. (to live)
  - A: I have lived in Hamburg for sixteen months.
1. We \_\_\_\_\_ each other for twenty years. (to love)
  2. They \_\_\_\_\_ in magic ever since they saw the Great Roberto perform. (to believe)
  3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to rap music for the past three weeks. (to listen)
  4. Axel \_\_\_\_\_ tired since he woke up. (to be)
  5. She \_\_\_\_\_ Victorian ghost stories all night. (to read)
  6. You \_\_\_\_\_ during this holiday. (to relax / not)
  7. Doris \_\_\_\_\_ all the children's speeches today. (to hear)
  8. What \_\_\_\_\_ in his shed all morning? (Carter / to do)
  9. How long \_\_\_\_\_ about the secret passage for? (they / to know)
  10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ everything he has been saying? (we / to understand / not)
  11. How long \_\_\_\_\_ on our fence for? (that fox / to sit)
  12. \_\_\_\_\_ restless for long? (the villagers / to seem)

#### 18.10 Answers

#### 18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

The following sentences are in the present continuous or present perfect continuous forms, which can be used to emphasise tasks or continuous temporary states. Indicate if the sentences are correct or incorrect. Try to explain why.

For example:

- Q: Clarice has been knowing her friends for years.
  - A: Incorrect – to know is not typically temporary
1. Fred is constantly practising the violin at night.
  2. Violet is always asking the wrong questions.
  3. You are not understanding the question, let me explain.
  4. The women are never being unkind to animals.
  5. She is looking rather elegant today.
  6. The garage has been smelling strange lately.
  7. This parade is taking place each winter.
  8. Our streets flood because leaves are blocking the drains.
  9. Are you seeing what's happening outside?
  10. Is he believing in aliens?
  11. Is Mario liking the shirt we gave him?
  12. Are you loving this weather or what?

## 18.11 Answers

### 18.12 Mixed Present Matching

Form logical present tense sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. I drink tea because it tastes great.
- b. I am drinking tea because I am cold.
- c. I have drunk the tea that you gave me.
- d. I have been drinking tea since I was seven.

1.

2.

3.

4.

## 18.12 Answers

### 18.13 Present Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple present tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which started first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: I am attending college because I have finished school.

• A: A) I have finished B) I am attending

have finished = present perfect, action completed with present result

am attending = present continuous, action in progress now

1. I live in Surrey, but I commute to London every day.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My sister is asking if the teacher has marked her paper.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. He is reading because the TV is not working.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. We have been visiting this campsite for years, but it is getting more crowded.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My mother cooks an excellent soup which has been in the family for generations.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The hotel seems empty – perhaps the guests are sleeping.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. They are repairing the door I have been complaining about since Tuesday.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Lottie has learned to walk and she is wandering about everywhere.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What are you watching? Have you seen it before?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I want to get to Kings Cross – is this bus going the right way?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 18.13 Answers

#### 18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ), without contractions, using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text.

##### A Difficult Interview

Emma (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) for the Daily Sentinel newspaper. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on a feature article about pop icon, Natalie Reid. It is a very important piece for the newspaper, because Reid (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) one of the most famous musicians in the world, and she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grant) Emma an exclusive interview. Emma (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to research) the singer for a month, to make sure she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) an informed set of questions to ask.

Today, Emma (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to edit) her interview questions. Some of her examples (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to include):

What (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to like) to do in your free time?

How (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (fame / to change) your life?

Where (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to get) your ideas from?

How long (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to write) music for?

What (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to like / not) about being famous?

Emma (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) worried, because these questions (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) too ordinary. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (Reid / to hear / not) them a hundred times before? Reid (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tour) the world for the past six months. She (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) thousands of people who probably asked the same things.

Emma (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to ask something different. Reid (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) from an unusual background; she (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in a poor neighbourhood all her life, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) generously to charities. The singer (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fund / now) the construction of new housing. But Emma (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fear) asking questions about these topics, because she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit / not) Reid's neighbourhood herself. The area (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to frighten) her. And (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (her readers / to care) about these things? On social media, Reid's fans (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise / only) questions about her relationships for the past few months.

(29) \_\_\_\_\_ (Emma / to make) things too complicated?

No, Emma (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think), now, it's time to get on with it. She (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) foolish to avoid these topics. And she (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to waste) time worrying about it. Most likely, Reid (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for someone to ask the important questions!

#### 18.14 Answers

#### 18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

Barry works as a part-time school caretaker. The following passage describes what he did yesterday. Mostly, he followed a typical routine. Convert this passage to the present tense to describe his everyday routine or variations from it. The first two sentences have been done for you.

• Q: Barry got to work at 6 p.m. He talked with Year 2 teacher, Mrs Jones, as she was still in the school.

• A: Barry gets to work at 6 p.m. He talks with the teachers, if they are still in the school.

Barry started work by vacuuming all the carpets. He lifted the chairs onto tables to clear the floors, and emptied the bins in each room. Barry wiped the boards clean, which is sometimes necessary.

Then, Barry swept the tiled floors in the corridors and halls. Because it was Friday, he mopped these floors. He used two buckets, one for soapy water and one for rinsing.

Once all the floors were finished, Barry cleaned the washrooms. He sprayed them with disinfectant and scrubbed the toilets. He replaced the soap and toilet paper because they had run out.

After his cleaning duties were finished, Barry took a break at the same time as the headmistress, as usual. He made tea for himself and the headmistress, because he got to the common room first. If the headmistress had arrived first, she would have prepared the tea. Barry would have read a book during the break, like he usually does, but he forgot to bring one, so he listened to the radio.

After his break, Barry focused on more varied tasks. Firstly, he completed repairs on doors, furniture and fences. If it were winter, Barry would spread grit outside to stop the paths getting slippery. As it is summer, he cut weeds and pruned hedges.

Barry would normally finish work at 9 p.m., but he stayed later because there were extra tasks to do. A teacher needed help moving furniture and preparing equipment for a class. The teacher and Barry did these tasks together. He will get paid extra for this.

#### 18.15 Answers

#### 18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ), without contractions, using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text. Note that there is flexibility between the present simple and the present perfect for reporting stories live; mostly the present perfect is used when we reflect on the result of an action, rather than what is happening in the moment.

#### Doves United vs The Firecats: Live Commentary

You (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to join) us live for an exciting match between two women's soccer teams, Doves United and The Firecats. They (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to field) strong teams today, and both teams (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to perform) brilliantly to reach this semi-final. They (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to compete) since June 1st for a chance at the championship trophy, and today's match decides who (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to qualify) for the final!

Doves United (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) the game: they (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the kick-off now. The Firecats (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to chase) them right away; oh my, these women (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move) fast!

United's captain, Morales, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the ball, and she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sprint) up the right flank. But she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to face) trouble! Firecats defender Lux (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close) on Morales. They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to clash)! Lux (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to steal) the ball and she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a break. The United team (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) spread out; they (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) her through!

Lux (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to race) into the penalty box – only the keeper to beat!

Oh no! Lux is down! United's centre-half (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hit) her from behind. An awful foul! Lux (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to roll) on the floor, she could be injured. The referee (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) play, and The Firecats (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) in their opponent's half. Someone is shouting – someone else is on the floor. Another player (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to push) her over! Things (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) out of hand.

The referee (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to blow) her whistle! She (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) the red card to United's centre-half. And to a Firecats player! (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (the referee / to handle) this well? Yes. It (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) she has everything under control again.

The players (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to calm) down. Play will resume with a penalty.

Lux (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the penalty spot, apparently she (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to break / not) any bones. This is an exciting pairing – Lux (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to score) eight out of her last nine penalties in this tournament, but the United keeper (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) nine out of her last ten! No doubt they (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (both / to practise) very hard. Lux (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to step) back from the ball, ready to strike! She (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (to shoot) – she (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to score)!

One minute in, The Firecats (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the lead! This game (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to promise) to be thrilling.



## 18.16 Answers

### 18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ) using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text. Note that there can be some flexibility between the present simple and the present perfect for following instructions; mostly the present perfect is used when it is important that the action is completed. Use contractions where possible.

#### How to Bake a Perfect Loaf

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to want) to make a perfect loaf of bread? This recipe (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to deliver) great results.

To make life easier, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) your ingredients in advance: 500g of strong flour, 8g of yeast, 300ml of water and 10g of salt. These simple ingredients (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to combine) for a basic but delicious loaf.

Before you (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin), a word about temperature. When it is hot, the mixture (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to react) faster. On colder days, the recipe (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) longer to complete. For balance, we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) the mixture to be about 75 degrees. If you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to warm) the water, you can manage this temperature.

Step one: combine the water and the yeast in a bowl. The flour (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) in next, then the salt on top of the flour. This order is important, because the salt (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to affect) the yeast if they (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to touch) directly.

Mix the ingredients: you can use a spoon, but hand mixing (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) you a better feel for the results.

(14) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / mix) it thoroughly now? (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to create) a dough! Leave it for about 20 minutes: during this time, the flour (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to absorb) water.

Next: how (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to develop) gluten? This recipe (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to require / not) kneading, but uses folding instead. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to place) the dough on a floured counter and fold one side to about halfway in. Turn 90 degrees and fold again. It (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) two or three turns, usually, until you have a tight ball. (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) that easy?

(22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) the dough back in the bowl, covered by a towel, and leave it to rise for about 90 minutes. When the dough (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) light and airy, it is ready. Back on the counter, where it (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) to be folded again, like a letter. Fold to the centre, then turn, until (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to form) a tight parcel.

Now, the dough (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rise) one more time – leave it for another hour to 90 minutes. When you press it with a finger, (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (the dough / spring) back? Then it is ready.

We (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to use) a Dutch Oven to do the cooking, preheated to 475 degrees. A Dutch Oven (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to trap) steam with a lid, for the best results. The dough (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) in seam side up. The seam (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) during cooking to give a nice rustic look.

Put the Dutch Oven and dough in the oven for 25 minutes, then (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remove) the lid. Another 15–20 minutes in the oven (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to produce) a golden loaf with a firm crust. A properly cooked loaf (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a hollow thump when you tap the base.

(35) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to sound) done? (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat / not) it yet! (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rest) the loaf on a wire rack for 30 minutes, so the interior crumb can set, making it easier to cut. Congratulations: (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to bake) a perfect loaf!

## 18.17 Answers

### 1. The Future in Use

#### 19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the will or to be going to future simple forms, without contractions. Remember, will is mostly used for recently decided actions and predictions, while to be going to is used for planned events and to emphasise determination.

For example:

- Q: Someone is calling – I \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.
- A: Someone is calling – I will answer the phone.

1. Because Lucas is tired, Regina \_\_\_\_\_ him a tea. (to make)
2. This Halloween, Tina \_\_\_\_\_ as a zombie. (to dress)
3. My brother is outside, \_\_\_\_\_ him in? (you / to let)
4. Those men have used the wrong timber. The house \_\_\_\_\_. (to collapse)
5. Claire thinks her boss \_\_\_\_\_ her latest report. (to like)
6. Is that a woodpecker in the tree? I \_\_\_\_\_ my binoculars to check. (to get)
7. Despite the cold summer, the building managers \_\_\_\_\_ the heating until October. (not / to activate)
8. We've been looking forward to our train journey; we \_\_\_\_\_ across the Swiss Alps. (to travel)
9. When Paul gets back from Scotland, he \_\_\_\_\_ a new job. (to start)
10. Tim's parents said he cannot go outside for a month, so he \_\_\_\_\_ computer games every weekend. (to play)
11. I was planning to go climbing, but I \_\_\_\_\_ and see if this rain stops! (to wait)
12. The swimming pool is always busy; it \_\_\_\_\_ busy today, I am sure. (to be)
13. "Where are you going with that knife?"

"I \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of birthday cake." (to cut)

1. "What drink would you like?"

"I \_\_\_\_\_ a cocktail." (to have)

1. "Where can I complain about the smell in our room?"

"The lady behind the counter \_\_\_\_\_ you." (to help)

#### 19.1 Answers

#### 19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous for future simple meaning, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is mostly used for scheduled events, while the present continuous is used for arrangements.

For example:

- Q: I need a new computer, \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow? (the shop / open)
  - A: I need a new computer, is the shop open tomorrow?
1. Dawn \_\_\_\_\_ her parents next Tuesday. (to visit)
  2. Our bus \_\_\_\_\_ at 12 noon. (to arrive)
  3. The family \_\_\_\_\_ home next Christmas. (to stay)
  4. Ian \_\_\_\_\_ during the following three weekends. (to work / not)
  5. The meeting this afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ every department. (to involve)
  6. Hurry, the play \_\_\_\_\_ at 8 p.m. and I don't want to be late! (to start)
  7. Everyone is waiting for Cathy, because she \_\_\_\_\_ champagne. (to bring)
  8. The ghost \_\_\_\_\_ at sundown, we must be ready. (to appear)
  9. Construction work \_\_\_\_\_ on the new apartment block tomorrow. (to begin)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ to the dance on Thursday? (you / to come)

11. \_\_\_\_\_ the speech this evening? (Adrian / to give)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ for a piano class in the morning? (we / to meet)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ at three or four? (the train / to leave)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ us for dinner? (your new girlfriend / to join)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ today? (the post office / to deliver)

## 19.2 Answers

### 19.3 Mixed Future Simple

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the most appropriate future simple form: present simple , present continuous , will or to be going to . Use contractions where possible.

For example:

• Q: There is a terrible draft here – I \_\_\_\_\_ to sit somewhere else. (to move)

• A: "There is a terrible draft here – I'll move to sit somewhere else."

1. "We need volunteers to clean the beach."

"I \_\_\_\_\_ it if I have time." (to do)

1. "Lizzy is on holiday next week."

"Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere nice?" (she / to travel)

1. "Will our bus get to the airport in time?"

"I think so, check in \_\_\_\_\_ in half an hour." (to close)

1. "Have you heard the weather forecast?"

"Yes, they said it \_\_\_\_\_." (to rain)

1. "My aunt is in town this Friday. What should we do?"

"The museum \_\_\_\_\_ an exhibition on Victorian clothes, you could try that." (to run)

1. "What time should we leave for the game on Saturday?"

"Early – the rail workers \_\_\_\_\_ on strike this weekend." (to be)

1. "I need to go home and feed my cats. What time does this show \_\_\_\_\_ ?" (to finish)

2. "Do you know we've run out of printer paper?"

"Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ some this afternoon." (to buy)

1. "Are you okay? You look very pale."

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ sick!" (to be)

1. "Can you come with me to the ballet performance?"

"Unfortunately not, I \_\_\_\_\_ golf this afternoon." (to play)

1. "Have you seen the mess on our window?"

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it in a minute." (to clean)

1. "Why are you writing in such a rush?"

"Because the show \_\_\_\_\_ in half an hour!" (to start)

1. "Shall we check out Dover Castle tomorrow?"

"I can't, I \_\_\_\_\_ all day tomorrow." (to work)

1. "Does anyone want to go for an ice cream?"

"Me, I \_\_\_\_\_ !" (to come)

### 19.3 Answers

### 19.4 Future Processes

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future simple or future continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future simple is mostly used for planned or expected actions while we use the future continuous for ongoing or interrupted temporary processes. For the future simple, will, to be going to or the present continuous can mostly be used flexibly here.

For example:

• Q: Theo \_\_\_\_\_ across Devon all spring. (to cycle)

• A: Theo will be cycling across Devon all spring. (or is going to be cycling)

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ you in the park later. (to meet)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ me his car. (to sell)
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ hockey for hours. (to play)
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ colder over the next two weeks. (to get)
5. The college \_\_\_\_\_ new students in September. (to accept)
6. We are meeting up and travelling together – our friends \_\_\_\_\_ at the station for us. (to wait / already)
7. Rebecca \_\_\_\_\_ in the Hilton while she's in town. (to stay)
8. The mayor \_\_\_\_\_ the new leisure centre this Wednesday. (to open)
9. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late. (to cook)
10. Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she \_\_\_\_\_ before then. (to eat)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ this Sunday? (you / to work)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ all the bread before 6 a.m.? (they / to deliver)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ at 3 p.m., in case we need to call? (she / to drive)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ in Scotland all weekend? (Frank / to hike)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ the right choice next time? (I / to make)

### 19.4 Answers

### 19.5 Future Sequences

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future simple or future perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect indicates an action will be completed at a particular point in the future.

For example:

• Q: We will \_\_\_\_\_ the door by lunchtime. (to paint)

• A: We will have painted the door by lunchtime.

1. Shirley will \_\_\_\_\_ her exams in June. She will \_\_\_\_\_ by August. (to take / to graduate)
2. Our parents will \_\_\_\_\_ at Christmas. They will \_\_\_\_\_ presents. (to visit / to bring)

3. You are going to \_\_\_\_\_ some new shoes. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ enough money? (to buy / to earn)
4. The tide will \_\_\_\_\_ highest at 11 a.m., because it will \_\_\_\_\_ all the way in. (to be / to come)
5. Brenda is going to \_\_\_\_\_ a cake before the party. She will \_\_\_\_\_ it from scratch. (to bake / to make)
6. Ulrich will \_\_\_\_\_ his test by 1 p.m. We are going to \_\_\_\_\_ him a party. (to pass / to throw)
7. Workers will \_\_\_\_\_ the high street this evening. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ traffic. (to close / to divert)
8. I hope the weather will \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. They say it is going to \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning. (to improve / to rain)
9. Are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ Jon about the wedding soon? By next week, he will \_\_\_\_\_ it from someone else. (to tell / to hear)
10. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ your door before you go away? You will not \_\_\_\_\_ with it in that state, will you? (to repair / to leave)

#### 19.5 Answers

#### 19.6 Duration in the Future 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future continuous or future perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect continuous is used to indicate duration with reference to a specific point of future time.

For example:

• Q: By the time they arrive, they will \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours. (to drive)

• A: By the time they arrive, they will have been driving for three hours.

1. My parents will \_\_\_\_\_ together for 20 years this October. (to live)
2. The fishermen will \_\_\_\_\_ in 15 minutes. (to return)
3. You are going to \_\_\_\_\_ all evening. (to study)
4. He will \_\_\_\_\_ to fix the sink all day before he admits he needs help. (to try)
5. By the time of the competition, Sally is going to \_\_\_\_\_ for eighteen months. (to train)
6. I am going to \_\_\_\_\_ for three days, so I won't be able to call. (to travel)
7. The cat will \_\_\_\_\_ in the loft during the party. (to sleep)
8. Inflation will \_\_\_\_\_ for five months by February. (to rise)
9. Colin is going to \_\_\_\_\_ all day if he reaches the seaside by sunset. (to walk)
10. At midnight, we will \_\_\_\_\_ the fireworks. (to watch)
11. At noon, we will \_\_\_\_\_ for Robert for an hour. (to wait)
12. The days will \_\_\_\_\_ shorter in September. (to get)

#### 19.6 Answers

#### 19.7 Duration in the Future 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future perfect or future perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect continuous is used to indicate an ongoing future process, while the future perfect tells us an action will be completed.

For example:

• Q: The guard will \_\_\_\_\_ for seven hours by the end of his shift. (to work)

• A: The guard will have been working for seven hours by the end of his shift.

1. The eggs will \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge for a month by the weekend. (to sit)
2. I will \_\_\_\_\_ my essay by 5 p.m. (to write)
3. Eric will \_\_\_\_\_ Vikings for two years before he writes his book. (to research)
4. The tourists will \_\_\_\_\_ all the pubs in town before they go home. (to visit)
5. You won't see any birds, because they will \_\_\_\_\_ south for the winter. (to migrate)
6. Before long, Ola will \_\_\_\_\_ for her missing sock for a week. (to search)
7. We will \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours when Jim joins us. (to talk)
8. If it survives much longer, the tree will \_\_\_\_\_ for fifteen years. (to grow)
9. By the time we leave school, our teacher will \_\_\_\_\_ us everything. (to teach)
10. Peggy will \_\_\_\_\_ a pony for three months by her birthday. (to demand)

#### 19.7 Answers

#### 19.8 Mixed Future Matching

Form logical future tense sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. We will cook dinner after your father gets back.
- b. We will be cooking dinner during the radio broadcast.
- c. We will have cooked dinner and have it ready before your father arrives.
- d. We will have been cooking dinner for an hour when your father gets back.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

#### 19.8 Answers

#### 19.9 Future Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple future tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

- Q: We will buy a new boat after our old one breaks.
- A: A) our old one breaks B) we will buy

1. They will come inside after they finish playing.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The party will end once the last guest leaves.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. We will have been married for ten years if we last another summer!

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. If the van is fixed by tomorrow, Tim is going to drive.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. When the company releases the game, they will have been working on it for three years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She will visit her grandmother while she is studying in York.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. If the banks calls, tell them I will come back in an hour.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The match will start as soon as the referee arrives.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. They will deliver the table while we are preparing dinner.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Our luggage will be cleared after they have inspected it.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Why are you going to Scotland while we will be in England?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will Larry collect the painting before the shop closes?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who is attending the conference in spring? Your passes will have been ordered by next week.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does the train leave after 9 a.m.? Otherwise we will have to pay for a peak ticket.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. When Aunt Gina leaves, will she have seen everyone in town?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 19.9 Answers

#### 19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form, without contractions (including present tenses for future meaning).

1. After you take a nap, you \_\_\_\_\_ a lot better. (to feel)

2. You need to finish your work before you \_\_\_\_\_ home at 6 p.m. (to go)

3. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ bread from the corner shop when it opens. (to buy)

4. We \_\_\_\_\_ a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting. (to have)

5. Before we start our lesson, we \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday's class. (to review)

6. We \_\_\_\_\_ in the shelter when the bus comes. (to sit)

7. I'm very sorry, it seems Dr. Jones \_\_\_\_\_ back until 2 p.m. (to come)
8. I don't think you \_\_\_\_\_ any problems when you land in Boston. (to have)
9. On Friday at 8 o'clock, I \_\_\_\_\_ my friend. (to meet)
10. The English lesson \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:45. (to start)
11. Look at the clouds – it \_\_\_\_\_ in a few minutes. (to rain)
12. When you get off the train, I \_\_\_\_\_ for you by the ticket machine. (to wait)
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ your children with you to France, aren't you? (to take)
14. This time next week, I \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland! (to ski)
15. Now I \_\_\_\_\_ my answers. (to check)

#### 19.10 Answers

#### 19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets into an appropriate future form, without contractions. Remember that unless we have a specific reason to use certain future tenses, simpler forms are often preferred. In some cases, more than one option is possible.

1. The train \_\_\_\_\_ at 12:30. (to arrive)
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at a seaside restaurant on Sunday. (to eat)
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ in Brighton throughout the parade. (to snow)
4. By the time we get home, they \_\_\_\_\_ football for 30 minutes. (to play)
5. Paul \_\_\_\_\_ to London on Monday morning. (to fly)
6. Wait! I \_\_\_\_\_ you to the station. (to drive)
7. This summer, I will \_\_\_\_\_ in Goring for four years. (to live)
8. The baby should be due soon; next week Erin \_\_\_\_\_ pregnant for nine months. (to be)
9. Are you still writing your essay? If you finish by 4 p.m., we \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk. (to go)
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ my mother in April. (to see)
11. In three years, I \_\_\_\_\_ in a different country. (to live)
12. When they get married in March, they \_\_\_\_\_ each other for six years. (to know)
13. You're carrying too much. I \_\_\_\_\_ the door for you. (to open)
14. Do you think the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ our homework by Monday morning? (to mark)
15. When I see you tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ you my new book. (to show)

#### 19.11 Answers

#### 19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

Listed below is the Robinson family's schedule for a trip to Winchester. Indicate which statements are true at the listed times.

- 06:30: Breakfast and washing
- 07:30: Start journey by car
- 09:30: Arrive in Winchester and walk into town
- 10:15: Tea in "Frieda's Tearoom"



- 10:45: Explore town
- 11:30: Tour of cathedral
- 12:30: Lunch at “The Old Vine”
- 13:45: Visit the castle ruins, then explore more of the town
- 15:00: Visit the old mill on the way back to the car
- 15:45: Travel back by car
- 18:00: Home in time for dinner!

For example:

At 07.30, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will leave home. – TRUE
- b. ... will have travelled by car.
- c. ... are starting their journey. – TRUE
- d. ... are going to have breakfast.

1. At 10.35, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will be parking the car.
- b. ... will have walked into town.
- c. ... will be having tea.
- d. ... are seeing the cathedral.

1. At 12.40, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will be in “The Old Vine”.
- b. ... will have been touring the cathedral for an hour.
- c. ... are going to explore the town.
- d. ... are going to have finished lunch.

1. At 15.15, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will be heading home.
- b. ... are going to be seeing the old mill.
- c. ... will have been exploring Winchester for over three hours.
- d. ... will have eaten lunch.

1. At 18.00, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... are going to be driving.
- b. ... will arrive home.
- c. ... will have eaten dinner.
- d. ... will have travelled for two hours or more.

### 19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

Roger and Mandy are planning their wedding. They have a timetable set out below. Complete the sentences about the day in the future tense, without contractions, using the will form.

- 09:00 – Wedding party arrives at St Christopher's Church. System checks and final run-through with priest.
- 10:00 – Guests start to arrive. Ushers and bridesmaids help seat guests while bride and groom get ready for ceremony.
- 10:30 – Ceremony begins.
- 11:30 – Ceremony ends. The couple sign documents, followed by photos and a champagne reception.
- 12:30 – Guests driven by bus to McGruber House. Bride and groom greet guests with welcome drinks in the Library Hall.
- 13:30 – Everyone is moved to the Banquet Hall and seated. Lunch is served, with the jazz band playing.
- 15:00 – Speeches given by groom, father-of-the-bride, and best man. Gifts and thanks are also given.
- 16:00 – Guests return to the Library Hall where the jazz band play again. Magician performs tricks.
- 18:00 – Rock band arrives, with dance floor cleared.
- 18:15 – The married couple's first dance, followed by general dancing.
- 19:30 – Taco van arrives for evening snacks.
- 22:00 – Party finishes, with bus to take everyone home.

For example:

• Q: At 09:15, the wedding party \_\_\_\_\_ and they \_\_\_\_\_ a final run-through. (to arrive / to do)

• A: At 09:15, the wedding party will have arrived and they will be doing a final run-through.

1. At 10:00, the guests \_\_\_\_\_ to arrive. (to start)
2. Between 10:00 and 10:30, the ushers \_\_\_\_\_ guests to find their seats. (to help)
3. When the ceremony begins, the bride \_\_\_\_\_ about 30 minutes to get ready. (to have)
4. By 11:20, the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ for almost an hour. (to run)
5. At 11:35, the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ and the couple \_\_\_\_\_ their documents. (to end / to sign)
6. All the guests \_\_\_\_\_ to McGruber House after the photos have been taken. (to move)
7. The couple \_\_\_\_\_ welcome drinks in the Library Hall. (to host)
8. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ a seat in the Banquet Hall before lunch is served. (to take)
9. The jazz band \_\_\_\_\_ during lunch. (to play)
10. At 15:00, the groom \_\_\_\_\_ his speech. The other speeches \_\_\_\_\_. (to give / to follow)
11. A magician \_\_\_\_\_ tricks while the jazz band is playing in the Library Hall. (to perform / to play)
12. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the dance floor before the couple's first dance. (to clear)
13. A taco van \_\_\_\_\_ more food later in the evening, in case guests get hungry. (to provide)
14. When the party finishes, people \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. (to dance)
15. The bus \_\_\_\_\_ guests to their hotels at the end of the night. (to return)

### 19.13 Answers

### 19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

In the following dialogue, Lucy and Charles make plans for the day. Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate future form. Use contractions where possible.

#### Plans for the Day

Lucy: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to come) with me to the lake today?

Charles: I've finished my work, so (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to join) you, yes. Shall I drive?

Lucy: No, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to take) the bus. The car is making funny noises.

Charles: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to check) it out, maybe I can fix it.

Lucy: Oh, don't – (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to work) on the car for hours!

Charles: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to take / only) a few minutes, I'm sure.

Lucy: The bus (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) before you finish.

Charles: But (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to use) the car this evening, too. I'd best get it working.

Lucy: This evening? Where (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to go)?

Charles: (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to play) poker at Gilbert's, from 8 o'clock until late.

Lucy: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to meet) your friends? What (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to do)?

Charles: (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to see / not) a play this evening?

Lucy: Oh no, that was cancelled weeks ago. Perhaps (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to invite) Janet round. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to come) back from Ireland today.

Charles: Great! (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to have) lots of stories, I would like to see her.

Lucy: But (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to enjoy) your game instead.

Charles: Maybe she could come another day. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to be / not) tired this evening?

Lucy: Ireland isn't far – (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to travel / not) too long. And (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to make) her some dinner.

Charles: A meal, too? No – (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to cook) this evening, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to prepare) more for you two.

Lucy: (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to start / barely) before you have to go to poker, I'm sure! It's fine. (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to order) a takeaway, if we have to. Now, are you coming to the lake? (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (the bus / to leave) in around ten minutes.

Charles: Okay, okay! (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to look) at the car later.

#### 19.14 Answers

#### 19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

Complete the following passage by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form ( present simple , future simple , future continuous , future perfect or future perfect continuous ), without contractions. There may be more than one option with will / to be going to / present continuous forms.

#### Summer Plans

Amber (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) school in the middle of July. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) three months of holiday, then she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) university in the autumn. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) Law at Oxford. The course (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to last) four years, and once she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to qualify) Amber (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) a job in London.

Over the summer, Amber (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) in the local garden centre. She (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) money for university, and also to travel. The garden centre (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) her take two weeks off in August. During that break, she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) to France with her friends, Holly and Jaime.

All three friends have different plans for the trip. Holly (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) this summer, and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to explore) Europe for two months. When Amber (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) her in France, she (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) for three weeks

already. She (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) Germany and Italy, and after France she (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to continue) to Spain.

Jaime only has one week of holiday, so she (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) later, after Amber and Holly (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) Paris. They (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) south together, to stay by a lake. Amber hopes it (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) her fit before university, as the girls (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim) and (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hike) every day – as long as the weather (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stay) good. She (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) books to prepare for her course, too. By the time Amber (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move) to Oxford, she (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete) all the advance reading.

Unless she (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) a nice young man to distract her!

#### 19.15 Answers

#### 19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

Complete the following passage by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form ( present simple , future simple , future continuous , future perfect or future perfect continuous ), without contractions. There may be more than one option with will / to be going to / present continuous forms, as illustrated in the answers.

#### An End in Sight

The computer game Badger Spies (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hit) the shelves in three months. Over the next month, the developers (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) building the game so they can test it. Beta players (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) the game in detail, trying to spot problems. While they (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to test) the game, the marketing team (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finalise) an ambitious marketing campaign.

Badger Spies (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) on sale in thirteen countries, to start with, including the USA, the UK and Germany. The developers (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to host) a big launch party for the many releases, where they (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) food and drinks inspired by the game. The staff at the party (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) costumes from the Badger Spies world.

Not everyone is in a party mood, though. One designer, Rupert, worries they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete / not) the game in time. He expects he (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) improvements until the last minute, which means the beta players (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) an incomplete version for months before they report. He (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complain / not) to the team leader about it, though. They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to release) the game on the set date, even if the mistakes (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to correct / not). The company (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to invest) too much time and money in the marketing to slow down.

Rupert worries about the marketing campaign, too. It (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) people the wrong impression of the game, he thinks. The marketing team (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try / not) the game themselves, and have not discussed it with the design team. The boss announced, with great determination, that they (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) it sexy. Rupert does not think Badger Spies (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a sexy game.

Maybe he just feels negative because he is tired. By the time the game is out, Rupert and his team (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on the project for almost three years. Whether the game is good or not, he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to celebrate) finally being able to do something else. But the rest of the team are optimistic. The boss says Badger Spies (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to change) everything – children (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to dress) in badger costumes and movie producers (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) for the rights to make a film. Rupert does hope that all of that (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen). Mostly, though, he hopes the game (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to entertain) people, and that by the release day they (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fix) all the errors.

#### 19.16 Answers

##### 1. Mixed Tenses in Use

#### 20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

Read the mixed simple tense statements below. Identify the simple tense uses from following options:

- Completed action
- Past state
- Present rule
- Present state
- Future action

- Future state

For example:

- Q: Edgar washed his hands twice, to be sure.

- A: Completed action

1. Bryony queued for hours at the ticket office.
2. It will arrive in a week's time.
3. Unemployment will fall after the factory opens.
4. You never answer your phone.
5. Snails sleep under rocks.
6. It is very cold outside.
7. She gave the boys a very angry look.
8. Luke always asks about trains.
9. The mayor will resign because of the scandal.
10. They went to Dallas for his birthday.
11. I will go for a walk later.
12. On the seafront, it was incredibly windy.
13. We like dancing.
14. She will get married in the summer.
15. The men had pie for lunch.
16. Our parents will love this painting.
17. Tulips grow here each spring.
18. He will want to share that doughnut.
19. Someone took the sandwich I wanted.
20. We were ready for trouble.

#### 20.1 Answers

#### 20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

Read the mixed continuous tense statements below. Identify the continuous tense uses from following options:

- Temporary / ongoing process
- Process of change
- Emphatic repeated action
- Future arrangement

For example:

- Q: The sea level is rising because of global warming.
- A: Process of change

1. The Robertsons are staying in Bermuda next August.
2. My cousin is riding a bike to work from now on.
3. She is waiting in the hallway right now.
4. Sally was resting under the tree while reading her book.
5. It was getting harder to find a decent bagel in town.
6. I am moving to Mexico in two months.
7. Erin is forever complaining that no one listens to her.
8. His motorbike was constantly breaking down.
9. Mr Taylor is meeting us after his flight gets in.
10. Victor is dating the girl from the coffee shop.
11. People will be protesting outside when they pass the new law.
12. They were pulling the cart when the wheel fell off.
13. The plumber is repairing our toilet tomorrow.
14. I made lunch while the boys were playing in the garden.
15. With better tools, the factory will be expanding.
16. Our neighbourhood is becoming busier as more people move in.
17. The managers are hiring a new team of coders.
18. Justin is studying for a diploma.
19. My new toothbrush is arriving this afternoon.
20. Paige and Greg are working on their communications skills.

## 20.2 Answers

## 20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

Read the mixed perfect tense statements below. Identify the perfect tense uses from following options:

- Completed at a past time
- Past state duration
- Past affecting the present
- Ongoing state / activity
- Duration of ongoing activity
- Completed at a future time

For example:

- Q: Rhona has filled in this form five times already.
  - A: Ongoing activity
1. Foxes have raided our bins; there is garbage everywhere.
  2. The astronomy club has enlisted six new members this year, and it's only March.
  3. I have found some old books, do you want them?

4. The man had understood nothing the entire time he was studying.
5. Juliet has learned to sing, which is very distracting.
6. My son has watched many cartoons.
7. She had added the ingredients in the wrong order – the biscuits were ruined.
8. We cannot swim later, the escaped crabs will have infested the beach.
9. It was warm when Jared got home because he had forgotten to turn off the radiator.
10. Snakes have got into the shed – run!
11. The committee have met once a week for two years.
12. The couple had known each other for five years before marrying.
13. The offer will have ended before tomorrow.
14. Winston has spotted 50 different species of butterfly.
15. Hazel will have submitted her thesis by this evening.
16. Lydia had been the head chef since Rupert retired.
17. The ducks had stolen all the bread before we realised they were there.
18. Margret and Clive have travelled by train for twelve hours so far.

### 20.3 Answers

### 20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

Read the mixed perfect continuous tense statements below. Identify the perfect continuous tense uses from following options. Note that completed past processes often also include a duration; both uses may apply, depending on the emphasis on the activity or the time taken.

- Completed past process
- Duration of present process
- Present process started in the past
- Duration of future process

For example:

- Q: The seals will have been bathing here all summer.
- A: Duration of future process

\_\_\_\_\_

1. Adrian has been collecting names for his new club.
2. My parents have been warning me to wrap up since August.
3. The artist had been painting the mural when he ran out of paint.
4. The doctor will have been seeing patients for 30 years when he retires.
5. Wendel has been spending a lot of time worrying about earthquakes.
6. Shops will have been selling Christmas presents for months before the holiday.
7. This computer has been loading for an hour already!

8. We had been cooking all morning and the dinner was finally ready.
9. Richard has been swimming every day for a year.
10. Lily was tired because she had been listening to reggae music all night.
11. Christopher will have been writing letters to her all summer before she replies.
12. She had been running daily before she twisted her ankle.
13. You will have been designing that website for a decade before you finish.
14. I have been looking for a new window cleaner, but haven't found one I trust.
15. The ladies have been discussing Ancient Greece for 50 minutes.
16. The windows are open because my apartment has been getting too hot.
17. The children will have been opening jars all afternoon.
18. The car has been making strange noises, so he's taking it to a mechanic.
19. Michelle has been reading that book since January.
20. The inspector had been scanning documents for hours before he spotted the mistake.

#### 20.4 Answers

#### 20.5 Past Present Matching

Form logical past and present sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. As Howard got home, he found dinner on the table.
- b. Before Howard got home, his wife had cooked dinner.
- c. Howard has got home, so we are having dinner.
- d. When Howard gets home, dinner is always ready.

1.

2.

3.

4.

#### 20.5 Answers

#### 20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past or present form.

For example:

• Q: Harry \_\_\_\_\_ all his money, so he cannot buy the football. (to spend)

• A: Harry has spent all this money, so he cannot buy the football.

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ the pier every year. (to paint)

2. Norman \_\_\_\_\_ his house this week. (to clean)

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to classical music since I was a child. (to listen)



4. The fisherman \_\_\_\_\_ a huge salmon last night. (to catch)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ philosophy, but it became too confusing. (to discuss)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ a funny tune when you came in, what was it? (to whistle)
7. Look, the gardener \_\_\_\_\_ the heads off the roses! (to cut)
8. Mr Willis \_\_\_\_\_ two bags of potatoes but left one in the shop. (to buy)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ outside when it rained? You look absolutely soaked. (you / to be)
10. Can you pass me the sugar? I \_\_\_\_\_ an apple pie. (to bake)
11. The dogs \_\_\_\_\_ holes again; look at that mess. (to dig)
12. Why \_\_\_\_\_? Stop her – we have dessert! (Susan / to leave)
13. The reporter \_\_\_\_\_ tired, but kept talking anyway. (to appear)
14. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ my socks. They were here a second ago. (to steal)
15. When I met the twins, I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ double. (to see)

#### 20.6 Answers

#### 20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past or present form.

For example:

• Q: I am walking to work today, because I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. (to miss)

• A: I am walking to work today, because I missed the bus.

1. Can I borrow your pen? I \_\_\_\_\_ mine at home. (to leave)
2. A crowd \_\_\_\_\_ in town because the council raised taxes. (to protest)
3. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ me to tea, so I am buying flowers for her. (to invite)
4. Has Bob finished that book he \_\_\_\_\_? (to read)
5. The children were excited to see Aunt Maggie, as she always \_\_\_\_\_ them chocolate. (to give)
6. Vivian always \_\_\_\_\_ late, that's why she wasn't home when we called. (to work)
7. School tests \_\_\_\_\_ harder, so students have started complaining. (to get)
8. The door was locked earlier, so I still \_\_\_\_\_ how the burglar got in. (to know / not)
9. Robert is upset because \_\_\_\_\_ the game when his team scored. (to watch / not)
10. We started running in the summer, but we \_\_\_\_\_ less often as the weather has worsened. (to go)
11. Are the potatoes not ready yet? \_\_\_\_\_ the oven before we went out? (you / to turn on / not)
12. Is Sue coming to the cinema? She \_\_\_\_\_ us for months. (to join / not)
13. I washed the dishes yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ them again today. (to wash / not)
14. Frank's son wants to drive to Scotland, but he \_\_\_\_\_ his driving test yet. (to pass / not)
15. Is that woman climbing a tree now? She \_\_\_\_\_ us all morning! (to distract)

#### 20.7 Answers

## 20.8 Present Future Cloze

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate present or future form.

For example:

- Q: Now that I have a degree, I \_\_\_\_\_ a job. (to find)
  - A: Now that I have a degree, I am going to find a job.
1. We are building a tree house so the children \_\_\_\_\_ outside more often. (to play)
  2. Daisy is coming home tomorrow, because her flight \_\_\_\_\_. (to delay)
  3. Howard is waiting for the bus that \_\_\_\_\_ at eleven. (to arrive)
  4. I have a book in my bag, which I \_\_\_\_\_ when you arrive. (to read)
  5. The men \_\_\_\_\_ the truck already, so it will definitely get there on time. (to load)
  6. Will it rain later? I \_\_\_\_\_ a coat. (to take / not)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ tea after you wash those mugs? (you / to make)
  8. The phone \_\_\_\_\_ all morning, I am going to disconnect it soon! (to ring)
  9. Who will win the race? It \_\_\_\_\_ too close to tell. (to look)
  10. I am going to the shop later. What \_\_\_\_\_ me to get? (you / to want)
  11. Tyler is learning to ski but he \_\_\_\_\_ ready in time for the holiday. (to be / not)
  12. He \_\_\_\_\_ that old guitar for a year this October, I think it's time he got a new one. (to play)
  13. Brittany washes her hair every day – she \_\_\_\_\_ well when they go camping. (to cope / not)
  14. Look, the horses \_\_\_\_\_ across that field – we will never catch them! (to race)
  15. The men will be delivering our new fridge in an hour, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to finish my work quickly. (to try)

## 20.8 Answers

### 20.9 Present Future Narrative

Using the following schedule, complete the passage below in the most appropriate present or future form.

The Jolly Clown Conference

09.00 – Registration

09.30 – Talk: Modern Clowning in Practice

11.00 – Tea and Coffee

11.30 – Workshop: Working with Children

13:00 – Lunch

14:00 – Workshop: Advanced Physical Comedy

15:00 – Break

15:30 – Talk: A History of Clowns – Learn from the Best

17:00 – End of Day

It's 13.45 and Bilbo and Jam (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) lunch together. Bilbo (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to praise) the clown convention for twenty minutes already.

"The day (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) wonderful so far," he says.

"But I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) tired," Jam says. "I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall asleep) during the afternoon talk."

"Nonsense! There (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a break before it. And the workshop after lunch (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to revive) you."

"I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not) about that. Physical comedy (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) me very nervous."

"Why (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to worry) so much? The information pack (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to state) that you can watch if you don't want to join in."

"But I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to take part, right now. I only fear I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want / not) to when everyone (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) around hitting their heads on planks."

"Well, by 2 p.m. we (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) this hearty meal and perhaps your spirits (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lift). I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) much livelier already, myself."

"You (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel / always) lively, Bilbo. It might be because you (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) too much sugar."

"Ha! I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat / not) any sugar for two months, in fact. I am lively because this conference (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to inspire) me. The workshop on children (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) me lots of new ideas, and the talk on clown history (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) us about what it takes to really succeed."

"Okay, okay. I (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to enjoy the afternoon. Look, I think that while we (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk), they (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to set up) the workshop. Why (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (that man / to carry) two buckets of water?"

"We (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find out) soon!"

## 20.9 Answers

## 20.10 Future in the Past

Convert the following past sentences into past future forms, using the information in brackets.

For example:

• Q: She wanted to leave by 9 a.m., but was too busy.

• A: She was going to leave by 9 a.m., but was too busy.

1. He almost ate all the cake, but it was too much. (to eat)
2. They were planning to buy a hot tub until they saw the running costs. (to buy)
3. Shirley intended to go to university if she got the grades. (to go)
4. She needed to learn to dance before the end of the year. (to learn)
5. We asked our neighbours to repair the fence and they agreed. (our neighbours / to repair)
6. I thought of travelling to Germany for Oktoberfest. (to travel)
7. The poster gave a starting time of 7 p.m. (the poster said / it / to start)
8. I arranged to meet Geoff in the park.
9. The forecast was for rain. (they said / it / to rain)
10. Uncle Jim agreed to supply beer for the party. (to supply)
11. Luke promised not to drink my tea. (Luke said / to drink / not)
12. Sam did not expect to pass her exams. (Sam / to think / she / to pass)

## 20.10 Answers

## 20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

The following sentences include multiple past and present tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first.

For example:

• Q: I am working today because I had yesterday off.

• A: A) I had B) I am working

1. My boss has asked for a new report, even though I wrote one two days ago.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tess has been learning to dance since she saw the Nutcracker ballet.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. It has been getting harder to find work, so I am starting my own company.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Brian and Freda are arguing about who left the oven on.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Because it rained, the bench is too wet to sit on.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Our company is moving offices because they found a better site.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Jenny drives very well as she started at an early age.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The woodland animals were so noisy last night that Bernice has barely slept.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My family came from Hungary originally, but have lived in Denver for five years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She was having a warm shower but has stopped because the hot water ran out.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Have they brought the cocktail sausages we asked for?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What are you drinking? I didn't see that on the menu.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The driver said we must exit at the front of the train, are we riding in the right carriage?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who has completed their homework since we studied last night?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. If the dog was here before, where is it now?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

## 20.11 Answers

### 20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

The following sentences include multiple present and future tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first.

For example:

• Q: Naomi is mending her kite because she is taking it to the park later.

• A: A) Naomi is mending B) she is taking

1. Even though we are going to a restaurant for dinner, Dad is eating a doughnut.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. They will be expecting a good performance, so he is practising very hard.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The price seems to be fair, I will buy this jacket.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tyler is going to get some cheese from that man who is preparing a stall.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She will spend all the money she is earning.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I love chocolate but it will make me fat.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will you wear the scarf I am making you?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Are the police investigating the burglary or will the thief escape punishment?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Is the table big enough? Perhaps not everyone will fit.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does the flight leave soon? I have not checked in.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

## 20.12 Answers

### 20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

The following sentences include multiple mixed tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: I was surprised to learn that the mayor will be opening our shop.

• A: A) I was surprised B) the mayor will be opening

1. We are peeling potatoes so they will be ready for mashing.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The spiders have been hiding in shadows – that's why you have not seen them.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Ron is going to introduce his parents to the girl he met last week.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Mia is taking her test tomorrow, and she has been studying hard since she failed last time.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. That sign was not here before, someone has put it there.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The dark clouds suggest a storm is coming, but will it strike before noon?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. When Wendy gets here, we will ask if she ate the last ham sandwich.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The chef admits that he added cumin to the soup, but he claims he will not do it again.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_ D) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The boys are not playing in the tournament this evening because they broke the rules and they have not apologised.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tina is publishing a book on relationships soon, as she has been happily married for thirteen years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What did that man say to you? You have been sitting in silence ever since.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Is Dermot ready for the triathlon or is he going to train for longer?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does Cindy have the pen I gave you? My uncle gave it to me.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Had Pat tried spicy food before he visited India? He orders it all the time now.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will you come with me to Florence or have you seen everything already?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 20.13 Answers

#### 20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future forms.

#### Emily's Piano

Emily (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) to play the piano for eight months. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a dream of hers for many years, but she never (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) it would be possible until last November. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) with her parents in a small house and, for now, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) as a waitress before she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to university. Her father (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) buses and her mother (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) in the local school. The family live comfortably, but her father

(9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) they had no space or money for a piano.

Still, Emily (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen) to piano concertos since she was a child, and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) reading books about musicians and music theory. She (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) all the online videos about piano tuition that she can find. When she was little, her parents (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) her a miniature keyboard. She (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) on it every day for years when the keyboard broke. But by then she (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) school and parties too much to care.

As Emily got older, she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to yearn) to play music again. While she (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) money to continue her education, she secretly (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wish) for a piano instead. She (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to earn / not) enough for both, though. Then, in November, her father revealed that he (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to collect) extra money himself. Emily's parents (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to plan) to buy her a piano as a gift before university, all along! They even paid for lessons, and now Emily (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) so well that they (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) her to continue once she moves to university. She (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have / not) space at university for a piano, but (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) home every other weekend, and is sure she (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) a piano somewhere on campus. In fact, Emily is certain she (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) piano for many years to come.

#### 20.14 Answers

#### 20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future form.

#### Wizards and Dragons

For the past few weeks, Bernice (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) a new television show about wizards and dragons. Such fantasy shows (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) more popular in recent years. This is partly because technology (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to improve) enough to make fantasy more realistic. But attitudes to fantasy (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to change / also). Bernice (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like / not) fantasy before; she and her friends usually (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prefer) shows about crime and mysteries. They (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to follow) a seaside detective drama for five years, before this fantasy show (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) along. None of them (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to consider) fairy tales seriously before.

Then, everyone (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) talking about this new show. It (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to spread) across the internet, and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to continue) to spread even more when the new series arrives. The popularity of the show (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make / quickly) it cool to like fantasy. Bernice (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like) that, because she really (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) the show.

In fact, Bernice and her friends (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy / already) all the books that accompany the show. She (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to read / not) any yet, but (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) forward to them. Their group (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) and discuss the books, once everyone (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a chance to read some. The books (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) them understand the wider story of the television show, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) them an idea of what to expect in future. Bernice (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) that the wizards (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn / not) evil, and she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to believe / not) the theories that zombies (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to invade) the fantasy world. That (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sound) silly.

Whatever happens next, Bernice is sure they (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) about this show for many years to come!

#### 20.15 Answers

#### 20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future form.

#### A New Library

The Worthing Library (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) relocated later this year. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move / not) far, and it (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) soon enough – new and improved. The reason: the existing building (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) renovated. The current library (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) the community since 1975, so locals are happy that it (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close / not) for good. With the improvements, it (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to upgrade) its status to a “community hub”. What (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (this / to mean)?

This concept (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) public buildings at the heart of the community; the council (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to bring) many services together in one place. This (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to strengthen) the community aspect of the library, although buildings offering other services (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close).

In remodelling the library, the designers (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) consideration to quiet and private spaces, but the “hub” (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buzz) with other activity. Sarah Blemming, involved in the project, said, “Libraries (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to form) the heart of a community. We (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to create) something that embraces and celebrates that.”

During the public consultation, the council (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen) to various proposals for how to remodel the library. The public (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to respond) very favourably, and now (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to await / eagerly) the results. By the time the community hub is complete, the council (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close) the library for six months. But the relocated services (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) just across the road. Meanwhile, the council (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) with more partners to identify other locations for community hubs.

#### 20.16 Answers

#### 20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past , present or future form.

#### Holiday Plans

Gerry Davies (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to host) family Christmas celebrations at his mountain lodge for the past twelve years. The lodge is in the French Alps and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) beautiful surrounded by snow. Gerry (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) it in 1973, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to maintain) it himself ever since. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise) two children who have married and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise / now) his five grandchildren. The extended family (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to spread) out across Europe: Gerry lives in England, but his son's family (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to settle) in Scotland, and his daughter's family (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in Ukraine while she completes a teaching contract.

Gerry was worried that his family (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to come / not) to France this Christmas. Last year, his children said that it (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) less and less desirable to travel for the holiday, as they (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) terrible things about global warming. His daughter says frequent flying damages the planet, and it (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to recover / not). They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fly) to France every Christmas for thirteen years, next year! How much damage (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do) by then?

But Gerry (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want / not) to lose these special times with his family, and he (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come up with) a solution. He (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) anymore, so he has lots of free time. For the past few months, he (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) all the latest information about the healthiest ways to travel. He (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) an electric car last week and for the next Christmas he (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrange) for his family to meet him via train at convenient locations. He (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to drive) them the rest of the way to the mountain lodge. By the time everyone (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) for Christmas, he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) for two weeks himself, but it (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to cause) minimal harm to the environment. And Gerry (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to mind / not) collecting everyone. It means he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / spend) even more time with his family!

#### 20.17 Answers

#### 20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past , present or future form.

#### Murder Mystery

Detective Stevens (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) the manor guests in the games room, along with the butler, the cleaner and the cook. There were eight people left, now that three others (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) killed.

"People (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hide) their true identities," Detective Stevens announced.

"Yes!" the butler said. "Dr Julian (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lie) about being a heart surgeon!"

"How insulting!" said Dr Julian. "I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to practise) surgery for ten years!"

"When I phoned the hospital this morning, they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear / not) of him."

Dr Julian was trapped. "Very well. But I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / to reveal) the truth before leaving, honestly. I am a bank clerk – I only (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to impress Miss Tatiana! But I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to murder / not) her! And if we (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to search) for liars, what about the cook? He (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make / not) a good meal all weekend!"

"I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) unwell," the cook said. "But I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) here since the manor opened, I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swear)."

"He (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) here when I arrived," the cleaner confirmed. "And what reason (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to have) to kill Miss Tatiana, Mr Fredericks or the manager, Mr Bollier?"

"Ah ha!" Detective Stevens said. "I thought you (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to defend) him. You (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to conspire / all)



together. The house staff and ... Colonel Stamp! (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to be going to / to explain), or shall I?"

Colonel Stamp, who (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to avoid) attention until then, looked worried. He said, "I (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to tolerate / not) this, no. I (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) as soon as my driver arrives."

"But your driver (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come / not)," Detective Stevens said. "I (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to instruct) him to take the night off. You see, Colonel Stamp is, in fact, Lemuel Bollier!"

"Bollier?" said the final guest, Mrs Smythe. "(25) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to relate) to the manager?"

"(26) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / will / to talk), now, Lemuel? Your secret is out."

"How (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to find) out?" Colonel Stamp – actually Lemuel Bollier – said.

"Simple," Detective Stevens said. "When we dined on Friday night, you (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) many strange questions about the manor. And you (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say / not) anything about your own history. While we (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drink) brandy in the parlour, Miss Tatiana saw you talking with the cook and the butler. What (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to discuss), I wonder?"

"I (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to discover) a draught in my room and wished to be moved!"

"There (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) no other rooms available, until Mr Fredericks died. Indeed, you requested a change because you (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / to pour) poison through the floorboards, onto the manager while he slept! Your father, who (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) you since childhood, and (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not) you (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to inherit) his manor. Having promised to reward all the house staff!"

Lemuel Bollier (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to pull out) a gun. "Very well, it is all true. But no one (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to survive) to tell the story."

The doors burst open. Police officers (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) in the hall, and (41) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear) everything. The criminals were trapped. Detective Stevens said, "Lemuel Bollier, I (42) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrest) you for murder."

## 20.18 Answers

### Infinitives and Participles

The following section is designed to drill awareness of the grammar words which are necessary to accurately form the tenses. These are not essential exercises for using the tenses, but help to develop a clear impression of English structure and practice.

#### 1. Identifying Bare Infinitives

#### 21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the past simple ( regular or irregular ) or a bare infinitive ?

1. Did he buy a new pair of trousers?
2. We waited for hours, but no one came.
3. I've eaten all of the chocolates, they were really good.
4. What did you say to the mayor when you met him?
5. When their team scored, the home team cheered loudly.
6. Lady Taylor didn't share her stamp collection with just anyone.
7. When did your foot get better?
8. They lived on a houseboat for three months.
9. Who came to your most recent party?
10. Where did that pile of newspapers disappear to?
11. He sent her flowers because he didn't want to seem ungrateful.
12. When she left, he cried .

## 21.1 Answers

### 21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the present simple or a bare infinitive ?

1. Wilson tends to his garden every day.
2. Do they want any more beans?
3. How far does he run each morning?
4. I don't know what she needs .
5. The dog sleeps under the table.
6. The boat does not float any more.
7. It does seem strange, doesn't it?
8. What is that new perfume you are wearing?
9. Does Mr Carpenter live here?
10. Let him see the documents.
11. He lives on the trains, always moving, never stopping.
12. Don't waste paper, re-use some of the scrap.

## 21.2 Answers

### 21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the present simple or past simple , or is it a bare infinitive ?

1. We will go to the lakes in summer.
2. Did they have a good time at the opera?
3. What movies are on TV this evening?
4. Many sweets that I enjoyed when I was young are no longer available.
5. Do you remember which room the toilet is in?
6. I always thought he walked with a slight limp.
7. Do you know why they forbade the banjo in my school?
8. We often watch the swans in the park.
9. Can she walk now?
10. There didn't appear to be anything wrong with him.
11. If you boil vegetables for too long, they lose their nutrients.
12. Towards the end of Saturday's race, people became very tired.

## 21.3 Answers

1. Participles

### 22.1 Past Participles

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets in either the past participle or another verb form. Remember, the past participle is typically used in perfect tenses.

For example:

- Q: Oh no, I have \_\_\_\_\_ my glasses again! (to break)
  - A: Oh no, I have broken my glasses again!
1. We have \_\_\_\_\_ living here for twenty years. (to be)
  2. What kind of nuts did you \_\_\_\_\_ in this meal? (to use)
  3. I will \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for your return. (to be)
  4. They \_\_\_\_\_ had enough of the loud music now. (to have)
  5. The internet has \_\_\_\_\_ a huge impact on the way we interact. (to have)
  6. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ me to the nearest post office? (to direct)
  7. I have \_\_\_\_\_ the eggs; now to complete the cake. (to beat)
  8. The criminal had broken \_\_\_\_\_ twice before they found him. (to break)
  9. We will have \_\_\_\_\_ Grandma before Christmas Day. (to visit)
  10. You must \_\_\_\_\_ the garden shed before it collapses. (to mend)
  11. When they have \_\_\_\_\_ the art of dancing, they will try fencing. (to master)
  12. Julio ran through the bath-house naked, because Frank had \_\_\_\_\_ his robe. (to steal)

#### 22.1 Answers

#### 22.2 Present Participles

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets in either the present participle or another verb form. Remember, the present participle is the - ing form of the verb, typically used in continuous tenses.

For example:

- Q: They are \_\_\_\_\_ to regret opening that door. (to go)
  - A: They are going to regret opening that door.
1. He had \_\_\_\_\_ all the potatoes, ready for dinner. (to peel)
  2. We were \_\_\_\_\_ too loudly, that's why they complained. (to sing)
  3. Have they been \_\_\_\_\_ us for long? (to watch)
  4. Give me a hand with this log – I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it myself. (to move)
  5. The plumber had \_\_\_\_\_ on the sink all morning. (to work)
  6. I have been \_\_\_\_\_ for hours; I need a break. (to study)
  7. She will \_\_\_\_\_ on the ice, in those silly shoes. (to slip)
  8. Hans was \_\_\_\_\_ when his chair collapsed. (to read)
  9. Are you seriously \_\_\_\_\_ that jacket again? (to wear)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ is not allowed here. (to smoke)
  11. Will the game have \_\_\_\_\_ by the time we get there? (to finish)
  12. I will be there in a minute, I am just \_\_\_\_\_ this cup! (to clean)

## 22.2 Answers

### 1. Mixed Verb Types

## 23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

Read the mixed tenses statements below. Is the underlined word a bare infinitive or a verb participle ?

1. Did he wash the dishes?
2. We have gone to the theatre three times this week.
3. I might buy some dungarees.
4. Next Tuesday, Margie and I will see a movie together.
5. The little dogs are barking again.
6. Playing the piano is done on Sundays.
7. We should go now.
8. Does your mother know our priest?
9. Had they known what happened all along?
10. Did they hear what we said?
11. Won't they be waiting for us?
12. She has been here for a very long time.
13. Have you seen the weather in Idaho?
14. It might rain later.
15. Does the driver have enough fuel?
16. This woman has had too much fun for one day.
17. My favourite necklace was being repaired.
18. Did that make much sense?
19. I could drink another cup of tea.
20. There are some strange people watching us.

## 23.1 Answers

## 23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets, in either the bare infinitive , past participle or present participle form.

For example:

- Q: Have you been \_\_\_\_\_ this soup for long? (to cook)
  - A: Have you been cooking this soup for long?
1. When will you be \_\_\_\_\_ the train? (to catch)
  2. Jamie can't \_\_\_\_\_, she's too old! (to dance)
  3. I have never \_\_\_\_\_ so many sandwiches in all my life. (to make)
  4. What did he \_\_\_\_\_ you about? (to ask)
  5. Is this group of gymnasts \_\_\_\_\_ all month? (to perform)

6. Why Kylie had \_\_\_\_\_ the biscuits, no one knew. (to take)
7. The canaries will have \_\_\_\_\_, the cage door was left open! (to escape)
8. You will have been \_\_\_\_\_ all this for nothing, if you don't apply it later. (to learn)
9. I cannot \_\_\_\_\_ to think about the war. (to bear)
10. Can you \_\_\_\_\_? (to whistle)
11. It was \_\_\_\_\_ when we left the house, but it has \_\_\_\_\_ now. (to snow, to stop)
12. Why did that shop assistant \_\_\_\_\_ you so much trouble? (to give)
13. Have you been \_\_\_\_\_ for these hairclips? (to look)
14. She couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ any more pork scratchings. (to afford)
15. Has your business \_\_\_\_\_ much since we last met? (to grow)
16. That man has \_\_\_\_\_ his last game of chess, he's banned now. (to play)
17. It was tragic that the game was cancelled when they were \_\_\_\_\_. (to win)
18. Do you think you will \_\_\_\_\_ all of your modules at university? (to pass)
19. We are \_\_\_\_\_ our assignments next week. (to complete)
20. Have I \_\_\_\_\_ enough about the seaside? (to write)

### 23.2 Answers

### 23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

The following ten sentences have been split and scrambled. Match the first part to the second by looking for patterns in bare infinitive and participle uses.

### 23.3 Answers

### A Note from the Author

Dear reader,

I hope that this book has helped develop your skills for applying the English tenses. It has been designed merely to test and apply your grammar knowledge, but was produced following *The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide*. If you have not read that book, it may provide additional insights into the tenses. Both these books were produced independently, and I have also been sharing English tips and exercises through the website *English Lessons Brighton* since 2012. I take great joy in being able to help learners everywhere advance in English, so the ability to reach more students through my books is wonderful.

If you found this book useful, please leave a quick star rating and a short review online. It helps others discover my books, which is essential for me to keep producing them! Please review *The English Tenses Exercise Book* online.

Thank you in advance,

Phil Williams

### Acknowledgements

It takes a team to produce any book, and that is more true than ever with the independently produced ELB guides. My great thanks goes out to my supportive wife Marta, who always helps test my language material ahead of release, and my editor Caroline Hynes, whose keen eye helps keep everything in order. These books are also bolstered by the support of my large and very positive reading group on the ELB mailing list, whose words of encouragement always help motivate me.

For *The English Tenses Exercise Book*, I had the help of a great team of students and teachers who helped identify problem areas in the final book, including Andre Bianconi, Cheryl Butterfield, Annaliza Davis, Maria Eugenia del Valle, André Juilly, Howat Labrum, Jim Lindsay, Tamsyn Mott, Jaime Sanchez Rivera, Marta Stanowska, and Jennifer Tan. Thank you to everyone involved!

Also by Phil Williams

### The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide

Quickly discover the many uses of the English tenses. How do English speakers use two tenses to mean the same thing? Why do the rules not always apply?

This comprehensive guide to the usage patterns of all 12 aspects of the English language covers all the rules and grammatical forms. The English Tenses: Practical Grammar Guide is ideal as either an accompaniment to core texts or as a full self-study guide. It introduces the reader to flexible uses of the English tenses, with simple, easy-to-follow explanations, colourful examples and enlightening comparisons.

### Advanced Writing Skills for Students of English

Want to improve your English writing skills? This guide will clearly teach you how to master written language. You'll learn how to write concisely, how to vary your structure and vocabulary, how to edit your work, and much more!

Presented with a focus on why different styles and techniques work, Advanced Writing Skills teaches not only what makes writing most effective, but also the reasoning behind its tips, making them easier to remember and apply. As well as covering general writing tips, across all subjects, this book also offers guidance on specific areas of writing, including business, academic and creative writing.

### Word Order in English Sentences

Want to know what subject-verb-object really means? Unsure about where to place your adverbs? Need to rearrange sentences confidently?

A complete foundation in word order and sentence structure for the English language, Word Order in English Sentences can be used both for reference and as a full self-study guide. From basic rules through to the many considerations of adverbial phrases, prepositions and complex sentences, with exercises in between, this grammar guide contains everything you need for a strong understanding of how sentences are put together.

The rules and patterns for forming and reforming phrases and sentences are all presented with easy-to-follow explanations, clear examples and exercises to test understanding. With his engaging style, Phil Williams takes you beyond the basics, making flexible and advanced English accessible to all.

### Answers

#### 1.1 Answers

1. The postman was late again.
2. Felicity grew tomatoes in her garden.
3. He did not understand the project.
4. We failed to finish in time.
5. They did not give us the bag of flour.
6. Liam did not ask the question politely.
7. The hummingbirds built a nest in our attic.
8. The piano looked too old to use.
9. She said we were wrong.
10. I did not pick the right flowers.
11. Our cake did not taste right.
12. We drove all the way to Scotland.
13. You did not bring the green umbrella.
14. They arrested the wrong man.

15. The lady of the manor did not write a convincing memoir.

### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

### 1.2 Answers

1. Were your dogs very messy?
2. Did the chef cook something spectacular?
3. Did you read all three of your textbooks this weekend?
4. Did she ask him to go on a date?
5. Did you know about the rotten fruit?
6. Did the priests demand that the film be banned?
7. Did you buy a new bicycle?
8. Did he Hoover the house because of the dust?
9. Did the children play on the swings?
10. Was she very disappointed with the presentation?
11. Did you misjudge the time it would take to get to the party?
12. Did you lose your keys again?
13. Did the story get a lot more interesting after the main character died?
14. Did they send a replacement cabinet after yours broke?
15. Did the council ban parking on your road?
16. Did she run a marathon last spring?
17. Was it the hottest day of the year?
18. Did Ulric visit the doctor for the first time?
19. Did your computer stop working?
20. Did they prepare for the storm months in advance?

### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

### 1.3 Answers

1. Where did you help the old man?
2. What did Julian sing?
3. Where did you search for the doctor?
4. Why was she very angry?
5. When did everyone go for ice cream?
6. Which necklaces did they steal?
7. How much did you give the homeless man?
8. What did the critic hate?
9. Who did he have a disagreement with? ( or Who had a disagreement with the man who sold him his car?)
10. What was cut down yesterday?

11. What did Tyler want to free? ( or What did Tyler want to do?)

12. Where did the family take the bottles?

13. What did the girl believe in?

14. How did you tie the knots?

15. Who ate her last cupcake?

### 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

#### 1.4 Answers

1. What did he not tell us?

2. Did it not seem like an easy task?

3. Where did Mindy not take the students?

4. Why was the door not locked?

5. How did you not get there in time?

6. Did they not bring any water on the hike?

7. Was she not supposed to be in Italy this week?

8. Did the spiders not live for very long?

9. Were you not sad about the game being cancelled?

10. When did the football team not have a manager?

#### 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

#### 1.5 Answers

1. We were not very good at sports.

2. The Morrisons owned too many chickens.

3. Herman did not get on with his neighbours.

4. Where did I park my car?

5. Did you see that new ballet?

6. The builders ate a large breakfast.

7. Was she not a good swimmer?

8. The lady did not decide to buy the dress. ( or The lady decided not to buy the dress.)

9. Did they not listen to the radio?

10. She ran all the way around the park.

#### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

#### 2.1 Answers

1. The giraffe was lying down.

2. They were not drawing pictures of fruit.

3. It was getting dark outside.



4. You were telling me about your new phone.
5. They were not flying over Mongolia.
6. I was cleaning the pans when the police arrived.
7. The animals were digging a hole.
8. Kyle was not reading novels this summer.
9. We were painting the house all day.
10. No one was helping with the display.
11. The computer was not loading properly.
12. You were not sleeping in the right room.
13. She was brushing her teeth.
14. I was testing the light switch.
15. The rodents were planning something.

#### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

#### 2.2 Answers

1. Were they building a new school?
2. Was Lily hiding something?
3. Were the days getting longer?
4. Were you asking about my van?
5. Was the light working when you got home?
6. Was his father trying to play the piano?
7. Were the students travelling through Bolivia?
8. Was everyone waiting for me?
9. Was I saying the right word?
10. Were the sailors loading the correct boat?
11. Was the bus stopping everywhere?
12. Were we singing in tune?
13. Were Rupert and Jim fighting again?
14. Was the sun shining on your wedding day?
15. Were the trains arriving on time last weekend?

#### 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

#### 2.3 Answers

1. How (well) were the students doing?
2. What was Tim studying?
3. Where were you flying (to)?
4. Why was the cat running away?

5. What were they singing?
6. How long were you living in America (for)?
7. Who was leaving dirty dishes out?
8. What was her husband watching (on TV)?
9. Where was the tour guide taking them (to)?
10. Why was Hailey smiling?
11. Who were the Japanese investors meeting with? ( or Who was meeting the Japanese investors?)
12. Why was the restaurant getting crowded?
13. When were the new shoes arriving?
14. What was Alison preparing (for the carnival)?
15. What were you picking up (from your friends)?

### 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

#### 2.4 Answers

1. Were you not enjoying the party?
2. What was the man not showing them?
3. Was I not holding the right pen?
4. Why was the weather not getting warmer?
5. Where was the boat not stopping during the cruise?
6. Were you not using the correct ingredients?
7. When was the bell not ringing?
8. Were they not bringing more sandwiches?
9. Was he not sitting at the back of the class?
10. Why were the children not following the teacher?

### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

#### 2.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. was driving
2. Were they selling
3. it was playing
4. Was the van going
5. the driver wasn't heading ( or the driver was not heading)
6. was he planning
7. Wasn't something happening ( or Was something not happening)
8. They were opening

9. was thinking
10. you weren't expecting ( or you were not expecting)

The Ice Cream Van

Simon: Do you know what I just saw? An ice cream van (1) was driving down our road.

Carl: Really? (2) Were they selling ice cream? It's November!

Simon: Well, (3) it was playing music, so I think they wanted customers.

Carl: (4) Was the van going to the beach?

Simon: It couldn't have been; (5) the driver wasn't heading ( or the driver was not heading ) in the right direction.

Carl: Then where (6) was he planning to park?

Simon: Hmm. (7) Wasn't something happening ( or Was something not happening) in the town centre earlier today?

Carl: Of course! (8) They were opening a new sports shop this morning!

Simon: Oh! I (9) was thinking about going to that, but I decided not to.

Carl: But (10) you weren't expecting ( or you were not expecting) ice cream! Let's go!

## 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

### 3.1 Answers

1. They had started the party early.
2. It had snowed overnight.
3. The delivery truck had parked outside.
4. I had not heard about the Incas before.
5. You had warned me not to go there, but I did.
6. She had arrived too late for the exam.
7. Simone realised she had not listened to this tune yet.
8. Before finding the lecture hall, we had gone to Room 2b.
9. We had not agreed on a price for the painting by noon.
10. He had read the book thirteen times.
11. The picnic was ruined; the rats had eaten everything.
12. The shop had closed down for good.
13. I had not asked for a map, because I knew the way.
14. She had forgotten where the cups were kept.
15. Ryan went to see a film, but they had sold all the tickets.

### 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

### 3.2 Answers

1. Had they been to California before?
2. Had you already asked me about my toe?

3. Had he worn his coat to the park?
4. Had the horse eaten already?
5. Had someone broken the window?
6. Had the mice infested the house?
7. Had you ever been able to juggle?
8. Had Roger repaired the bicycle?
9. Had Jonas taken the wrong bag?
10. Had the cleaners emptied the bins?

### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

#### 3.3 Answers

1. What had Lisa added to the soup?
2. How had the cows escaped from the field?
3. What had you discussed in the previous two lessons?
4. Where had you put your glasses?
5. When had the clock stopped?
6. When had she changed her clothes?
7. Who had the President appointed? ( or Who had been appointed by the President?)
8. What had Harry heard (behind the shed)?
9. Where had all the eggs gone?
10. Where had you stayed last time?

### 3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

#### 3.4 Answers

1. Had he not told her about the invitation?
2. Where had Charlene not been in Boston?
3. Had the team not worked together?
4. Had I not turned off the cooker before going out?
5. Had the plumber not set the radiator to the right temperature?
6. What had the night manager not included in his report?
7. Why had the alarm not gone off at 7 a.m.?
8. What had the chef not added to the soup?
9. Had I not explained the situation clearly?
10. Why had they not checked the car's engine before travelling?

### 3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

#### 3.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. He had left
2. Stephen had started
3. his wife had suggested
4. she had found
5. He had not planned
6. they had bought
7. they had not made
8. He had measured
9. why had he not used
10. Had he read
11. Stephen had wrestled
12. It had turned out
13. why had he not tried
14. the kitchen had started
15. the cake had risen
16. it had developed
17. his wife had been

#### A Fresh Cake

Stephen was looking forward to a freshly baked cake. (1) He had left it baking for 45 minutes now. This was the final step in a process (2) Stephen had started four hours earlier, after (3) his wife had suggested that he try a new recipe (4) she had found . (5) He had not planned to spend the day baking, but (6) they had bought all the ingredients already, and (7) they had not made homemade cake for a long time, so he agreed to give it a go.

Once he started, he realised it was actually good fun. (8) He had measured everything carefully before combining the ingredients, and then made a terrible mess mixing the batter. It was too sticky. His wife asked: (9) why had he not used more flour? (10) Had he read the recipe correctly?

Eventually, (11) Stephen had wrestled the mixture under control, and he cleaned the whole kitchen while they waited for it to rise. (12) It had turned out to be quite simple really. When he put the mix in the oven, he asked himself, (13) why had he not tried this sooner?

After half an hour, (14) the kitchen had started to smell amazing.

Finally, 45 minutes were almost over, and Stephen's mouth was watering. He opened the oven to find (15) the cake had risen beautifully, and (16) it had developed a firm, golden top. They would definitely enjoy this, and Stephen admitted, (17) his wife had been right. It was a good idea.

#### 3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

##### 4.1 Answers

1. They had been travelling all night.
2. I had not been listening during the lecture.
3. She had been dancing with Raul.
4. The bird had been singing for hours.
5. It had not been snowing before they left the hotel.

6. The traffic lights had not been working that morning.
7. Sidney had been learning to play the bassoon.
8. Strange symbols had been appearing all over town.
9. The price of cauliflower had been rising throughout January.
10. Tina had been waiting for the right man.
11. We had been going to the same holiday villa for years.
12. Wild dogs had been stealing from the pantry.
13. The children had not been practising their handwriting.
14. They had not been camping in Wales before.
15. I had been hoping for a good result.

#### 4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

#### 4.2 Answers

1. Had you been watching Channel 4?
2. Had Jim been watering the garden?
3. Had the cat been sleeping in the bedroom?
4. Had they been training together for a long time?
5. Had the carpenter been making new chairs?
6. Had you been snoring in your sleep?
7. Had she been listening to their phone call?
8. Had the door been closing on its own?
9. Had Winston been helping with her studies?
10. Had the bracelet been sitting on the table all along?

#### 4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 4.3 Answers

1. Where had she been hiding the cake?
2. What had you been listening to in the car?
3. What had the dog been barking at?
4. When had Clive been planning to go on holiday?
5. How long had the man been playing the trumpet (for)?
6. What had Mum been preparing for dinner?
7. Where had you been sitting?
8. Why had you been working at the weekend?
9. What had they been thinking about (banning)?
10. How had Fiona been cooking bagels (before she bought the toaster)?

#### 4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 4.4 Answers

1. Had we not been parking in the right space?
2. Where had the boys not been making a mess?
3. Had she not been listening to the teacher?
4. Why had the water not been boiling?
5. Had I not been walking fast enough?
6. Had it not been raining all day?
7. Why had Lily not been reading the books I gave her?
8. When had the politician not been telling the truth?
9. Had they not been running in the morning?
10. Why had the gardener not been trimming the roses?

#### 4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 4.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. It had been raining
2. Had I not been warning
3. they had been doing
4. the potatoes had not been growing
5. The weather had been getting
6. people had been saying
7. I had not been listening
8. Why had I not been paying
9. Things had been going

#### A Ruined Allotment

(1) It had been raining all night, we could tell. The allotment was flooded. (2) Had I not been warning everyone about this for months? If they had listened, we could have built a shelter. But (3) they had been doing other things, like swimming in the lake. Besides, Barry kept arguing, (4) the potatoes had not been growing anyway. Why bother?

(5) The weather had been getting more unpredictable, that was the main problem. Some months we had no rain at all. As much as two months ago, (6) people had been saying we might have a completely dry season. But I remembered the storms three years ago, when I lost everything. (7) I had not been listening when the forecasts offered warnings that time. (8) Why had I not been paying more attention during that period? Back when it would have helped ... The same reason no one listened to me this time. (9) Things had been going so well!

#### 4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

#### 5.1 Answers

1. Billy likes cats.
2. Trains in Japan always run on time.
3. Tina does not drink banana milkshakes.

4. The shopping centre opens every day at 6 a.m.
5. All cookies taste amazing.
6. I find biology interesting.
7. Fred and Shirley do not eat after midnight.
8. Unhappy employees are not good for business.
9. The last house on my street looks haunted.
10. My car has climate control, but it does not work.
11. Flocks of birds fly in interesting formations.
12. Peanut butter and cheese do not go well together.
13. Reading books definitely makes you smarter.
14. We do not travel to the lakes more than twice a year.
15. Grandma's stuffed animal collection scares everyone who comes to visit.

#### 5.1 Present Simple Statements

#### 5.2 Answers

1. Are you hungry?
2. Does Lily listen to heavy metal music?
3. Do all parrots have colourful feathers?
4. Is the carnival safe for children?
5. Does Uncle Jeff know the way to the beach?
6. Do you speak a foreign language?
7. Do you want another cup of tea?
8. Are you sure this milk is non-dairy?
9. Does Howard always talk during class?
10. Do your parents live near your house?
11. Is exercise important to you?
12. Do the campers sleep in tents?
13. Does your cat seem fat because he is so fluffy?
14. Do good grades matter if you want to be an artist?
15. Is the path under the bridge safe at night?
16. Does Abigail work in the library?
17. Do you need to keep taking these pills? or Do you need to keep taking those pills?
18. Does this cauliflower smell strange?
19. Are glass bottles good for storing hot liquids?
20. Is that man a friend of yours?

#### 5.2 Present Simple Questions 1



### 5.3 Answers

1. What is (there) in your backpack?
2. When does the sun rise?
3. How do you boil perfect eggs?
4. Where does Brianne buy her hats?
5. Where do the boys play every Tuesday?
6. Why do you always visit the same café?
7. How does Michael always know the answers to these questions?
8. When do you want to go to the cinema?
9. Where does your father work?
10. When does the running club meet?
11. Why do those teachers wear such smart clothes?
12. What do you have to do to open this tin of beans? or What do you have to do to open that tin of beans?
13. How often do the gardeners cut the grass?
14. Which drawer does the cutlery go in?
15. When do the children get home from school?

### 5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

### 5.4 Answers

1. Does that chocolate not contain milk?
2. Is he not the owner of this car?
3. Which hotel does not have a swimming pool?
4. Are the guests not expected before 7 p.m.?
5. When is not a good time to visit?
6. Why does Ben not play more tennis?
7. Do they not like the colour of their bedroom?
8. Why is she not the boss already?
9. What does not look right in this picture?
10. Does it not matter if we go to the beach this weekend?

### 5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

### 5.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Lewes hosts
2. Some people call
3. What is

4. The festivities mark
5. Seven local societies run
6. they are not
7. The town draws in
8. The evening is not
9. the town welcomes
10. the trains take
11. why do these people not go
12. the market town does not have
13. Why do so many people travel
14. The history goes
15. we see
16. the evenings stir
17. the societies do not burn
18. is it not inevitable

#### Bonfire Night in Lewes

Every year on November 5th, (1) Lewes hosts one of the largest bonfire nights in the UK. (2) Some people call Lewes the "Bonfire Capital of the World". (3) What is so special about these evenings?

(4) The festivities mark Guy Fawkes Night by bringing together bonfire societies from across Sussex. (5) Seven local societies run six separate parades and firework displays, but (6) they are not alone. (7) The town draws in as many as 30 other societies from across Sussex to join in. (8) The evening is not a small event: up to 5,000 people take part in the celebrations, and (9) the town welcomes tens of thousands of spectators; as many as 80,000 one year!

On these evenings, (10) the trains take a long time to queue for, and the locals might complain: (11) why do these people not go somewhere else?! With a population of only 17,500, after all, (12) the market town does not have the facilities for so many people.

(13) Why do so many people travel so far for these parades?

(14) The history goes back a long way. In the past, the celebrations were more like riots, which only gradually became the processions (15) we see today. Even now, (16) the evenings stir controversy: many people ask that (17) the societies do not burn effigies that cause offence. Between the many memorable evenings, the rich history and the media attention, (18) is it not inevitable that so many people should visit?

#### 5.5 Mixed Present Simple

##### 6.1 Answers

1. My mother is watching the television.
2. The cat is sleeping on the sofa.
3. It is not raining anymore.
4. The phone is ringing.
5. You are learning very fast.
6. We are not working together today.
7. The tap is dripping again.

8. I am not writing about the Egyptians.
9. The nuns are dancing to disco music.
10. She is singing far too loudly.
11. The plants are not growing very fast.
12. Oliver is not sleeping in his own bed.
13. Raccoons are stealing from our bins.
14. That man is staring at you.
15. You are not sitting in the right seat.

#### 6.1 Present Continuous Statements

#### 6.2 Answers

1. Are you writing an essay?
2. Are the council building a new swimming pool?
3. Is he avoiding his boss?
4. Are you heading north?
5. Is that girl carrying too many books?
6. Is your son behaving well at school?
7. Are you catching a cold? or Do you feel like you are catching a cold?
8. Are Chelsea winning the match?
9. Is Melissa eating healthy food?
10. Are there buns baking in the oven?
11. Is her pregnancy showing?
12. Are the walls in your building getting dirty?
13. Is your creative team generating a lot of ideas?
14. Is Henry sharing his cake with everyone?
15. Are you looking at this picture the wrong way around? or Are you looking at that picture the wrong way around?

#### 6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

#### 6.3 Answers

1. What are you trying to do?
2. Why is he drilling into that wall?
3. What is Nancy thinking about?
4. Where are you walking (to)?
5. How are they investing their savings?
6. Why is the business expanding slowly?
7. Where is Hank storing his old photos?
8. What is drawing lots of birds to the garden?

9. Which direction is the wind blowing (from)?
10. Why are the councillors insisting on raising taxes?
11. How many guests are the kitchen staff preparing food for?
12. Where is Lula parking the car?
13. What is the nurse giving you?
14. What is making that awful sound?
15. How many visitors are waiting in the hall?

#### 6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

#### 6.4 Answers

1. Is Charles not bringing his dog?
2. Are the teachers not setting enough homework?
3. Which ingredient am I not tasting?
4. Where is she not taking the children?
5. Why are my children not drinking their juice?
6. Are the bikes not getting wet in the rain?
7. Which places are you not visiting on your honeymoon?
8. Why are the towels not drying in this room?
9. Is she not missing her boyfriend?
10. Are Joe and Kyle not entering the poetry competition?

#### 6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

#### 6.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Mr Duff is building
2. He is borrowing
3. they are not working
4. The shed is falling
5. Are things not going
6. he is not admitting
7. his wife is asking
8. Winter is coming
9. the family are storing
10. You are doing
11. What are you talking
12. The situation is worrying

13. Her husband is getting
14. he is spending
15. How is she going
16. Mr Duff is not taking
17. the tools are making
18. Why is the man not charging
19. her husband is not watching
20. Everything is coming

Proud Mr Duff

(1) Mr Duff is building a new shed in his garden. (2) He is borrowing tools from his neighbour, Mr Benton, but (3) they are not working well because Mr Duff has not fully charged them. (4) The shed is falling behind schedule. Mr Duff's wife has asked, " (5) Are things not going to plan?"

Mr Duff is a proud man. Though the problem persists, (6) he is not admitting it, so over time (7) his wife is asking lots more questions about the delayed shed. (8) Winter is coming , and while Mr Duff works on the shed (9) the family are storing their outdoor things under the porch.

"(10) You are doing something wrong," Mrs Duff insists.

"(11) What are you talking about?" Mr Duff replies, stubbornly.

(12) The situation is worrying Mrs Duff. (13) Her husband is getting upset and (14) he is spending too much time out there. (15) How is she going to help? She decides to ask Mr Benton.

Mr Benton suggests that (16) Mr Duff is not taking proper care of the tools. He listens, and realises (17) the tools are making the wrong noises. (18) Why is the man not charging them properly?! Knowing Mr Duff is proud, Mr Benton suggests Mrs Duff charge the tools at night, when (19) her husband is not watching . She does, and soon the construction speeds up. (20) Everything is coming together – just in time.

## 6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

### 7.1 Answers

1. Remi has chosen her dress carefully.
2. The sailors have painted the boat bright green.
3. The dentists have ordered a new chair.
4. My father has not retired yet.
5. You have created a wonderful display.
6. The Robinsons have not prepared the table for dinner.
7. We have paid the delivery man for the pizza.
8. I have refused to take part in the parade.
9. The police have not identified the thief.
10. She has mentioned her family's wealth many times.
11. Edward has not believed in Santa since he was young.
12. The bus service has not improved.
13. I have recommended this movie many times.
14. The storm has destroyed our fence.
15. My parents have not decided which house to buy.

## 7.1 Present Perfect Statements

### 7.2 Answers

1. Have you seen the newspaper this morning?
2. Has the weather improved?
3. Have they taken all the boxes?
4. Have you got any bread?
5. Has Drew told you about her exam results?
6. Has the postman delivered your package?
7. Has your wife agreed to a colour for the walls?
8. Have you brought enough cheese?
9. Has the teacher set some homework? or Has the teacher set any homework?
10. Has the gardener cut the grass?
11. Have Carl and Harry spent all their holiday money?
12. Have you heard this new song?
13. Has your mother gone to the market?
14. Have you understood this correctly?
15. Have all the teams submitted their final answers?

### 7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

### 7.3 Answers

1. Why have you received this package? or Why have you received that package?
2. Where have you been this month?
3. What has Rebecca done with her hair?
4. What has fallen out of the basket?
5. How many pigs has the farmer raised?
6. Why has the club closed?
7. Where have my sweets gone?
8. Which socks have you chosen to wear?
9. When has the scientist ever been wrong?
10. Which paper has the company supplied you with?
11. Why has she failed to convince them?
12. How has this musician remained unknown?
13. Where have you put my violin?
14. What have you fed to those ducks?
15. Why has Sally flown to Portugal?

### 7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

#### 7.4 Answers

1. Have you not heard the news?
2. Why has his sister not forgiven him?
3. What have the mice not eaten?
4. Has the meeting not finished yet?
5. Which rooms have they not cleaned?
6. Have these people not suffered enough?
7. Why has the store not sold more umbrellas?
8. What problems have the team not analysed in this report?
9. Has Terry not replied about the cinema?
10. What have we not thought of?

#### 7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

#### 7.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Molly has returned
2. She has brought
3. Where has she been
4. has she seen
5. I have experienced
6. I have not wasted
7. Have you not read
8. her Dad has not found
9. have you tried
10. I have written
11. One blog post has reached
12. why have so many people visited
13. Australia has stolen
14. I have not enjoyed
15. My new friends have invited
16. Has she made
17. Travelling has changed
18. Where has his shy little girl gone
19. where has she not been
20. he has learned

## Molly's Travels

(1) Molly has returned after a year of travelling. (2) She has brought her family many gifts, but they are more interested in her stories. (3) Where has she been ? What fascinating sights (4) has she seen ?

"(5) I have experienced many things," Molly says. " (6) I have not wasted the time I had. (7) Have you not read my blog about it?"

Most of her family read the blog, but (8) her Dad has not found time yet. He asks, "What exotic foods (9) have you tried ?"

"(10) I have written so many things about the dishes in China already!" Molly says. " (11) One blog post has reached 5,000 visitors so far."

Everyone congratulates her. Dad wonders, (12) why have so many people visited Molly's blog? He did not know she was a talented writer.

"Which country did you like most?" Mum asks.

"America is nice," Molly says, "but (13) Australia has stolen my heart for good. (14) I have not enjoyed better weather anywhere else in my life! (15) My new friends have invited me back to Melbourne already."

(16) Has she made new friends across the world, to go with this successful blog? (17) Travelling has changed his daughter, Dad can see. (18) Where has his shy little girl gone ? Perhaps now the better question is, (19) where has she not been ? He is happy for her, though, and (20) he has learned his lesson. Next time she goes away, he will pay more attention!

## 7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

### 8.1 Answers

1. We have been living here for eight years.
2. I have been listening to pop music.
3. It has been getting harder to park on my road.
4. Those boys have been sitting there for hours.
5. Ferdinand has not been taking French lessons.
6. Our car has been making strange noises.
7. He has been talking for 30 minutes.
8. Pigeons have been nesting on our roof.
9. The pie shop has been turning people away.
10. She has been selling her paintings cheaply.
11. You have not been watching TV all morning.
12. Eric has not been drawing funny cartoons.
13. The phone has been ringing non-stop.
14. I have been reading a book about trees.
15. More raccoons have been stealing from our bins.

### 8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

### 8.2 Answers

1. Have you been practising hard enough?
2. Have you been making too much noise?
3. Has she been swimming in the lake?
4. Have you been listening?



5. Has it been getting dark earlier?
6. Has anyone been watering the plants?
7. Have they been waiting for a long time?
8. Has Tim been working for your father?
9. Have you been paying too much for soap?
10. Has the fox been sleeping in the garden?

#### 8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 8.3 Answers

1. Where has this story been going?
2. Why has your computer been heating up?
3. How long has Oliver been riding horses (for)?
4. Why has she been sending out invitations?
5. What has been happening in town this weekend?
6. Where have they been delivering your mail?
7. What have the trucks been carrying this week?
8. Which club has been exploring in a jungle?
9. What has Mr Jones been teaching you?
10. How long have the batteries been charging (for)?

#### 8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 8.4 Answers

1. What has Len not been telling us?
2. Has anyone not been studying?
3. Who has not been reading this weekend?
4. What has she not been doing right?
5. Have you not been going to dance class regularly?
6. Have I not been giving Wanda enough attention?
7. Why has the wind not been blowing this spring?
8. What questions have the reporters not been asking?
9. Has that sound not been worrying you?
10. Why has the team not been working harder?

#### 8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 8.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. The council has been making

2. the beach has been suffering
3. The daily tests have not been meeting
4. What has been causing
5. holiday-makers have not been picking up
6. people have not been cleaning up
7. What has the council been doing
8. Visitors have been collecting rubbish
9. The council has been providing
10. Children have been treating
11. Dog walkers have been ignoring
12. Beach patrols have been warning
13. Why have they been focusing
14. I have been watching
15. the truth has been coming out
16. the water company has been dumping
17. Why has the council not been focusing
18. the beach has finally been getting

#### Cleaning the Beach

(1) The council has been making efforts to improve Worthing's beach. For a long time, (2) the beach has been suffering from soiled water. (3) The daily tests have not been meeting expected levels of cleanness. (4) What has been causing this?

There are two main problems with the water. One is waste from people, where (5) holiday-makers have not been picking up after themselves. Another is waste from animals – where (6) people have not been cleaning up after their dogs.

(7) What has the council been doing to change this?

"Litter pick" stations have been set up. (8) Visitors have been collecting rubbish whilst walking on the beach. (9) The council has been providing bags and "grab sticks" to encourage this. (10) Children have been treating this as a game: how much litter can they pick up in an hour?

Meanwhile, dogs are no longer allowed on the beach during summer. (11) Dog walkers have been ignoring the signs, so there are now big fines in place. (12) Beach patrols have been warning dog walkers not to use certain areas to avoid being fined. Not everyone is happy about this. Hillary Menrose complained, " (13) Why have they been focusing so hard on dogs, when seagulls make just as much mess. We always pick up after Fluff Doogle on our walks, but (14) I have been watching those birds, and they drop litter, too!"

There were big protests when the council wished to further limit dog walkers, and (15) the truth has been coming out . Actually, there is a third reason that the sea is dirty: (16) the water company has been dumping waste into the sea. Why (17) has the council not been focusing on them? One thing's for sure: (18) the beach has finally been getting the attention it deserves!

#### 8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous

##### 9.1 Answers

1. The final exam will be difficult.
2. Our friends will come for dinner.
3. They are not going to watch the show together.
4. Sasha will not buy the next round of drinks.

5. Amy is going to regret her decision.
6. My shoes are not going to last another winter.
7. You will not agree with me.
8. The church bells are going to ring today.
9. Those geese will steal your bread.
10. The client will approve these new designs.
11. I am not going to lend Charles any more money.
12. Mrs Freda will not teach noisy children.
13. The festival is going to include a lot of musicians.
14. Your new table will arrive tomorrow.
15. This course is not going to take very long.

#### 9.1 Future Simple Statements

#### 9.2 Answers

1. Are you going to the party on Saturday?
2. Is he going to give back your book?
3. Will the actor remember his lines?
4. Is this bus going to stop in Portsmouth?
5. Will the performance start on time?
6. Will Vera meet the man of her dreams?
7. Are the Olympics going to be held in Italy?
8. Will Tom admit that he ate the cake?
9. Is your house going to sell by September?
10. Are you (not) going to finish your coffee?
11. Will the old bicycle need to be repaired?
12. Will James bring his wife to the concert?
13. Are the doors going to be replaced?
14. Is that truck going to fit in the parking space?
15. Is the T-shirt going to shrink in the washing machine?
16. Will you split the bill evenly?
17. Will she learn these words by Tuesday?
18. Are you going to see my cousins at the weekend?
19. Will your town change over the next five years?
20. Is that young man going to propose to his girlfriend?

#### 9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

### 9.3 Answers

1. Who is going to pay for this damage?
2. When will the builders finish the roof?
3. What is going to happen to the vacant beach huts?
4. How is Harry going to climb that tree?
5. What will the papers write about the new President?
6. Why are you going to lose your job?
7. When will your father return from his holiday?
8. Why is the barbecue going to be held in the park?
9. Where are you going to find a good carpet?
10. How will the mice cause havoc?
11. What will you do while your computer is updating?
12. What is she going to cook for her lunch?
13. When is the new product going to be ready?
14. Who will volunteer to take your Saturday shift?
15. Where will you go for your summer holiday?

### 9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

#### 9.4 Answers

1. Will you not return next year?
2. When are they not going to be at home?
3. What is Drew not going to take on his trip?
4. How will I not watch TV for a week?
5. Are we not going to prepare pasta for dinner?
6. Why is their mother not going to buy them more toys?
7. What terms will they not agree to?
8. Who will not come with us to Kent?
9. Is that tall cake not going to fall over?
10. Who will she not invite to her wedding?

### 9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

#### 9.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. We are going to build
2. It will not be
3. My Uncle Jimmy will help
4. he is going to need

5. he will say
6. are we going to share
7. he will agree
8. The rocket will fly
9. It is not going to cost
10. my dad will find
11. how many people will fit
12. Is the government going to notice
13. they will not allow
14. our rocket is going to reach
15. We will discover
16. What will you use
17. It is going to work
18. we will persuade
19. the adults will build
20. Uncle Jimmy is not going to steal

#### The Spaceship

(1) We are going to build a spaceship in our back garden. (2) It will not be easy, but we have the plans and the right tools. (3) My Uncle Jimmy will help put it together, as (4) he is going to need to earn his keep while he stays with us this summer. We haven't asked him yet, but (5) he will say yes, I am sure. But (6) are we going to share all our plans with him? I hope (7) he will agree without knowing how valuable the project is.

(8) The rocket will fly faster and higher than any before. (9) It is not going to cost much to make, because (10) my dad will find good materials in the dump. I do have some unanswered questions, though: (11) how many people will fit inside? (12) Is the government going to notice what we are doing? If they hear about our amazing rocket, (13) they will not allow us to succeed. The government does not want competition – (14) our rocket is going to reach Venus. (15) We will discover valuable diamonds before they do.

Mum thinks I can't do it. She says, " (16) What will you use to fuel the rocket?"

"Hope," I tell her. " (17) It is going to work because we have hope."

And anyway, (18) we will persuade Jimmy to deal with the other problems. We are the brains and the planners, after all: (19) the adults will build it. As long as (20) Uncle Jimmy is not going to steal our ideas.

#### 9.5 Mixed Future Simple

##### 10.1 Answers

1. I will be asking everyone two questions.
2. The days are going to be getting longer.
3. My friend will be driving us to Oxford.
4. We will be playing football all morning.
5. You are going to be waiting for hours.
6. Richard is not going to be researching traffic control this week.

7. She will be sweeping the floor.
8. The company is going to be organising a trip soon.
9. I am not going to be working this afternoon.
10. Penny will be aiming for the best results.
11. He is going to be adding songs to his playlist all night.
12. The bank will not be opening a new branch in Rye.
13. We are going to be dancing on stage this Friday.
14. You are not going to be sitting there when I get back.
15. The baby will be waking up soon.

#### 10.1 Future Continuous Statements

#### 10.2 Answers

1. Are you going to be washing these dishes?
2. Will Jools be taking the train to Detroit?
3. Will they be supplying you with milk?
4. Is Eric going to be expanding his gallery?
5. Is she going to be speaking on the panel?
6. Will the badgers be sleeping during the day?
7. Will the producers be continuing the radio show?
8. Are they going to be closing more stores?
9. Will the planes be landing at this airport?
10. Is Mrs Antwerp going to be spending time here during her visit?
11. Is the Duke going to be announcing his retirement this week?
12. Will you be meeting the neighbours together?
13. Will they be collecting the sofa today?
14. Is the farmer going to be planting wheat in that field?
15. Are you going to be performing at the Royal Albert Hall?

#### 10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

#### 10.3 Answers

1. Where will everyone be sitting this evening?
2. What are you going to be doing in Bali?
3. How often is Tristan going to be exercising this month?
4. What will Greta be talking about on Wednesday?
5. Who are you going to be sharing a room with?
6. When is she going to be jogging?
7. When will they be clearing away this mess?

8. What will you be reading next week?
9. Where will the barman be hanging his new fairy lights?
10. How long is Clive going to be fixing that van (for)?
11. Where are you going to be skating tomorrow?
12. Who will be wearing the best costume?
13. What is the school going to be teaching this spring?
14. When are the bakers going to be selling their doughnuts?
15. Who is going to be accepting the award?

#### 10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

#### 10.4 Answers

1. When will you not be studying this week?
2. Are the girls not going to be swimming tomorrow?
3. Where is he not going to be riding the horse?
4. Why will they not be attending the party?
5. Will the chef not be preparing a new dish?
6. Is the flag not going to be flying for the President's arrival?
7. Why will they not be looking for the escaped mongoose with us?
8. What will Liz not be bringing on this trip?
9. Why are you not going to be joining the badminton club?
10. Is the plumber not going to be repairing the boiler over lunch?

#### 10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

#### 10.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. scouts will be going
2. They are going to be camping
3. The children are not going to be lazing
4. They will be challenging
5. What will the scouts be doing
6. The children will be making
7. They will be hiking
8. they will not be resting
9. everyone is going to be cooking
10. the children will not be calling
11. What else is going to be happening

12. the weather will be changing
13. Mr Ryan will not be letting
14. will it not be raining
15. their activities are going to be occurring
16. I will be preparing
17. What will we be doing

#### The Scout Trip

The Wood Row (1) scouts will be going to the New Forest for four days next week. (2) They are going to be camping in a field where they will study the local wildlife. Their leader, Mr Ryan, said, “ (3) The children are not going to be lazing about. (4) They will be challenging themselves all weekend, so they can learn more.”

What (5) will the scouts be doing on their adventure? A full itinerary has been prepared:

(6) The children will be making notes about the animals they see. ( 7) They will be hiking for three hours each day, and (8) they will not be resting much at camp, as (9) everyone is going to be cooking two meals each day. Phones are banned, so (10) the children will not be calling home.

(11) What else is going to be happening over the weekend? Well, (12) the weather will be changing on Saturday morning – from sunny to rainy – but (13) Mr Ryan will not be letting that stop them. He asked himself, “When (14) will it not be raining ?” and made sure that (15) their activities are going to be occurring at those times.

“(16) I will be preparing alternative indoor activities, too,” he said. “ (17) What will we be doing while it’s raining? Well, there’s a nice old car museum to explore, for starters.”

One thing is for sure: the young scouts are going to be tired.

#### 10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

#### 11.1 Answers

1. We will have decided by 1 p.m.
2. She will have sold the dress before noon.
3. I am not going to have finished this book by nightfall.
4. The workers will have painted our bedroom.
5. You will have accepted my proposal by Friday.
6. Regina is going to have designed a new logo before the meeting.
7. The champion is going to have played his last game by December.
8. The scientists will have added the new planets to the map.
9. The council will have cleared the roads for the festival.
10. Our neighbours are to going to have replaced their windows by Monday.
11. The keys will not have been found by then.
12. The university will have awarded my niece a prize.
13. Victor is going to have escaped before we get back.
14. The groundsman will have planted new grass over the old field.
15. The eggs will not have gone bad.

#### 11.1 Future Perfect Statements



## 11.2 Answers

1. Will they have replaced the batteries by tomorrow?
2. Are you going to have measured the temperature?
3. Will you have washed the dishes in time for dinner?
4. Will the dentist have raised her prices?
5. Are they going to have fixed the leaking sink by 10 a.m.?
6. Are you going to have managed this project well?
7. Are the new batteries going to have arrived in time?
8. Will the hats have sold?
9. Will Billie have brought her best socks?
10. Is Mrs Carter going to have visited her daughter?
11. Will petrol prices have risen again?
12. Is the priest going to have learned to dance before the ball?
13. Are the geese going to have left the park?
14. Will you have made enough scones for everyone?
15. Will the panel have discussed the important issues?

## 11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

### 11.3 Answers

1. Who is going to have eaten before the party?
2. What will have happened to the wall?
3. Where are you going to have stayed this summer?
4. When is Manny going to have returned that book?
5. Where will the pirates have hidden the treasure?
6. How will the manager have handled his own accounts?
7. When are your clients going to have paid you?
8. What will you have learned on the course?
9. When will the sandwiches have been prepared?
10. Where are the traders going to have docked the ship?

## 11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

### 11.4 Answers

1. Where is Darren not going to have been?
2. What will the gerbils not have bitten through?
3. Why will they not have learned from their mistakes?
4. How many cakes are you not going to have made by Saturday?

5. Will the reporter not have written her article on time?
6. Who is not going to have solved this puzzle before the bell?
7. Why is Mrs Harris not going to have fixed her dress before tomorrow?
8. Will the traffic not have caused a delay?
9. Where am I not going to have spoken by the end of my reading tour?
10. Why will they not have delivered the bad news before he arrives?

#### 11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

#### 11.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. German clients will have arrived
2. They will have finished
3. they are not going to have processed
4. Bob will have started
5. What will he have done
6. he is going to have called
7. What will he not have completed
8. she will have created
9. She will have prepared
10. she is not going to have eaten
11. The pair will have polished
12. they will have sealed

#### The Big Presentation

Bob and Charlotte are giving a big presentation tomorrow at 2 p.m. Their (1) German clients will have arrived by then, and it is important to impress them. There is lots to do. (2) They will have finished the overall report by this evening, but the graphs will be incomplete as (3) they are not going to have processed all the data in time. Charlotte is worried because she has to take her children to school before work, but (4) Bob will have started on the graphs before she arrives.

(5) What will he have done ? She hopes (6) he is going to have called the research department and compiled their data. (7) What will he not have completed ? The graphs themselves. Unfortunately, Bob is not very good with graph software. But Charlotte imagines (8) she will have created all the necessary graphs before noon. That will give them time to prepare to greet the clients.

Charlotte will be so busy, she will not have time for lunch. (9) She will have prepared smoothies in the morning, though. Hopefully the clients won't notice (10) she is not going to have eaten lunch. (11) The pair will have polished their presentation to such a high standard, they should be too impressed to care about anything else. By tomorrow afternoon, Charlotte imagines (12) they will have sealed the deal.

#### 11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

#### 12.1 Answers

1. I will have been learning Mandarin for a month by this Friday.
2. Soon, the couple will have been arguing for 20 minutes.
3. We are going to have been dancing all night long.

4. You will have been choosing the flowers carefully.
5. The storm clouds are going to have been gathering for a while.
6. Georgie will have been listening to pop music again.
7. Our dog will have been sleeping while we were out.
8. I am going to have been cycling all morning, so I'll need a shower.
9. Carl will have been practising for the Olympics.
10. The boats will have been bumping into each other overnight.
11. The spies will have been listening.
12. My uncle is going to have been researching our family history ahead of the reunion.
13. It will have been getting hotter before we go on holiday.
14. The tree will have been shedding its leaves for weeks.
15. She is going to have been laughing at her own radio show.

#### 12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

#### 12.2 Answers

1. Are you going to have been waiting all morning?
2. Will Nancy have been singing throughout the first act?
3. Will they have been baking a cake?
4. Are you going to have been wasting your time?
5. Are the shoppers going to have been queueing for hours?
6. Will Charlie have been shaving regularly during the holiday?
7. Will we have been writing to each other for a long time?
8. Is Sally going to have been working in insurance for two years?
9. Is the tide going to have been going out?
10. Will the grapes have been getting mouldy?

#### 12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 12.3 Answers

1. How long will she have been practising (for)?
2. Where will Jim have been swimming?
3. How far are you going to have been travelling?
4. What are the trucks going to have been carrying?
5. Why will the children have been walking home?
6. How long are you going to have been working on this project (for)?
7. What are they going to have been waiting for?
8. Why will the foxes have been gathering in the garden?
9. Who is he going to have been asking for help?

10. What is the intern going to have been saying about his job?

### 12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

### 12.4 Answers

1. Where will the tractor not have been going (to)?
2. Am I not going to have been participating enough?
3. How long is your aunt not going to have been working for?
4. What are we not going to have been seeing?
5. Will they not have been losing hope?
6. Why is he not going to have been preparing for the test?
7. Which buildings will the company not have been developing?
8. Are the coats not going to have been hanging in the right places?
9. Will the guard not have been standing upright?
10. What will our friends not have been showing us?

### 12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

### 12.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. things will have been changing
2. they will have been building
3. we will not have been sleeping
4. the population will have been growing
5. new shops will have been opening
6. I will have been living
7. I will not have been working
8. are these outsiders not going to have been hovering
9. we will have been getting
10. they are not going to have been expecting
11. local researchers will have been applying
12. we are not going to have been wasting

### The Fish of Mugrub

Things have been changing in the fishing village of Mugrub. By November, (1) things will have been changing for five years. Lots of new buildings have been built there; some residents feel that when the next few projects begin (2) they will have been building apartments forever. Resident Liam McDonald said, "And because of the noise, when they finish, (3) we will not have been sleeping for years!"

Tourists and researchers have been coming to Mugrub to see a new glowing fish, discovered almost five years ago. If projections are met this December, (4) the population will have been growing by 25% each year. Should the latest tackle shop get permission, (5) new shops will have been opening at a rate of four a year. But has happiness been increasing in the same way?

"(6) I will have been living here for three decades this August," McDonald said. "And (7) I will not have been working for almost half of that. I liked

the peace and quiet before. The mayor says it will calm down, but (8) are these outsiders not going to have been hovering around for five years, soon?"

Not everyone is as unhappy with the changing village. Shop owner Jenny McCluck looks forward to the future: "I imagine (9) we will have been getting visitors from all over the world during the summer. They cannot resist the village, and though (10) they are not going to have been expecting to stay for long, they will do. It's good for business."

It's also good for the glowing fish. This summer, (11) local researchers will have been applying for grants each year for the past five years – and they are confident Mugrub's popularity will finally secure funding this time. Dr Bailey said, "Next year, we expect to uncover the mysteries of the glowing fish, as (12) we are not going to have been wasting time searching for funding!"

## 12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

### 13.1 Answers

1. Isn't this easy?
2. There were too many people on the boat.
3. Does Paul not seem quiet today?
4. Swans are very loud.
5. It is not a good day to go swimming.
6. What will you wear to the gala?
7. We waited for hours.
8. They will be at the dock before noon.
9. Does this photo look real to you?
10. When did Nina buy her house?
11. She went to the shop for more mushrooms.
12. I always leave my wallet behind.
13. Won't you tidy your room later?
14. You look too tired to swim.
15. How did the fisherman buy a new boat?
16. This tie appeals to me most.
17. Who did not take their medicine this morning?
18. The President will not give up on this reform.
19. Our house fell apart over a period of many years.
20. Practice makes perfect.

### 13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

### 13.2 Answers

1. Do rabbits eat grass?
2. Did Jimmy fall in the mud?
3. Do you (always) enjoy the circus?
4. Will Wendy be in the market tomorrow?
5. Where does the river run through?

6. How many men waited in the street?
7. Did he sit on the bench for two hours?
8. Will there be twenty people at dinner?
9. What time will the delivery arrive?
10. When do they study very hard?
11. Which was the busiest city that year? or Which city was the busiest that year?
12. Who will watch your child tomorrow?
13. Are men less healthy than women?
14. Will the squirrels steal those nuts?
15. Did the radio's battery run out?
16. Is the marigold her favourite flower?
17. Does Polly own a bicycle?
18. Who saved all the children? or Who did the lifeguards save?
19. When you are older, will you get twenty cats? or Will you get twenty cats when you are older?
20. Before the war, did this shop sell fresh bread? or Did this shop sell fresh bread before the war?

### 13.2 Simple Questions

### 13.3 Answers

1. Does Robert not eat meat? ( or Doesn't Robert eat meat?)
2. Did the investigator not understand the report? ( or Didn't the investigator understand ...)
3. Why won't people give your charity donations? ( or Why will people not give ...)
4. Will she not visit her mother again? ( or Won't she visit ...)
5. Do you not like the bagpipes? ( or Don't you like ...)
6. Will Harry not go to school tomorrow? ( or Won't Harry go ...)
7. Did your friends not meet until college? ( or Didn't your friends meet ...)
8. Are these questions not very strange? ( or Aren't these questions ...)
9. Will running every day not make you fit? ( or Won't running every day make ...)
10. Did you not feed the ducks again? ( or Didn't you feed ...)
11. Who does not practise guitar very often? ( or Who doesn't practise ...)
12. Why did the council not remove your rubbish this week? ( or Why didn't the council remove ...)
13. Will they not be able park their car? ( or Won't they be able to ...)
14. Did Simon not pass his driving test? ( or Didn't Simon pass ...)
15. What does not look right? ( or What doesn't look ...)

### 13.3 Simple Negative Questions

### 13.4 Answers

1. Correct
2. Incorrect – I do not live there anymore. (or I don't live there anymore.)
3. Incorrect – The kitchen smells like sweet apple pie.
4. Correct
5. Incorrect – Herman and Claire enjoy playing chess on Saturdays.
6. Correct
7. Correct
8. Incorrect – This aeroplane will fly if it is repaired.
9. Incorrect – He did not arrive in time for the show last night.
10. Incorrect – The greyhounds returned after they escaped.
11. Correct
12. Incorrect – The car looks dirty now.
13. Incorrect – The toaster worked when we tried it earlier.
14. Correct
15. Correct

#### 13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

#### 13.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Bill lives
2. His house sits
3. He always dreamed
4. he finally has
5. It took
6. he did not believe ( or he didn't believe)
7. His friends often asked
8. Why do you want
9. Didn't anyone tell
10. Will you not drown ( or Won't you drown)
11. many people said
12. Beach property tends
13. it is not easy ( or it isn't easy)
14. These details did not bother ( or These details didn't bother)
15. he determined
16. he saved
17. He bought

18. he enjoys
19. The water does not come ( or The water doesn't come)
20. Bill is going to invite
21. they will see ( or they'll see)
22. what will he do
23. Does he have
24. Bill imagines
25. He is going to study ( or He's going to study)
26. he will buy ( or he'll buy)
27. Nothing is going to stop

#### A House by the Sea

(1) Bill lives in a bungalow by the sea, now. (2) His house sits opposite the beach. (3) He always dreamed of owning a house with a sea view, and (4) he finally has it. (5) It took him fifteen years to find the right home. At times, (6) he did not believe ( or he didn't believe) it would be possible. (7) His friends often asked , “ (8) Why do you want a home by the sea? (9) Didn't anyone tell you that the sea is dangerous? (10) Will you not drown ( or Won't you drown) ?”

Indeed, before he moved, (11) many people said that storms and floods could damage a seaside home. (12) Beach property tends to be expensive, too. And in England, (13) it is not easy ( or it isn't easy) to find space along the sea, certainly not near big towns. (14) These details did not bother ( or These details didn't bother) Bill. Whatever the price, (15) he determined , his dream would come true.

Finally, (16) he saved enough money and found exactly the right place. (17) He bought his bungalow outright. Now, (18) he enjoys sitting on the porch watching the waves. (19) The water does not come ( or The water doesn't come) high enough to damage the house. (20) Bill is going to invite all his friends down during the summer, and (21) they will see ( or they'll see) for themselves how wonderful it is here.

But now Bill has achieved his dream, (22) what will he do next? (23) Does he have other plans? Yes. (24) Bill imagines what life would be like on the sea. (26) He is going to study ( or He's going to study) to become a boat captain. Then, (27) he will buy ( or he'll buy) a boat. (28) Nothing is going to stop him.

#### 13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

##### 14.1 Answers

1. He will be coming back here after he buys some wine.
2. Everyone was enjoying themselves before we got there.
3. Rita was sewing a new dress two days ago.
4. Joe is dancing exceptionally well today.
5. You will be performing first tonight.
6. People will be discussing this for a long time to come.
7. I was partying all night, so I needed to rest.
8. She is sitting in the wrong seat – someone tell her. or Someone tell her she is sitting in the wrong seat.
9. We were arguing in the street but got told to stop.
10. The giraffe was standing under the tree while it rained.
11. The defeated team will be licking their wounds later.
12. I am trying to sleep but it is too noisy outside.



13. We will be learning exciting new techniques next week.

14. The cleaners are emptying the bins right now.

15. You are annoying me, please go away.

#### 14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

#### 14.2 Answers

1. How long were you working (for)?
2. When will they be climbing the mountain?
3. Is your boy (not) studying enough?
4. Is Jenny taking her language test again?
5. Where was he fighting with a gorilla?
6. Will she be entering the contest? or Is she entering the contest?
7. Is Rupert doing lots of exercise?
8. Were you talking too loudly?
9. Where was the gang hanging out?
10. Is Charlotte giving out sweets?
11. Why are the police searching for a pink car?
12. Will she be cleaning up this mess for a long time?
13. Will Bob be waiting in the foyer (at 9 p.m.)?
14. Who was gathering below the balcony?
15. Is Charles tying his shoelaces?

#### 14.2 Continuous Questions

#### 14.3 Answers

1. Are you not eating well?
2. Were they not planning to come?
3. Will you not be joining them?
4. Is it not getting warmer?
5. Why are you not recycling more plastic?
6. Where is the coast guard not patrolling?
7. Why is Henry not giving any presents this Christmas?
8. Were the foxes not standing on the roof?
9. Why is the bookshop not opening early today?
10. Is your team not playing in the match this weekend?
11. What was Sheila not revealing (about her birdcage)?
12. Was the girl not standing there when you took the photo?

13. Will the campers not be expecting (you to have) fresh water?
14. Is that lion not getting (too) close to the shelter?
15. Why were you not waiting in the parlour last night?

#### 14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

#### 14.4 Answers

1. Aren't you reading that magazine?
2. Weren't they working during yesterday's storm?
3. Aren't your tissues running out? or Won't your tissues be running out?
4. Won't Danny be waiting at home?
5. How long weren't you studying for?
6. Why aren't you sitting close to the stage?
7. Won't Hailey be skiing with you?
8. Weren't they fighting over the last piece of cheese?
9. Isn't the weather changing rapidly?
10. What weren't they including in the recipe?
11. Aren't the farmers working in the field?
12. Wasn't Howard gathering mushrooms last week?
13. Why isn't the fireman listening?
14. Aren't the tulips turning a curious shade of purple?
15. Weren't you taking notes?

#### 14.4 Continuous Contractions

#### 14.5 Answers

1. Incorrect – You were singing the right tune.
2. Correct
3. Correct
4. Incorrect – I am baking a wonderful cake.
5. Incorrect – His parents will be visiting tomorrow.
6. Incorrect – The birds were not sitting there yesterday.
7. Correct
8. Incorrect – We were shopping in the mall when the alarm went off.
9. Correct
10. Correct
11. Incorrect – We will not be waiting very long if you call ahead.
12. Correct
13. Correct

14. Incorrect – The cat is staring out of the window again.  
15. Incorrect – They will not be performing this evening, after all.

#### 14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

#### 14.6 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. I'm booking
2. What's playing
3. It won't be showing
4. Why are they still making
5. It's getting
6. I'm not going
7. I'm watching
8. What are you doing
9. I was studying
10. Weren't you revising
11. I'll be reading
12. You're working
13. we're not seeing ( or we aren't seeing)
14. What are you thinking
15. Bridget was telling
16. I'm driving

#### Going to the Cinema

Billy: (1) I'm booking tickets for the cinema. Do you want to come?

Angela: Hmm. (2) What's playing ?

Billy: It's a superhero movie. (3) It won't be showing for much longer, so we need to go now.

Angela: Another superhero movie! (4) Why are they still making them?

Billy: This is the best one yet – (5) it's getting amazing reviews.

Angela: I don't care – (6) I'm not going to another superhero film.

Billy: Well, (7) I'm watching it whether you come or not. (8) What are you doing , anyway?

Angela: (9) I was studying for my exam on Friday before you interrupted, actually.

Billy: (10) Weren't you revising all day yesterday?

Angela: Yes, and (11) I'll be reading all day tomorrow, too. So what?

Billy: (12) You're working too hard! Come to the cinema and have a break.

Angela: Fine. I'll go to the cinema, but (13) we're not seeing ( or we aren't seeing) that superhero film.

Billy: (14) What are you thinking of watching instead?

Angela: There's a new thriller. With a twist. (15) Bridget was telling me about it last week.

Billy: Hmm. Fine. But (16) I'm driving !

#### 14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

##### 15.1 Answers

1. I had finished my essay but was not happy with it.
2. Ryan has bought a new camera and cannot stop talking about it.
3. The shop will have closed before you get there.
4. You have not prepared the salad, have you?
5. Many artists had recorded the tune before John produced a cover.
6. Has the door been forced open?
7. Our friends will not have arrived yet, by this time tomorrow.
8. Will the weather have changed by the weekend?
9. She had started a new book even though she was still reading one.
10. Sam will have walked home, if he is not at the school.
11. I have not seen this film before; it looks good.
12. Had they eaten so many scones that they could not have cake?
13. The children have built a den, so the living room is a mess.
14. Had the priest gone before she arrived?
15. The restaurant will not have served dinner by 7 p.m., as the chef is missing.

##### 15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

##### 15.2 Answers

1. Have you been to Hungary before?
2. Had they locked the door before going out?
3. Has the chef cooked soup today?
4. Will you have rested before the train comes?
5. Had someone punctured the wheel deliberately?
6. Have you told her this before?
7. Has the water boiled yet?
8. Had the minister taken the wrong backpack?
9. Will the snow have cleared by morning?
10. Have you seen many Japanese films?
11. Has the university received my application?
12. Have they released the lobsters too early?
13. Had she written the right answer?

14. Will Maria have cooked the pies by 2 p.m.?

15. Has it become harder to buy property?

#### 15.2 Perfect Questions 1

#### 15.3 Answers

1. What has Shirley done?
2. How had he got inside?
3. Where will the courier have left the package?
4. Where has Luke put all the empty milk cartons?
5. What had the man (at the front desk) said?
6. Why has no one opened a window (in here)?
7. Who has drawn all over your papers?
8. Where had the badgers hidden?
9. When will the boats have docked (by)?
10. How had Tim broken his phone?
11. Where has she put the remote control?
12. What had the caretaker cleaned the floor with?
13. When had the package arrived?
14. Who has showed the most potential this year?
15. What (decorations) have we stored in the garage?

#### 15.3 Perfect Questions 2

#### 15.4 Answers

1. Have you not seen Alfred this month?
2. Has the mail not arrived yet?
3. Had the explorers not taken the correct turn?
4. Will the hosts not have prepared for a hundred guests?
5. Has it not been 45 minutes since you put the bread in the oven?
6. What question had you not asked before?
7. Will they not have reserved their seats at the theatre?
8. Had the cupboard not squeaked as loudly (that morning)?
9. Has her boyfriend not returned yet?
10. Have we not paid for this meal already?
11. Will the shops not have closed by 7 p.m.?
12. Why had Harriette not packed the correct shoes?
13. Had he not rested before he started work?

14. Have you not signed up for lessons?

15. Will the taxi not have arrived by midnight?

#### 15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

#### 15.5 Answers

1. Which goals hasn't the President achieved?
2. Why haven't you heard this tune before?
3. Hadn't the thieves hidden the jewels?
4. Won't the men have distributed the presents in time?
5. What hadn't she wanted (that she received)?
6. Where hasn't the tour group visited?
7. How hadn't they known the door would be locked?
8. What won't our opponents have planned for?
9. Haven't you helped with the dishes?
10. Which chair hasn't the kitten damaged?
11. Hadn't he noticed the creature (was following him)?
12. What won't you have completed by New Year?

#### 15.5 Perfect Contractions

#### 15.6 Answers

1. Incorrect – I have not seen that play, but I hear it is good.
2. Correct
3. Correct
4. Incorrect – Victor has not learned to play the piano yet.
5. Correct
6. Incorrect – It had not been easy, but the girls replaced the punctured tyre.
7. Incorrect – We hadn't brought a map and got hopelessly lost.
8. Incorrect – Had Sue fed animals before or not?
9. Incorrect – He will have heard the good news before the meeting.
10. Correct
11. Incorrect – They will have collected all the flowers before the wedding day.
12. Correct
13. Incorrect – She has not lived here for long, has she?
14. Incorrect – I will have recovered by the time they arrive tomorrow.
15. Correct

#### 15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

## 15.7 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been
2. the owners have renovated
3. they have decorated
4. they will have spent
5. the house will have been
6. Why has it failed
7. hasn't sold
8. the owners had painted
9. we'd asked
10. Why had the owners hired
11. they haven't done
12. We've lived
13. the damp has never bothered
14. mushrooms had grown
15. we'd expected
16. Has anyone ever moved
17. Mr Murray hasn't found
18. have become
19. What had they brought
20. how many agents will we have tried

### The House that Would Not Sell

The building on Grand Avenue (1) has been up for sale for a long time now. The owners (2) have renovated it recently: (3) they have decorated all the rooms, and are currently building a new garage. They claim (4) they will have spent more than £10,000 on these improvements when they are done. But (5) the house will have been on the market six months by next week.

(6) Why has it failed to sell?

The property probably (7) hasn't sold because of the damp problems. One couple who went to view it complained that (8) the owners had painted over mould on one wall. The real estate agent expressed frustration about this: "I wish (9) we'd asked more questions before taking on the house. (10) Why had the owners already hired two different estate agents? Because the others quit after they discovered the damp!"

The owners, Jeff and Winn Murray, insist (11) they haven't done anything wrong. Jeff said, " (12) We've lived here for ten years and (13) the damp has never bothered us. When we first moved in, (14) mushrooms had grown on the carpet. Did we complain? No, because (15) we'd expected a few problems beforehand. (16) Has anyone ever moved house without problems?"

(17) Mr Murray hasn't found his potential customers forgiving, however. Buyers can easily spot damp now, as moisture scanners (18) have become so effective. Winn Murray said, "One young couple's clothes beeped while we showed them around. (19) What had they brought in their pockets? A damp-measuring device! Perhaps we need a new estate agent, who will bring less devious buyers. But (20) how many agents will we have tried then? Perhaps we should just keep the house!"

## 15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

## 16.1 Answers

1. Ben had been watching TV for an hour while the soup simmered.
2. Why has your phone been ringing since you started your shower?
3. Our friends had been visiting us once a week until they left town.
4. The gate has not been opening properly for a week now.
5. You had been studying medicine for two years last time I saw you.
6. They will have been waiting all evening by the time you get to the party.
7. Jason has not been calling the council every day this week.
8. How long will I have been travelling for when I finally get home?
9. We had been seeing each other for a year before we got married.
10. The men will have been climbing for days before they reach the summit.
11. Has she been trying to learn Spanish before her holiday next month?
12. I have been considering whether or not to go out this evening.

## 16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

## 16.2 Answers

1. Had he been studying for a long time before the exam?
2. Will they have been building that wall all summer?
3. Had you been sitting or standing when the bell rang?
4. Have you been reading about giraffes this week?
5. Will Ben have been living on a boat for two years this August?
6. Has she been staring at me all morning?
7. Had you been looking for a new bag last time I saw you?
8. Has my wife been cooking something that smells delicious?
9. Had mushrooms been growing under the floorboards?
10. Will our nephew have been walking for months before we see him?
11. Has Hillary been arguing with the neighbours?
12. Will the squirrels have been sleeping all winter?

## 16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

## 16.3 Answers

1. Who had been banging on the door that night?
2. Where has she been hiding her silverware?
3. Why has Greg been sending the TV station angry letters?
4. What has the plumber been doing in the basement (for a long time)?
5. How long will Jane have been learning to ride camels (for) (come March)?
6. Who had Simon been talking to before dinner?



7. Where will the cake have been cooling (for three hours) before tea?
8. How long had the birds been flying (for) (before they arrived at the lake)?
9. What have you been writing in your journal?
10. Will you have been practising (that dance) for two weeks (before the show)?

#### 16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 16.4 Answers

1. Have the tomatoes not been growing in this soil?
2. Had Veronica not been sending the letters?
3. Had they not been collecting (any) names during the survey?
4. Will you not have been working here long enough for a raise this month?
5. Had she not been paying attention when the homework was set?
6. Has the old man not been eating his beans?
7. Will the couple not have been renting for long before they buy?
8. Have Roger and Kim not been washing their towels?
9. Had your aunt not been buying anything online?
10. Why will Sandy not have been working today?

#### 16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

#### 16.5 Answers

1. Who hadn't been wearing her crown at night?
2. Won't he have been travelling through Europe (next month)?
3. What hadn't Sally been sharing (with anyone)?
4. Haven't you been using the blue pen?
5. Hadn't Dennis been searching for his wallet all morning?
6. Which cookery shows haven't I been watching?
7. How long hasn't she been replying to my messages (for)?
8. Won't the club have been expanding quickly enough to earn a bonus?
9. Why hasn't the charity been accepting donations since January?
10. Hadn't the cupboard been squeaking last time we were there?

#### 16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

#### 16.6 Answers

1. Correct
2. Incorrect – The Smiths had not been closing their windows at night, even when it rained.
3. Incorrect – The children have been playing outside this week.
4. Correct

5. Incorrect – We have not been meeting as often now as we used to.
6. Correct
7. Incorrect – Mandy had been letting her sister use the computer that summer.
8. Correct
9. Correct
10. Incorrect – She will have been reading the correct book.
11. Incorrect – Jim will have been working for eight days by tomorrow morning.
12. Correct
13. Correct
14. Incorrect – Have our guests been waiting long? They look bored.
15. Incorrect – My car has not been starting since the accident last Thursday.

#### 16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

#### 16.7 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been training
2. has been taking place
3. has been running
4. hadn't been swimming
5. had never been climbing
6. will have been learning
7. Why has she been working
8. Janet had been getting
9. She'd been seeing
10. Claude has been competing
11. What had she been thinking
12. she'd been rising
13. Her diet hadn't been helping
14. she's been feeling
15. she hasn't been getting
16. Her life has also been improving
17. she's even been sleeping
18. she's been growing
19. Will she have been practising
20. Janet will have been working

Extreme Endurance

Janet (1) has been training to complete the Extreme Endurance Race in July. The race (2) has been taking place in Devon for eight years now, and involves swimming, running, cycling and climbing. Janet (3) has been running and cycling since she was young, but before last January she (4) hadn't been swimming for a long time and (5) had never been climbing. By the time of the race, she (6) will have been learning to climb for only six months!

(7) Why has she been working so hard for this? Before Christmas, (8) Janet had been getting ill frequently. (9) She'd been seeing doctors two or three times a week, and all of them said she needed more exercise. Her friend (10) Claude has been competing in tough races for decades, and he suggested she try one. So she chose the toughest. (11) What had she been thinking?

By February, (12) she'd been rising every morning at 5am for two months. (13) Her diet hadn't been helping, so she cut out sugar and dairy. The improvements were rapid. Janet has not only lost weight and raised her stamina, (14) she's been feeling more awake and alive. What's more – (15) she's not been getting ill anymore. (16) Her life has also been improving in other ways she did not expect – (17) she's even been sleeping better.

But the Extreme Endurance Race is quickly approaching, and (18) she's been growing more nervous by the day. (19) Will she have been practising for long enough to face it? She isn't sure, but one thing is certain: by the time it's over, (20) Janet will have been working hard enough to form a habit. Now she's started getting fit, she doesn't expect to stop.

#### 16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

---

#### 17.1 Answers

1. Billy completed his homework before tea. or Billy was completing his homework before tea.
2. We agreed to meet at 4 p.m.
3. Lynn called while I was waiting for a bus.
4. He is only here because you invited him.
5. We could see that the ship was sinking.
6. John burst into the room to deliver the news.
7. She found her glasses under the sofa.
8. Only three students submitted their essays early.
9. They left early because they were not enjoying the film.
10. The boy cried when a bee stung him.
11. I lost phone while I was relaxing in Spain.
12. Vera forgot to lock the door again.
13. Ruth was caring for her mother, so could not go to the party.
14. The dog snarled because it was protecting its toy.
15. Fred was loading the car when he remembered his goggles.
16. We discovered our parents were paying too much for gas.
17. What were you doing at the time that the fire started?
18. When did she explain how to turn on the fridge?
19. Where did the thieves hide the diamonds?
20. Why was Julia laughing during the meeting?

#### 17.1 Complete or Process 1

#### 17.2 Answers

1. "Are you going on holiday this year?"

"No, I went on one already."

1. "I heard you gave up science classes."

"Yes, I thought I wasn't learning enough."

1. Penny collected model buses for many years. She was trying to get enough to start a museum.

2. "Why did we stop using disposable cups?"

"Because management decided to reduce plastic."

1. Sparrows were nesting in our loft. We could hear them above us.

2. "What did that sign say?"

"I couldn't see, it was swaying in the wind."

1. The new restaurant was a massive success. Hundreds of customers came in the first two days.

2. "You're home early tonight."

"Yes, I hurried back to watch the game."

1. Didn't that man look terribly cold? Wasn't he shaking all over?

2. "Look at how many burgers I have!"

"Wow, did you buy them all?"

1. "Your father called to ask where you were. Didn't you tell him we were going to the beach?"

2. "I heard they gave Michelle a first-class ticket to Bali."

"Yes, I think so – wasn't she consulting on the site of a new hotel?"

## 17.2 Complete or Process 2

### 17.3 Answers

1. There were no biscuits left because she had eaten them all.
2. The guests surprised her, as their flight had arrived early.
3. Our neighbours had been shouting for hours when we asked them to stop.
4. All our lights went out. I had forgotten to pay the meter.
5. Raccoons had been raiding our bins every night, so we added locks.
6. She had been preparing a presentation but went out before it was finished.
7. He left the café because his friends had been laughing at him.
8. Anna had read all the author's books except one.
9. Which book had she been reading before she found this one?
10. When had they opened the new bar? It looked very vibrant.

## 17.3 Complete or Process 3

### 17.4 Answers

1. Sheila was ironing her dress during a storm.

2. When we arrived at the hotel, it looked closed.
3. Though they seemed dim, the lights were on.
4. By 3 p.m. all his shares had risen; he was having a good day.
5. No one moved: the man had a gun.
6. Her husband always bought books when he felt bored.
7. You were having a bad dream, so I woke you.
8. At the time, they did not understand the problem.
9. Throughout July, we were often trying to paint our shed.
10. Geoff was listening to the radio at 11 a.m.
11. She had not fully decided, but she preferred the yellow curtains.
12. I was reading War and Peace but took a break to read a comic.
13. The man was choosing a tie for so long that they closed the shop.
14. As she entered the garage, Enid heard a curious sound.
15. Luke studied hard because he was aiming to get top marks.
16. Would work send me to Italy? It was exactly what I wanted.
17. He waited for a decision. Did they believe his story?
18. When we met Lana, did she smell of smoke?
19. The parrots surprised everyone – why did they appear so angry?
20. While I made tea, were you looking in my diary?

#### 17.4 Past States 1

#### 17.5 Answers

1. I was tired because I had been studying in the library.
2. Jolene had loved her backpack, but it was time to give it away.
3. We had tasted success while working at the bank.
4. Two wolves had been lurking near the camp at night.
5. Though he had seemed kind when he visited, he stole my ring.
6. The shop had been suffering from a lack of donations, so they ran an advert to help.
7. Marius had lived in Lewes for thirteen years before he moved to Germany.
8. Claude had been living in Lewes for thirteen years when he was asked to move.
9. The cheese had smelled fine in the morning, but was bad by lunch.
10. Tammy had believed it was impossible until she discovered the answer.

#### 17.5 Past States 2

#### 17.6 Answers

1. The hotel had cost a lot because it was the height of summer.
2. They exchanged letters only after they had separated.

3. My father had bought a new car two days before he visited us.
4. I passed my driving test once I had taken 40 lessons.
5. She wanted to ride her bike but the chain had broken the day before.
6. Miles had played the guitar for three years before he lost interest in it.
7. Where was the water he had asked for?
8. Shelly left early because she had completed her assignment.
9. The doctor had prescribed some medicine but Jim stopped taking it after a day.
10. By the time the firemen arrived, the building had been evacuated.
11. I had wanted boiled eggs but they gave me beans on toast.
12. The bridge needed repairing because the river had flooded that morning.
13. The children who achieved the best results had studied hardest.
14. By the time the procession started, thousands of people had gathered to see the Queen.
15. Our aunt retired early because she had started saving at an early age.

Note that these answers consider the most appropriate structure grammatically, where the past perfect indicates an earlier past time. However, though the past perfect is used to add clarity, many sequences can be understood without it. For example, sentences 2, 7 and 11 could have both verbs in the past simple.

#### 17.6 Past Sequences 1

#### 17.7 Answers

1. They needed to hurry because the ice was melting.
2. Roland could not find the toy because his friend had hidden it.
3. The pie was burning, so I switched the oven off.
4. Grandma had escaped, so we sent out a search party.
5. Hillary knew a lot because she had read all the books in the library.
6. I could not hear the news because my son was talking.
7. Though Tom had repaired his computer, the screen still did not work.
8. She called her mum while she was walking home.
9. The family was planning a garden party until they forecast rain.
10. Claus could not go to the shops because Herman had borrowed his car that morning.
11. Though the game had ended, the crowd did not go home.
12. We sat on the bench as the bus was taking a long time to arrive.
13. Neil stopped studying the letter; he had found the answer.
14. When she was travelling across Europe, Gina visited Switzerland.
15. Because the tree had fallen, the road was blocked.

#### 17.7 Past Sequences 2

#### 17.8 Answers

1. By the time I left Romania, I had been teaching there for three years.
2. While Jen was washing the dishes, Roy cleaned the table.
3. We sheltered in the barn because it was raining.
4. The track was impassable as it had been snowing heavily.
5. Alan was speaking to his bank manager all morning. or Alan had been speaking to his bank manager all morning.
6. You would have heard my answer if you had been listening.
7. I didn't use the sink as the tap had been leaking lately.
8. The bus was making funny noises, so we pulled over.
9. He could not drive home because he had been drinking wine.
10. The cleaners had been talking, and decided it was time to take action.

#### 17.8 Processes in the Past

#### 17.9 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. decided
2. wanted
3. was not
4. was not
5. asked
6. did she have
7. said
8. Did you leave
9. did not know
10. had
11. walked
12. remembered
13. found
14. told
15. needed
16. Did you see
17. asked
18. did you not put
19. answered
20. explained
21. was not

22. locked
23. was
24. was
25. sat
26. was not
27. could he do
28. was
29. returned
30. had
31. grabbed
32. charged
33. ran
34. did not
35. arrived
36. were not
37. did they go
38. understood
39. did not like
40. were

#### Felix and the Umbrella

Felix (1) decided to go the park last Saturday. He (2) wanted to see the pond and feed the ducks. It (3) was not a sunny day, so he needed an umbrella. The umbrella (4) was not in its usual place. He (5) asked his sister: (6) did she have his umbrella? She (7) said no.

“(8) Did you leave it at school?” she replied.

He (9) did not know . He (10) had the umbrella when he (11) walked home on Thursday. He (12) remembered leaving it to dry in the bathroom.

Felix (13) found the bathroom door locked. His father (14) told him the bath (15) needed replacing.

“(16) Did you see my umbrella in there?” Felix (17) asked .

“Why (18) did you not put it back by the door?” his dad (19) answered .

Felix (20) explained that it had been wet. But the umbrella (21) was not in the bathroom when he (22) locked the door, his dad (23) was sure. (24) Where was it ?

Felix (25) sat on the stairs, sad. It (26) was not possible to visit the park without the umbrella. What else (27) could he do ?

Just as he (28) was about to give up hope, his mother (29) returned from shopping. She (30) had the umbrella!

Felix (31) grabbed the umbrella from her startled hands, and (32) charged outside, finally ready to visit the park. He (33) ran down the road, and (34) did not stop for anything on the way. He (35) arrived at the pond, at long last. The ducks (36) were not there. Where (37) did they go ?

Of course, Felix (38) understood , standing in the rain. The ducks (39) did not like the rain either. They (40) were safe , inside, out of sight.

He would have to come back another day.

Note that this passage demonstrates a narrative following a clear sequence of completed action. For clarity, the past perfect may be used in some



instances here, such as for 21 and 22, but is not essential. The past continuous may also be used in some instances, to focus on the process instead of completion, such as with 10 and 11 – but we can use the past simple because the action was completed.

#### 17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

#### 17.10 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. was searching
2. were running
3. were providing
4. Was the place selling
5. was it offering
6. was trying
7. was not discussing
8. was bustling
9. were not handling
10. were running
11. was not smiling
12. was he wearing
13. were the managers dressing
14. was opening and closing
15. were waiting
16. how were they expecting
17. was rumbling
18. was not listening
19. was watching
20. was he planning
21. was having
22. were swimming
23. were serving
24. were becoming
25. was standing
26. were leaving
27. was eating
28. was not coming
29. were laughing
30. were enjoying

31. Were the chefs putting
32. was everyone not questioning
33. was not fooling
34. was devouring

#### An Unsatisfactory Restaurant

When I (1) was searching for a new restaurant, I discovered Calbini's had opened in the town centre. They (2) were running a promotion that week: three courses for £12.95. Very cheap, as others nearby (3) were providing a main course for £18! (4) Was the place selling itself short? Or (5) was it offering a worse service?

I visited on a Wednesday night with my colleague Gunther. He (6) was trying to decide what to eat on the way, from the online menu, but he (7) was not discussing it with me. Gunther is a quiet man.

On our arrival to the restaurant, the building (8) was bustling with people. Very busy for a Wednesday night! And the staff (9) were not handling it well: waiters (10) were running around, hot-faced, and the man who welcomed us was tired and (11) was not smiling. Moreover, what (12) was he wearing? Not a smart uniform, but brightly patterned rags covered in stains. Why (13) were the managers dressing their staff like clowns?

Our table was at the back of the room, next to the kitchen. The door (14) was opening and closing constantly. Even worse, we (15) were waiting for fifteen minutes before a waiter gave us a menu. The writing was badly printed: (16) how were they expecting anyone to read this?

We used Gunther's online menu instead. By then, my stomach (17) was rumbling. We had to give our orders twice because the waiter (18) was not listening. He (19) was watching the other tables; with so many people there, (20) was he planning a route of attack?

Eventually, our order was placed: for the main course, I (21) was having the calzone and Gunther chose tortellini.

Our starters arrived – prawns for both of us. The prawns (22) were swimming in brine. Undercooked. I stood and demanded to know if they (23) were serving us garbage.

The waiters, of course, were too busy to notice. The other customers (24) were becoming noisier as the restaurant only got busier. And now, as I (25) was standing, I saw the food on other tables. All as bad as ours.

I told Gunther we (26) were leaving at once, only to discover he (27) was eating the vile prawns!

"It's not bad," he told me. Clearly he (28) was not coming with me.

He wasn't the only one happy. Other people (29) were laughing. They (30) were enjoying this cheap, busy restaurant! (31) Were the chefs putting something special in the food? Or (32) was everyone not questioning the quality because it was so cheap?

Either way, it (33) was not fooling me. I gathered my things and left. The last time I saw him, Gunther (34) was devouring my meal, too.

#### 17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

#### 17.11 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. had been looking
2. had prepared
3. had made
4. had been making
5. had reached
6. had disappeared
7. had put
8. had commented
9. had it gone

10. had taken
11. Had someone sneaked
12. had been watching
13. had not heard
14. had not been listening
15. had become
16. had left
17. had not been disturbed
18. had wanted
19. Had a squirrel come
20. Had he not noticed
21. had not found
22. had he been playing
23. had let
24. had received
25. had been dreaming
26. had thought
27. had taken
28. had he not prepared

#### The Mystery of the Missing Sandwich

Lunch was approaching. Xavier (1) had been looking forward to his sandwich all morning. He (2) had prepared a special sandwich today: halloumi, salad and hummus that his wife (3) had made . She (4) had been making her own hummus for years, and now it (5) had reached perfection.

But when Xavier opened the fridge, the sandwich (6) had disappeared . He stared in disbelief: he (7) had put it there last night. His wife (8) had commented on it at 9 a.m., when she took milk for her tea, "That looks nice!" Where (9) had it gone ?

Xavier was alone that morning. His wife (10) had taken the train to York for the day. (11) Had someone sneaked in while he (12) had been watching TV? He (13) had not heard anything, but he (14) had not been listening carefully.

Xavier searched the house for signs of an intruder – or clues to what (15) had become of the missing sandwich. His daughter's room was locked, because she (16) had left for university a week ago. The other bedroom and the living room (17) had not been disturbed .

The garden door was open, because Xavier (18) had wanted some fresh air. He stood checking the trees. (19) Had a squirrel come inside and opened the fridge? (20) Had he not noticed a genius thief?

After searching the garden for crumbs, Xavier returned to the kitchen. He (21) had not found any evidence of an intruder or the sandwich's fate. Why (22) had he been playing the TV so loud? His distraction (23) had let some terrible person steal his amazing sandwich.

Finally, Xavier decided to call his wife and tell her about this tragedy. But first, he saw he (24) had received a message from her already.

"Thank you for preparing that lovely sandwich – it was everything I (25) had been dreaming of all morning!"

Xavier stared in horror. His wife (26) had thought the sandwich was for her. She (27) had taken it with her when she left! But he could only blame himself. Why (28) had he not prepared one for her, too?

#### 17.12 Answers

1.

- a. Neil was cycling when it started raining.
- b. Neil had cycled home in the rain, so he arrived wet.
- c. Neil cycled home in the rain yesterday.
- d. Neil had been cycling since 9 a.m., so he stopped for lunch.

2.

- a. Carla passed the salt to Jeremy after he asked for it.
- b. Carla had been passing the same man all year when she walked to work.
- c. Carla was passing the shop when a bracelet caught her eye.
- d. Carla had passed this shop before, was she going the right way?

3.

- a. Our teacher had given us a difficult assignment, so I could not go out.
- b. Our teacher gave us too much homework this afternoon.
- c. Our teacher had been giving us too much homework ever since term started.
- d. Our teacher was giving us an exam when the bell rang.

4.

- a. The band played until 3 a.m. last night.
- b. The band had been playing for five hours before they had to stop.
- c. The band were playing when the lights went out.
- d. The band had played all the songs they knew and had to stop.

#### 17.12 Mixed Past Matching

#### 17.13 Answers

- 1. A) he ate dinner B) Carl washed
- 2. A) she was preparing B) the ambassador arrived
- 3. A) I had been studying B) I took
- 4. A) Boris closed the door B) the cat slept
- 5. X – simultaneous
- 6. A) someone had taken B) we could not enter
- 7. A) he was fixing B) the post arrived
- 8. A) she finished B) Kim went
- 9. A) our neighbours were talking B) they left
- 10. A) he had borrowed B) Roland returned
- 11. X – simultaneous

12. X – simultaneous

13. A) had Jim been asking B) you sent

14. X – simultaneous

15. A) what did they put B) the cake tasted

#### 17.13 Past Time Sequences

#### 17.14 Answers

1. At 07:55 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was on the bus. – TRUE

b. ... Jen was listening to music. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was checking her make-up.

d. ... Jen arrived at the Friends Centre.

1. At 9:35 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was entertaining children.

b. ... Jen had drunk a coffee. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was walking through town. – TRUE

d. ... Jen had started her second job.

1. At 12:45 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen had eaten a burrito. – TRUE

b. ... Jen was reading a magazine.

c. ... Jen had been reading a magazine. – TRUE

d. ... Mary bought a burrito.

1. At 15:30 ...

a. ... Jen was travelling to the Friends Centre.

b. ... Jen had been visiting schools for over two hours. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was teaching adults.

d. ... Jen finished visiting schools.

1. At 19:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen finished work for the day. – TRUE

b. ... Jen had taught magic to adults. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was cooking dinner.

d. ... Jen went to get the bus. – TRUE

1. At 10:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen practised new tricks.

b. ... Jen fell asleep.

c. ... Jen had eaten dinner. – TRUE

d. ... Jen was reading a book. – TRUE

#### 17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

#### 17.15 Answers

1. Ongoing Past Process
2. Past State
3. Past State
4. Past Action Completed Earlier
5. Past Action Completed Earlier
6. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
7. Past State
8. Past Possession
9. Past Action Completed Earlier
10. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
11. Past State
12. Earlier Past State
13. Earlier Past State
14. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
15. Past Action Completed Earlier
16. Past State
17. Past Action
18. Past Action
19. Ongoing Past Process
20. Ongoing Past Process
21. Past Action
22. Past Action
23. Ongoing Past Process
24. Past Action
25. Ongoing Past Process
26. Past Action Completed Earlier

#### 17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses

#### 17.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. announced
2. had been meeting

3. submitted
4. loved
5. had been experiencing
6. formed
7. argued
8. had been decreasing
9. was trying
10. had drawn
11. showed
12. had gathered
13. had become
14. (had) got
15. (had) removed
16. could not
17. had improved
18. insisted
19. had asked
20. (had) visited
21. had been researching
22. had not seen
23. persuaded
24. were delaying
25. held
26. had grown
27. gave
28. led
29. was coming

#### A New Pier

In April, the seaside town of Trilby-on-Sea (1) announced plans to build a new pier. Before this decision, Trilby's council (2) had been meeting with local charities and tourist organisations for six months. A Scottish architect (3) (had) submitted designs including shops and rides. Most of the town (4) loved the designs, but the council were unsure. They (5) had been experiencing budget cuts for the past few years.

Local residents (6) formed a group called Pier Alliance in January to convince the council. They (7) argued that the new pier would bring wealth to Trilby. Visitor numbers (8) had been decreasing since two summers before, and everyone (9) was trying to find a solution. They remembered: Trilby's old pier (10) had drawn massive crowds, many decades ago.

Newspaper clippings (11) showed that hundreds of people (12) had gathered on the pier daily. It (13) had become unstable in the 1980s, when the supports (14) (had) got damaged in a terrible storm. The council (15) (had) removed the pier, saying they (16) could not afford to maintain it.

Technology (17) had improved a lot since then, so Pier Alliance (18) insisted the new pier would be cheaper and safer. By time of the final

decision, they (19) had asked ten different experts to speak to the council about it. In March, a gentleman from America (20) (had) visited the town. He (21) had been researching piers for thirteen years and said he (22) had not seen a better design than Trilby's new proposal. Slowly, Pier Alliance (23) persuaded the council. The men in charge (24) were delaying the decision, so the town finally (25) held a rally to demonstrate how support (26) had grown for the new pier.

Finally, the council (27) gave in, and the April announcement (28) led to great celebrations. The new pier (29) was coming at last!

17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

17.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. had taken
2. had disappeared
3. was repairing
4. were you doing
5. were not sitting
6. Were you watching
7. had not been looking
8. had not been working
9. asked
10. was making
11. did not see
12. Had he drunk
13. suspected
14. were wandering
15. had not been
16. (had) caught
17. had told
18. had been enjoying
19. Had she let
20. Did you take
21. looked
22. had been admiring
23. had
24. was not being
25. was getting
26. grabbed
27. cried
28. had been lying



29. ran
30. was already leaving
31. was standing
32. Had he been watching
33. did he steal
34. showed
35. had been getting
36. had exposed

#### The Pen Thief

Vicky was certain Clive (1) had taken her pen. It (2) had disappeared while she (3) was repairing the printer.

"What (4) were you doing ten minutes ago?" Vicky asked. "You (5) were not sitting at your desk, I am sure."

"(6) Were you watching me?" Clive replied.

She (7) had not been looking his way, no. But he (8) had not been working when she fixed the printer, not if he stole her pen. She (9) asked him to answer her question.

"I (10) was making tea," he told her.

Vicky (11) did not see a mug of tea on his desk. (12) Had he drunk it already? She (13) suspected not. "You (14) were wandering around my desk, weren't you?"

"Absolutely not!" Clive protested. He (15) had not been near her desk since Vicky (16) (had) caught him stealing her paper a month ago. She (17) had told him to stay away, and she (18) had been enjoying the results ever since.

(19) Had she let her guard down too soon?

"(20) Did you take my pen?" she asked, plainly.

Clive shook his head, but (21) looked scared. "I did not, I would not, I never!"

He (22) had been admiring her pen ever since she bought it; it (23) had a platinum grip. Vicky decided he (24) was not being honest. But she (25) was getting nowhere with words. She (26) grabbed him quickly, and he (27) cried out when she found the pen in a pocket. He (28) had been lying all along!

Vicky (29) ran towards her manager, but when she got there Clive (30) was already leaving. The manager (31) was standing nearby. (32) Had he been watching all along?

"What (33) did he steal this time?" the manager asked.

Vicky (34) showed him the pen, and the manager sighed sadly. Clive (35) had been getting away with these thefts for too long. But they (36) had exposed him, at last.

#### 17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

##### 18.1 Answers

1. My family usually eats dinner at 7 p.m.
2. He is paying for this meal.
3. Jonas teaches at St Mary's High School.
4. Our children do not play any instruments.
5. This bed always creaks noisily.

6. We are buying a new house.
7. Albert is not trying hard enough – he can do better.
8. You are sitting in my chair, please move.
9. Every time I visit Gran, she gives me sweets.
10. Her friends are not helping her this time.
11. This professor's course fills very quickly each year.
12. Sam serves food at the soup kitchen on Tuesdays.
13. I am not studying to become a lawyer anymore.
14. Why do the geese fly south each winter?
15. How is Jenna travelling through the mountains on her trip?
16. Are you choosing a new tie for the wedding ceremony?
17. Which shops do not offer non-dairy chocolates?
18. What is happening on the beach right now?
19. Who owns that bright pink car?
20. Where are your parents staying this weekend?

#### 18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

#### 18.2 Answers

1. Dominic is usually so nice. Why is he being naughty?
2. The sun is setting very late this month. Usually, the sun sets earlier.
3. She refuses to say sorry. She is not apologising.
4. Harry just climbed a tree. He is swinging from a branch.
5. You will love the way Deidre cooks potatoes. She always fries them.
6. Mia has not given an answer yet – she is thinking about it.
7. I never usually buy nectarines for myself, but today I am buying some for my mother.
8. The boy is watching TV. He is not bouncing his ball.
9. "Where is my magazine?"

"I think it is lying by the sofa."

1. "We are decorating our living room."

"Oh, what colour are you painting it?"

1. "Mr Harris is not coming to dinner."

"Strange. He does not cancel often."

1. "The volleyball team surprised everyone by reaching the final."

"Do they not normally win?"

1. "Are you holding a bottle of wine?"

"No, it's a bottle of olive oil."

1. The building supervisor does not allow smoking. We are breaking the rules!
2. "I drew this picture."

"Ah, you are improving quickly!"

## 18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

### 18.3 Answers

1. This fish tastes strange, is it old?
2. Caroline looks very elegant in her new dress.
3. My uncle is reading a biography of Julius Caesar.
4. I do not want your banana, thank you.
5. The cows are stomping on all the flowers.
6. Leo is struggling to understand algebra.
7. Our neighbours seem very quiet today.
8. Laila and Howard are not sharing their peanuts.
9. Finley has all the best Xbox games currently available.
10. The customers doubt that they are being given a good deal.
11. Eli is getting everyone a round of beers.
12. I might not go to Calcutta – I am having second thoughts about it.
13. Though she needs a new chair now, Anna is comparing all the options first.
14. We promise to deliver the table by Friday.
15. Why do my hands appear to be so dirty?
16. Does that clock need new batteries too, now?
17. Who is listening to my radio show this week?
18. What are you wearing to school today?
19. Does Maria not hear that singing bird?
20. Why do beavers love building dams?

### 18.3 Present States

### 18.4 Answers

1. She's frustrated because she is always cleaning up. (habitual action)
2. The beach is crowded today. (state)
3. It is getting dark, I don't think we should walk home. (changing state)
4. They usually eat in the dining room. (repeated event)
5. When you flick a switch, the light comes on. (general fact)
6. This cheese smells awful. (state)
7. "Now, I declare this store open!" (spoken action)

8. I am always looking for new books to read. (habitual action)
9. Our grandparents visit twice a month. (repeated event)
10. They say actions speak louder than words. (general fact)
11. The swimmers are competing for the gold medal. (temporary action)
12. I propose we take a different route home. (spoken action)
13. Gary is not home, he is walking the dog. (temporary action)
14. Seagull numbers are increasing because tourists are leaving food around. (changing state, temporary action)
15. Look, that tree is swaying in the wind! (temporary action)

#### 18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

#### 18.5 Answers

1. This bread has gone mouldy.
2. Alison created a website this morning.
3. He did not sweep the floor before dinner.
4. The boiler has broken again, so there is no hot water.
5. I cannot come to class. Last time, Mr Rogers told me not to come back.
6. Nathan has passed his driving test because he did not quit.
7. My cousin hates spiders, so he has sealed all of his windows.
8. The garden has bloomed with the recent hot weather.
9. The sailors moved quickly because the winds were favourable.
10. Chloe is visiting, but she has not said how long she will stay.
11. My phone battery has died, can I use your charger?
12. She could not find her purse, so paid with her credit card.
13. Did you see? My essay has won the competition.
14. Did you receive the coffee machine you ordered?
15. We put our poster up in the hall, have you seen it?
16. Did you buy the candles when you went shopping yesterday?
17. Have you not given in your assignment yet?
18. Why has that woman taken all the baguettes? There are none left!
19. Lola is telling everyone about her new job, has she spoken to you about it?
20. Did the farmer deliver that milk, or have you been to the shop?

#### 18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

#### 18.6 Answers

1. I was going to pottery classes earlier this year.
2. Tristan was printing fake money and now he is in jail.

3. You have been working too hard this month, take a break.
4. She was not helping her dad build the shed until Friday.
5. The teenagers were cleaning the streets last week. Are they back?
6. Hundreds of thousands of people have been signing the petition. It could reach a million by tomorrow.
7. We have been taking lessons since January, to improve our pronunciation.
8. The king was avoiding his responsibilities, so a committee was formed.
9. The ivy has been spreading over our wall. We must cut it back before it gets worse.
10. They have not been opening the window – it stinks in here!
11. Were you waiting here before me?
12. Has the museum been showing this exhibit for long?
13. Have the children been bothering you today?
14. Was the wheel squeaking when you used the bike?

#### 18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

#### 18.7 Answers

1. Who left this bag here? It has left a stain.
2. You have not convinced me to come to the game.
3. I know Germany well, because I lived there for six months last year.
4. The car just made an awful noise – I think we hit a log.
5. She was sure about it: Simon broke the vase.
6. I could not bring the book home. The librarian refused to lend it to me.
7. This kitchen is unsanitary. Rats have infested the cellar.
8. My phone has stopped working. Can I borrow yours?
9. What is in the oven? Have you cooked potatoes?
10. Who designed these wonderful curtains? Did you do them?
11. Someone is stealing my socks. Did Billie take them?
12. How is your degree? Has it got any easier?

#### 18.7 Past Present Emphasis

#### 18.8 Answers

1. We have been using this washing machine for fifteen years.
2. I am walking to work for the whole week, starting today.
3. She is considering which scarf to buy.
4. The couple have been shopping for a while.
5. William has not been playing computer games for very long.
6. You have been watching me since I came in – stop it!
7. Alice is buying doughnuts every day this week, we have decided.

8. That man is selling hats at a discount for the next two hours.
9. You've been quiet. Have you been reading all morning?
10. I need the car later. Are you using it all day?
11. She has been unwell for weeks. Has she not been taking her medicine?
12. Why is he asking me so many questions right now?

#### 18.8 Duration in the Present 1

#### 18.9 Answers

1. Martha has opened six shops in Brighton.
2. We have stayed in hotels many times this year.
3. The sea has been getting warmer all summer.
4. He has not gone to class a single time this week.
5. You have washed the dishes twice today.
6. I have not been receiving as many letters as I used to, and hope that will change.
7. Claudia has been spying on her brother for fifteen minutes.
8. Eliot has not watched any television since yesterday.
9. Margaret has been studying her geography textbook since last Wednesday.
10. You have been putting your shoes in the wrong cupboard for months.
11. The boy has given his teacher an apple once a week this year.
12. The girl has been taking the bus to school almost every day this year, but sometimes walks.
13. How many times have they said they would repair the road?
14. Have you been bowling in Oxford recently?
15. Has she been cutting her hair short for a long time?
16. How long have the clients been waiting for? Get them some water!

#### 18.9 Duration in the Present 2

#### 18.10 Answers

1. We have loved each other for twenty years.
2. They have believed in magic ever since they saw the Great Roberto perform.
3. I have been listening to rap music for the past three weeks.
4. Axel has been tired since he woke up.
5. She has been reading Victorian ghost stories all night.
6. You have not been relaxing during this holiday.
7. Doris has heard all the children's speeches today.
8. What has Carter been doing in his shed all morning?
9. How long have they known about the secret passage for?

10. Why have we not understood everything he has been saying?

11. How long has that fox been sitting on our fence for?

12. Have the villagers seemed restless for long?

18.10 Duration in the Present 3

18.11 Answers

1. Correct – repetitive action
2. Correct – repetitive action
3. Correct – let me explain refers to a perceived temporary problem
4. Incorrect – never implies it is timeless
5. Correct – appearances can be temporary
6. Correct – the smell can be temporary
7. Correct – the repeated occurrence can be temporary
8. Incorrect – flood implies a general rule, not a temporary situation
9. Correct – an informal question within the moment
10. Incorrect – the belief is not temporary
11. Incorrect – the liking of the gift is not temporary
12. Correct – an informal question within the moment

18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

18.12 Answers

1.

- a. The pie is cooling on the shelf.
- b. The pie has cooled enough to eat.
- c. The pie has been cooling for an hour already.
- d. When the pie cools, we can eat it.

2.

- a. Tania has had her dinner, and is going to bed.
- b. Tania has been having strange dreams constantly this week.
- c. Tania has lots of friends, because she is nice.
- d. Tania is having a party, so no one can sleep.

3.

- a. The professor is studying a new language right now.
- b. The professor has studied ten languages already.
- c. The professor studies languages as a hobby.
- d. The professor has been studying languages for 50 years.

4.

- a. What have you done with my pen? I can't find it.
- b. What are you doing with my pen? Use your own!
- c. What do you do with my pen when you borrow it? It always comes back wet!
- d. What have you been doing with my pen? You've had it all morning.

18.12 Mixed Present Matching

18.13 Answers

- 1. X – simultaneous
- 2. A) the teacher has marked B) my sister is asking
- 3. A) the TV is not working B) he is reading (A caused B)
- 4. A) we have been visiting B) it is getting more crowded
- 5. A) which has been B) my mother cooks
- 6. X – simultaneous
- 7. A) I have been complaining B) they are repairing
- 8. A) Lottie has learned B) she is wandering
- 9. A) have you seen B) what are you watching
- 10. X – simultaneous

18.13 Present Time Sequences

18.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

- 1. writes
- 2. is working
- 3. has become
- 4. has granted
- 5. has been researching
- 6. has
- 7. is editing
- 8. include
- 9. do you like
- 10. has fame changed
- 11. do you get
- 12. have you been writing
- 13. do you not like
- 14. is
- 15. seem



16. Has Reid not heard
17. has been touring
18. has met
19. wants
20. comes
21. has lived
22. gives
23. is now funding
24. fears
25. has not visited
26. frightens
27. do her readers care
28. have only been raising
29. Is Emma making
30. thinks
31. has been
32. has been wasting
33. has been waiting

#### A Difficult Interview

Emma (1) writes for the Daily Sentinel newspaper. She (2) is working on a feature article about pop icon, Natalie Reid. It is a very important piece for the newspaper, because Reid (3) has become one of the most famous musicians in the world, and she (4) has granted Emma an exclusive interview. Emma (5) has been researching the singer for a month, to make sure she (6) has an informed set of questions to ask.

Today, Emma (7) is editing her interview questions. Some of her examples (8) include :

What (9) do you like to do in your free time?

How (10) has fame changed your life?

Where (11) do you get your ideas from?

How long (12) have you been writing music for?

What (13) do you not like about being famous?

Emma (14) is worried, because these questions (15) seem too ordinary. (16) Has Reid not heard them a hundred times before? Reid (17) has been touring the world for the past six months. She (18) has met thousands of people who probably asked the same things.

Emma (19) wants to ask something different. Reid (20) comes from an unusual background; she (21) has lived in a poor neighbourhood all her life, and (22) gives generously to charities. The singer (23) is now funding the construction of new housing. But Emma (24) fears asking questions about these topics, because she (25) has not visited Reid's neighbourhood herself. The area (26) frightens her. And (27) do her readers care about these things? On social media, Reid's fans (28) have only been raising questions about her relationships for the past few months.

(29) Is Emma making things too complicated?

No, Emma (30) thinks , now, it's time to get on with it. She (31) has been foolish to avoid these topics. And she (32) has been wasting time worrying about it. Most likely, Reid (33) has been waiting for someone to ask the important questions!

#### 18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

#### 18.15 Answers

Barry gets to work at 6 p.m. He talks with the teachers, if they are still in the school.

Barry starts work by vacuuming all the carpets. He lifts the chairs onto tables to clear the floors, and empties the bins in each room. Barry wipes the boards clean, if it is necessary.

Then, Barry sweeps the tiled floors in the corridors and halls. On Fridays ( or Because it is Friday) , he mops these floors. He uses two buckets, one for soapy water and one for rinsing.

Once all the floors are finished, Barry cleans the washrooms. He sprays them with disinfectant and scrubs the toilets. He replaces the soap and toilet paper when they run out ( or if they have run out) .

After his cleaning duties are finished, Barry usually takes a break at the time as the headmistress. He makes tea for himself and the headmistress when ( or if) he gets to the common room first. If the headmistress arrives first, she prepares the tea. Barry usually reads a book during the break, but if he forgets to bring one, he listens to the radio.

After his break, Barry focuses on more varied tasks. Firstly, he completes repairs, such as on doors, furniture or fences. During winter , Barry spreads grit outside to stop the paths getting slippery. During summer , he cuts weeds and prunes hedges.

Barry normally finishes work at 9 p.m., but stays later if there are extra tasks to do. Sometimes , teachers need help moving furniture or preparing equipment for a class. The teachers and Barry do these tasks together. He gets paid extra for this.

#### 18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

#### 18.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. are joining
2. are fielding
3. have performed
4. have been competing
5. qualifies
6. open
7. are taking
8. chase
9. move
10. has
11. is sprinting
12. faces
13. is closing
14. clash
15. steals
16. is making
17. is
18. are letting

19. races
20. has hit
21. is rolling
22. has stopped
23. are gathering
24. has pushed
25. have got
26. is blowing
27. is showing
28. Is the referee handling
29. seems
30. have calmed
31. goes
32. has not broken
33. has scored
34. has saved
35. have both been practising
36. steps
37. shoots
38. scores
39. have taken
40. promises

#### Doves United vs The Firecats: Live Commentary

You (1) are joining us live for an exciting match between two women's soccer teams, Doves United and The Firecats. They (2) are fielding strong teams today, and both teams (3) have performed brilliantly to reach this semi-final. They (4) have been competing since June 1st for a chance at the championship trophy, and today's match decides who (5) qualifies for the final!

Doves United (6) are opening the game, they (7) are taking the kick-off now. The Firecats (8) chase them right away; oh my, these women (9) move fast!

United's captain, Morales, (10) has the ball, and she (11) is sprinting up the right flank. But she (12) faces trouble! Firecats defender Lux (13) is closing on Morales. They (14) clash ! Lux (15) steals the ball and she (16) is making a break. The United team (17) is spread out; they (18) are letting her through!

Lux (19) races into the penalty box – only the keeper to beat!

Oh no! Lux is down! United's centre-half (20) has hit her from behind. An awful foul! Lux (21) is rolling on the floor, she could be injured. The referee (22) has stopped play, and The Firecats (23) are gathering in their opponent's half. Someone is shouting – someone else is on the floor. Another player (24) has pushed her over! Things (25) have got out of hand.

The referee (26) is blowing her whistle! She (27) is showing the red card to United's centre-half. And to a Firecats player! (28) Is the referee handling this well? Yes. It (29) seems she has everything under control again.

The players (30) have calmed down. Play will resume with a penalty.

Lux (31) goes to the penalty spot, apparently she (32) has not broken any bones. This is an exciting pairing – Lux (33) has scored eight out of her last nine penalties in this tournament, but the United keeper (34) has saved nine out of her last ten! No doubt they (35) have both been practising very hard. Lux (36) steps back from the ball, ready to strike! She (37) shoots – she (38) scores !

One minute in, The Firecats (39) have taken the lead! This game (40) promises to be thrilling.

18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

18.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Do you want
2. delivers
3. prepare
4. combine
5. begin
6. reacts
7. takes
8. want
9. warm
10. goes
11. affects
12. touch
13. gives
14. Have you mixed
15. You've created
16. absorbs
17. do we develop
18. doesn't require
19. Place
20. takes
21. Isn't
22. Put
23. becomes
24. needs
25. you've formed
26. rises
27. does the dough spring
28. use

29. traps
30. goes
31. opens
32. remove
33. produces
34. makes
35. Does it sound
36. Don't eat
37. Rest
38. you've baked

#### How to Bake a Perfect Loaf

(1) Do you want to make a perfect loaf of bread? This recipe (2) delivers great results.

To make life easier, (3) prepare your ingredients in advance: 500g of strong flour, 8g of yeast, 300ml of water and 10g of salt. These simple ingredients (4) combine for a basic but delicious loaf.

Before you (5) begin, a word about temperature. When it is hot, the mixture (6) reacts faster. On colder days, the recipe (7) takes longer to complete. For balance, we (8) want the mixture to be about 75 degrees. If you (9) warm the water, you can manage this temperature.

Step one: combine the water and the yeast in a bowl. The flour (10) goes in next, then the salt on top of the flour. This order is important, because the salt (11) affects the yeast if they (12) touch directly.

Mix the ingredients: you can use a spoon, but hand mixing (13) gives you a better feel for the results.

(14) Have you mixed it thoroughly now? (15) You've created a dough! Leave it for about 20 minutes: during this time, the flour (16) absorbs water.

Next: how (17) do we develop gluten? This recipe (18) doesn't require kneading, but uses folding instead. (19) Place the dough on a floured counter and fold one side to about halfway in. Turn 90 degrees and fold again. It (20) takes two or three turns, usually, until you have a tight ball. (21) Isn't that easy?

(22) Put the dough back in the bowl, covered by a towel, and leave it to rise for about 90 minutes. When the dough (23) becomes light and airy, it is ready. Back on the counter, where it (24) needs to be folded again, like a letter. Fold to the centre, then turn, until you (25) you've formed a tight parcel.

Now, the dough (26) rises one more time – leave it for another hour to 90 minutes. When you press it with a finger, (27) does the dough spring back? Then it is ready.

We (28) use a Dutch Oven to do the cooking, preheated to 475 degrees. A Dutch Oven (29) traps steam with a lid, for the best results. The dough (30) goes in seam side up. The seam (31) opens during cooking to give a nice rustic look.

Put the Dutch Oven and dough in the oven for 25 minutes, then (32) remove the lid. Another 15–20 minutes in the oven (33) produces a golden loaf with a firm crust. A properly cooked loaf (34) makes a hollow thump when you tap the base.

(35) Does it sound done? (36) Don't eat it yet! (37) Rest the loaf on a wire rack for 30 minutes, so the interior crumb can set, making it easier to cut. Congratulations: (38) you've baked a perfect loaf!

#### 18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

##### 19.1 Answers

1. Because Lucas is tired, Regina will make him a tea.
2. This Halloween, Tina is going to dress as a zombie.
3. My brother is outside, will you let him in?

4. Those men have used the wrong timber. The house is going to collapse.
5. Claire thinks her boss will like her latest report.
6. Is that a woodpecker in the tree? I will get my binoculars to check.
7. Despite the cold summer, the building managers are not going to activate the heating until October.
8. We've been looking forward to our train journey; we are going to travel across the Swiss Alps.
9. When Paul gets back from Scotland, he is going to start a new job.
10. Tim's parents said he cannot go outside for a month, so he is going to play computer games every weekend.
11. I would like to go climbing, but I will wait and see if this rain stops!
12. The swimming pool is always busy; it is going to be busy today, I am sure.
13. "Where are you going with that knife?"  
"I am going to cut a piece of birthday cake."

1. "What drink would you like?"

"I will have a cocktail."

1. "Where can I complain about the smell in our room?"

"The lady behind the counter will help you."

#### 19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

#### 19.2 Answers

1. Dawn is visiting her parents next Tuesday.
2. Our bus arrives at 12 noon.
3. The family is staying home next Christmas.
4. Ian is not working during the following three weekends.
5. The meeting this afternoon involves every department.
6. Hurry, the play starts at 8 p.m. and I don't want to be late!
7. Everyone is waiting for Cathy, because she is bringing champagne.
8. The ghost appears at sundown, we must be ready.
9. Construction work begins on the new apartment block tomorrow.
10. Are you coming to the dance on Thursday?
11. Is Adrian giving the speech this evening?
12. Are we meeting for a piano class in the morning?
13. Does the train leave at three or four?
14. Is your new girlfriend joining us for dinner?
15. Does the post office deliver today?

#### 19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

#### 19.3 Answers

1. "We need volunteers to clean the beach."

"I'll do it if I have time."

1. "Lizzy is on holiday next week."

"Oh, is she travelling somewhere nice?"

1. "Will our bus get to the airport in time?"

"I think so, check in closes in half an hour."

1. "Have you heard the weather forecast?"

"Yes, they said it's going to rain."

1. "My aunt is in town this Friday. What should we do?"

"The museum is running an exhibition on Victorian clothes, you could try that."

1. "What time should we leave for the game on Saturday?"

"Early – the rail workers are on strike this weekend."

1. "I need to go home and feed my cats. What time does this show finish?"
2. "Do you know we've run out of printer paper?"

"Yes, I'm going to buy some this afternoon."

1. "Are you okay? You look very pale."

"No, I'm going to be sick!"

1. "Can you come with me to the ballet performance?"

"Unfortunately not, I'm playing golf this afternoon."

1. "Have you seen the mess on our window?"

"No, I'll clean it in a minute."

1. "Why are you writing in such a rush?"

"Because the show starts in half an hour!"

1. "Shall we check out Dover Castle tomorrow?"

"I can't, I'm working all day tomorrow."

1. "Does anyone want to go for an ice cream?"

"Me, I'll come!"

### 19.3 Mixed Future Simple

### 19.4 Answers

1. I will meet you in the park later. ( or I am going to meet / am meeting you in the park later)
2. He is going to sell me his car. ( or He will sell me his car.)
3. They will be playing hockey for hours. ( or They are going to be playing hockey for hours.)
4. It is going to be getting colder over the next two weeks. ( or It will be getting colder over the next two weeks.)
5. The college will accept new students in September. ( or The college is going to accept / is accepting new students in September.)
6. We are meeting up and travelling together – our friends will already be waiting at the station for us.

7. Rebecca will be staying in the Hilton while she's in town. ( or Rebecca is going to be staying in the Hilton while she's in town.)
8. The mayor is going to open the new leisure centre this Wednesday. ( or The mayor will open / is opening the new leisure centre this Wednesday.)
9. My wife will cook dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late. ( or My wife is going to be cooking / is cooking dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late.)
10. Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she will be eating before then. ( or Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she is going to be eating before then.)
11. Will you be working this Sunday? ( or Are you going to be / Are you working this Sunday?)
12. Are they going to deliver all the bread before 6 a.m.? ( or Will they deliver / Are they delivering all the bread before 6 a.m.)
13. Will she be driving at 3 p.m., in case we need to call? ( or Is she going to be driving at 3 p.m., in case we need to call?)
14. Will Frank be hiking in Scotland all weekend? ( or Is Frank going to be hiking / Is Frank hiking in Scotland all weekend?)
15. Will I make the right choice next time? ( or Am I going to make the right choice this time?)

#### 19.4 Future Processes

#### 19.5 Answers

1. Shirley will take her exams in June. She will have graduated by August.
2. Our parents will visit at Christmas. They will bring presents.
3. You are going to buy some new shoes. Will you have earned enough money?
4. The tide will be highest at 11 a.m., because it will have come all the way in.
5. Brenda is going to have baked a cake before the party. She will make it from scratch.
6. Ulrich will have passed his test by 1 p.m. We are going to throw him a party.
7. Workers will close the high street this evening. They are going to divert traffic.
8. I hope the weather will improve tomorrow. They say it is going to rain in the morning.
9. Are you going to tell Jon about the wedding soon? By next week, he will have heard it from someone else.
10. Will you have repaired your door before you go away? You will not leave with it in that state, will you?

#### 19.5 Future Sequences

#### 19.6 Answers

1. My parents will have been living together for 20 years this October.
2. The fishermen will be returning in 15 minutes.
3. You are going to be studying all evening.
4. He will have been trying to fix the sink all day before he admits he needs help.
5. By the time of the competition, Sally is going to have been training for eighteen months.
6. I am going to be travelling for three days, so I won't be able to call.
7. The cat will be sleeping in the loft during the party.
8. Inflation will have been rising for five months by February.
9. Colin is going to have been walking all day if he reaches the seaside by sunset.
10. At midnight, we will be watching the fireworks.



11. At noon, we will have been waiting for Robert for an hour.

12. The days will be getting shorter in September.

#### 19.6 Duration in the Future 1

#### 19.7 Answers

1. The eggs will have been sitting in the fridge for a month by the weekend.
2. I will have written my essay by 5 p.m.
3. Eric will have been researching Vikings for two years before he writes his book.
4. The tourists will have visited all the pubs in town before they go home.
5. You won't see any birds, because they will have migrated south for the winter.
6. Before long, Ola will have been searching for her missing sock for a week.
7. We will have been talking for two hours when Jim joins us.
8. If it survives much longer, the tree will have been growing for fifteen years.
9. By the time we leave school, our teacher will have taught us everything.
10. Peggy will have been demanding a pony for three months by her birthday.

#### 19.7 Duration in the Future 2

#### 19.8 Answers

1.

- a. I am going to buy a house once I save up enough money.
- b. I am going to have bought a house by September, you can come visit in October!
- c. I am going to be buying a house this summer, so won't have much free time.
- d. I am going to have been buying houses all summer – I'll be exhausted in autumn!

2.

- a. Clarence is joining us this evening – shall we make a soup?
- b. Clarence will have been driving all day – will he want to rest when he gets here?
- c. Clarence will have eaten on the way, he won't want dinner.
- d. Clarence will be staying in the guest room – please prepare the bed.

3.

- a. The post office is going to open a new store in June.
- b. The post office is going to have moved to a new store by June.
- c. The post office is going to be too busy opening their new store to serve customers.
- d. The post office is going to have been opening new stores all year, come New Year.

4.

- a. The new phone will have sold out by Tuesday.
- b. The new phone will be impressing customers all month.

- c. The new phone will come with a velvet carry case.
- d. The new phone will have been selling for two months by January.

#### 19.8 Mixed Future Matching

#### 19.9 Answers

1. A) they finish playing B) they will come
2. A) the last guest leaves B) the party will finish
3. A) we last another summer B) we will have been married
4. A) the van is fixed B) Tim will drive
5. A) they will have been working B) the company releases
6. X – simultaneous
7. A) the banks calls B) I will come back
8. A) the referee arrives B) the match will start
9. X – simultaneous
10. A) they have inspected B) our luggage will be cleared
11. X – simultaneous
12. A) Larry collect B) the shop closes
13. B) your passes will have been ordered B) who is attending
14. A) we will have to pay B) does the train leave
15. A) will she have seen B) Aunt Gina leaves

#### 19.9 Future Time Sequences

#### 19.10 Answers

1. After you take a nap, you will feel a lot better.
2. You need to finish your work before you go home at 6 p.m.
3. I think I will buy bread from the corner shop when it opens.
4. We are having a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting. ( or We will have / are going to have a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting.)
5. Before we start our lesson, we are going to review yesterday's class. ( or Before we start our lesson, we will review yesterday's class.)
6. We will be sitting in the shelter when the bus comes.
7. I'm very sorry, it seems Dr. Jones will not come back until 2 p.m.
8. I don't think you will have any problems when you land in Boston. ( or I don't think you are going to have any problems when you land in Boston.)
9. On Friday at 8 o'clock, I am meeting my friend. ( or On Friday at 8 o'clock, I am going to meet / will meet my friend.)
10. The English lesson starts at 8:45. (as a schedule)
11. Look at the clouds – it is going to rain in a few minutes. ( or Look at the clouds – it will rain in a few minutes.)
12. When you get off the train, I will be waiting for you by the ticket machine. ( or When you get off the train, I am going to be waiting for you by the ticket machine.)

13. You are going to take your children with you to France, aren't you? ( or You are taking your children with you to France, aren't you?)

14. This time next week, I will be skiing in Switzerland!

15. Now I will check my answers. ( or Now I am going to check my answers.)

#### 19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

#### 19.11 Answers

1. The train arrives at 12:30. (as a schedule)

2. We are going to eat dinner at a seaside restaurant on Sunday. ( or are eating / will eat)

3. It will be snowing in Brighton throughout the parade. ( or is going to be snowing)

4. By the time we get home, they will have been playing football for 30 minutes.

5. Paul is flying to London on Monday morning. ( or is going to fly)

6. Wait! I will drive you to the station.

7. This summer, I will have been living in Goring for four years.

8. The baby should be due soon, next week Erin will have been pregnant for nine months.

9. Are you still writing your essay? If you finish by 4 p.m., we will go for a walk.

10. I am going to see my mother in April. ( or I am seeing / will see my mother in April.)

11. In three years, I am going to live in a different country. ( or In three years, I will be living in a different country.)

12. When they get married in March, they will have known each other for six years.

13. You're carrying too much. I will open the door for you.

14. Do you think the teacher will have marked our homework by Monday morning?

15. When I see you tomorrow, I will show you my new book.

#### 19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

#### 19.12 Answers

1. At 10.35, the Robinsons ...

a. ... will be parking the car.

b. ... will have walked into town. – TRUE

c. ... will be having tea. – TRUE

d. ... are seeing the cathedral.

1. At 12.40, the Robinsons ...

a. ... will be in "The Old Vine". – TRUE

b. ... will have been touring the cathedral for an hour.

c. ... are going to explore the town.

d. ... are going to have finished lunch.

1. At 15.15, the Robinsons ...

a. ... will be heading home.

- b. ... are going to be seeing the old mill. – TRUE
- c. ... will have been exploring Winchester for over three hours. – TRUE
- d. ... will have eaten lunch. – TRUE

1. At 18.00, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... are going to be driving.
- b. ... will arrive home. – TRUE
- c. ... will have eaten dinner.
- d. ... will have travelled for two hours or more. – TRUE

19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

19.13 Answers

1. At 10:00, the guests will start to arrive.
2. Between 10:00 and 10:30, the ushers will be helping people to find seats.
3. When the ceremony begins, the bride will have had about 30 minutes to get ready.
4. By 11:20, the ceremony will have been running for almost an hour.
5. At 11:35, the ceremony will have ended and the couple will be signing their documents.
6. All the guests will move to McGruber House after the photos have been taken.
7. The couple will host welcome drinks in the Library Hall.
8. Everyone will have taken a seat in the Banquet Hall before lunch is served.
9. The jazz band will be playing during lunch.
10. At 15:00, the groom will give his speech. The other speeches will follow.
11. A magician will be performing tricks while the jazz band is playing in the Library Hall.
12. Someone will have cleared the dance floor before the couple's first dance.
13. A taco van will be providing more food later in the evening, in case guests get hungry.
14. When the party finishes, people will have been dancing for hours.
15. The bus will return guests to their hotels at the end of the night.

19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

19.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Are you going to come ( or Are you coming)
2. I'll join
3. we're taking ( or we'll take)
4. I'll check
5. you'll be working
6. It'll only take
7. The bus will have arrived

8. I'm going to use
9. are you going
10. I'm playing
11. You're meeting
12. will I do
13. Aren't you going to see ( or Aren't you seeing)
14. I'll invite
15. She's coming
16. She'll have
17. You'll be enjoying
18. Won't she be
19. she won't have been travelling
20. I'll make
21. I'm going to cook (emphatic)
22. I'll prepare
23. you'll have barely started
24. We'll order
25. The bus leaves
26. I'll look

#### Plans for the Day

Lucy: (1) Are you going to come ( or Are you coming) with me to the lake today?

Charles: I've finished my work, so (2) I'll join you, yes. Shall I drive?

Lucy: No, (3) we're taking ( or we'll take) the bus. The car is making funny noises.

Charles: (4) I'll check it out, maybe I can fix it.

Lucy: Oh, don't – (5) you'll be working on the car for hours!

Charles: (6) It'll only take a few minutes, I'm sure.

Lucy: (7) The bus will have arrived before you finish.

Charles: But (8) I'm going to use the car this evening, too. I'd best get it working.

Lucy: This evening? Where (9) are you going ?

Charles: (10) I'm playing poker at Gilbert's, from 8 o'clock until late.

Lucy: (11) You're meeting your friends? What (12) will I do?

Charles: (13) Aren't you going to see ( or Aren't you seeing) a play this evening?

Lucy: Oh no, that was cancelled weeks ago. Perhaps (14) I'll invite Janet round. (15) She's coming back from Ireland today.

Charles: Great! (16) She'll have lots of stories, I'd like to see her.

Lucy: But (17) you'll be enjoying your game instead.

Charles: Maybe she could come another day. (18) Won't she be tired this evening?

Lucy: Ireland isn't far – (19) she won't have been travelling too long. And (20) I'll make her some dinner.

Charles: A meal, too? No – (21) I'm going to cook this evening, and (22) I'll prepare more for you two.

Lucy: (23) You'll have barely started before you have to go to poker, I'm sure! It's fine. (24) We'll order a takeaway, if we have to. Now, are you coming to the lake? (25) The bus leaves in around ten minutes.

Charles: Okay, okay! (26) I'll look at the car later.

#### 19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

#### 19.15 Answers

The future tenses can be flexible, so the answers below are recommended based on the tense, with explanations. In most cases the will / to be going to / present continuous forms may be interchangeable or may not impact the meaning significantly. There is also some flexibility between the simple and continuous forms shifting focus from the arranged event to the process. This is one reason that the present continuous form is so useful for future meanings, as it describes an arrangement and also a process.

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. finishes (present simple – scheduled)
2. has (present simple – scheduled)
3. is going to (future simple – arrangement)
4. is going to study (future simple – arrangement)
5. will last (future simple or present simple – scheduled)
6. qualifies (present simple – time clause)
7. is going to get (future simple – arrangement)
8. is working (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
9. is going to save (future simple – determined arrangement)
10. is letting (future simple – arrangement)
11. is travelling (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
12. is not working (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
13. will be exploring (future continuous – process)
14. meets (present simple – time clause)
15. will have been travelling (future perfect continuous – duration)
16. will have visited (future perfect – completed event)
17. is continuing (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
18. will come (future simple – arrangement)
19. have seen (future perfect – completed event)
20. will travel (future simple – arrangement)
21. will make (future simple – arrangement)
22. will be swimming (future continuous – process)

23. hiking (future continuous – process)
24. stays (present simple – time clause)
25. is going to read (future simple – arrangement)
26. moves (present simple – time clause)
27. will have completed (future perfect – completed event)
28. meets (present simple – possibility)

#### Summer Plans

Amber (1) finishes school in the middle of July. She (2) has three months of holiday, then she (3) is going to university in the autumn. She (4) is going to study Law in Oxford. The course (5) will last four years, and once she (6) qualifies Amber (7) is going to get a job in London.

Over the summer, Amber (8) is working in the local garden centre. She (9) is going to save money for university, and also to travel. The garden centre (10) is letting her take two weeks off in August. During that break, she (11) is travelling to France with her friends, Holly and Jaime.

All three friends have different plans for the trip. Holly (12) is not working this summer, and (13) will be exploring Europe for two months. When Amber (14) meets her in France, she (15) will have been travelling for three weeks already. She (16) will have visited Germany and Italy, and after France she (17) is continuing to Spain.

Jaime only has one week of holiday, so she (18) will come later, after Amber and Holly (19) have seen Paris. They (20) will travel south together, to stay by a lake. Amber hopes it (21) will make her fit before university, as the girls (22) will be swimming and (23) hiking every day – as long as the weather (24) stays good. She (25) is going to read books to prepare for her course, too. By the time Amber (26) moves to Oxford, she (27) will have completed all the advance reading.

Unless she (28) meets a nice young man to distract her!

#### 19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

#### 19.16 Answers

The future tenses can be flexible, so the answers below are recommended based on the tense, with explanations. In most cases the will / to be going to / present continuous may be interchangeable or may not impact the meaning significantly. One form can be more appropriate than another, however, for example when using to be going to to emphasise determination, or will to show casual plans that we may not be fully certain about. There is also flexibility between the simple and perfect forms, as the perfect tense is rarely absolutely necessary.

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. hits
2. will finish
3. will study
4. are testing
5. are going to finalise
6. will go
7. are going to host
8. will be serving
9. will be wearing
10. will not complete
11. will be making
12. will have been playing
13. is not going to complain

14. are going to release
15. have not been corrected
16. will have invested
17. will give
18. will not have tried
19. are going to make
20. will be
21. will have been working
22. will celebrate
23. will change
24. are going to dress
25. are going to ask
26. will happen
27. will entertain
28. will have fixed

#### An End in Sight

The computer game Badger Spies (1) hits the shelves in three months. Over the next month, the developers (2) will finish building the game so they can test it. Beta players (3) will study the game in detail, trying to spot problems. While they (4) are testing the game, the marketing team (5) are going to finalise an ambitious marketing campaign.

Badger Spies (6) will go on sale in thirteen countries, to start with, including the USA, the UK and Germany. The developers (7) are going to host a big launch party for the many releases, where they (8) will be serving food and drinks inspired by the game. The staff at the party (9) will be wearing costumes from the Badger Spies world.

Not everyone is in a party mood, though. One designer, Rupert, worries they (10) will not complete the game in time. He expects he (11) will be making improvements until the last minute, which means the beta players (12) will have been playing an incomplete version for months before they report. He (13) is not going to complain to the team leader about it, though. They (14) are going to release the game on the set date, even if the mistakes (15) have not been corrected. The company (16) will have invested too much time and money in the marketing to slow down.

Rupert worries about the marketing campaign, too. It (17) will give people the wrong impression of the game, he thinks. The marketing team (18) will not have tried the game, and have not discussed it with the design team. The boss announced, with great determination, that they (19) are going to make it sexy. Rupert does not think Badger Spies (20) will be a sexy game.

Maybe he just feels negative because he is tired. By the time the game is out, Rupert and his team (21) will have been working on the project for almost three years. Whether the game is good or not, he (22) will celebrate finally being able to do something else. But the rest of the team are optimistic. The boss says Badger Spies (23) will change everything – children (24) are going to dress in badger costumes and movie producers (25) are going to ask for the rights to make a film. Rupert does hope all of that (26) will happen. Mostly, though, he hopes the game (27) will entertain people, and that by the release day they (28) will have fixed all the errors.

#### 19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

##### 20.1 Answers

1. Completed action
2. Future action
3. Future action



4. Present rule
5. Present rule
6. Present state
7. Completed action
8. Present rule
9. Future action
10. Completed action
11. Future action
12. Past state
13. Present state
14. Future action
15. Completed action
16. Future state
17. Present rule
18. Future state
19. Completed action

20. Past state

#### 20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

#### 20.2 Answers

1. Future arrangement
2. Temporary / ongoing process
3. Temporary / ongoing process
4. Temporary / ongoing process
5. Process of change
6. Future arrangement
7. Emphatic repeated action
8. Emphatic repeated action
9. Future arrangement
10. Temporary / ongoing process
11. Temporary / ongoing process
12. Temporary / ongoing process
13. Future arrangement
14. Temporary / ongoing process
15. Process of change
16. Process of change

17. Temporary / ongoing process
18. Temporary / ongoing process
19. Future arrangement
20. Temporary / ongoing process

#### 20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

#### 20.3 Answers

1. Past affecting the present
2. Ongoing state / activity
3. Past affecting the present
4. Past state duration
5. Past affecting the present
6. Ongoing state / activity
7. Completed at a past time
8. Completed at a future time
9. Completed at a past time
10. Past affecting the present
11. Duration of ongoing activity
12. Past state duration
13. Completed at a future time
14. Ongoing state / activity
15. Completed at a future time
16. Past state duration
17. Completed at a past time
18. Duration of ongoing activity

#### 20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

#### 20.4 Answers

1. Present process started in the past
2. Duration of present process
3. Completed past process
4. Duration of future process
5. Present process started in the past
6. Duration of future process
7. Duration of present process
8. Completed past process

9. Duration of present process
10. Completed past process
11. Duration of future process
12. Completed past process
13. Duration of future process
14. Present process started in the past
15. Duration of present process
16. Present process started in the past
17. Duration of future process
18. Present process started in the past
19. Duration of present process
20. Completed past process

#### 20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

#### 20.5 Answers

1.

- a. Dave is driving to work, so he cannot answer his phone.
- b. Dave drove to work and has parked under the tree.
- c. Dave was driving to work when he heard the news on the radio.
- d. Dave drives to work most days, but not today.

2.

- a. The museum opened to the public last December.
- b. The museum opens on Tuesdays at 8 a.m.
- c. The museum has opened a new wing where you can see old costumes.
- d. The museum was opening late on Thursdays until funding ran out.

3.

- a. That student has read everything on the reading list already.
- b. The student is reading what looks like a very long book.
- c. The student read ten books last month.
- d. The student had read the book before class started.

4.

- a. Becca wanted to travel but could not afford it.
- b. Becca has wanted to travel since she was very young.
- c. Becca is travelling around Europe right now.
- d. Becca was travelling through Spain when her car broke down.

#### 20.5 Past Present Matching

## 20.6 Answers

1. They paint the pier every year.
2. Norman is cleaning his house this week.
3. I have been listening to classical music since I was a child.
4. The fisherman caught a huge salmon last night.
5. We were discussing philosophy, but it became too confusing.
6. You were whistling a funny tune when you came in, what was it?
7. Look, the gardener has cut the heads off the roses!
8. Mr Willis bought two bags of potatoes but left one in the shop.
9. Were you outside when it rained? You look absolutely soaked.
10. Can you pass me the sugar? I am baking an apple pie.
11. The dogs have been digging holes again; look at that mess.
12. Why is Susan leaving? Stop her – we have dessert!
13. The reporter appeared tired, but kept talking anyway.
14. Someone has stolen my socks. They were here a second ago.
15. When I met the twins, I thought I was seeing double.

## 20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

## 20.7 Answers

1. Can I borrow your pen? I left mine at home.
2. A crowd is protesting in town because the council raised taxes.
3. My sister has invited me to tea, so I am buying flowers for her.
4. Has Bob finished that book he was reading?
5. The children were excited to see Aunt Maggie, as she always gave them chocolate.
6. Vivian always works late, that's why she wasn't home when we called.
7. School tests have been getting harder, so students have started complaining.
8. The door was locked earlier, so I still do not know how the burglar got in.
9. Robert is upset because he was not watching the game when his team scored.
10. We started running in the summer, but we have been going less often as the weather has worsened.
11. Are the potatoes not ready yet? Did you not turn on the oven before we went out? ( or Didn't you turn on the oven before we went out?)
12. Is Sue coming to the cinema? She has not joined us for months.
13. I washed the dishes yesterday. I am not washing them again today.
14. Frank's son wants to drive to Scotland, but he has not passed his driving test yet.
15. Is that woman climbing a tree now? She has been distracting us all morning!

## 20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

## 20.8 Answers

1. We are building a tree house so the children will play outside more often.
2. Daisy is coming home tomorrow, because her flight has been delayed.
3. Howard is waiting for the bus that arrives at eleven.
4. I have a book in my bag, which I will be reading when you arrive.
5. The men have loaded the truck already, so it will definitely get there on time.
6. Will it rain later? I hope not as I have not taken a coat.
7. Are you going to make tea after you wash those mugs? ( or Will you make / Are you making tea after you wash those mugs?)
8. The phone has been ringing all morning, I am going to disconnect it soon!
9. Who will win the race? It looks too close to tell.
10. I am going to the shop later. What do you want me to get?
11. Tyler is learning to ski but he will not be ready in time for the holiday. ( or Tyler is learning to ski but he is not going to be ready in time for the holiday.)
12. He will have been playing that old guitar for a year this October, I think it's time he got a new one.
13. Brittany washes her hair every day – she will not cope well when they go camping. ( or Brittany washes her hair every day – she is not going to cope well when they go camping.)
14. Look, the horses are racing across that field – we will never catch them!
15. The men will be delivering our new fridge in an hour, so I am trying to finish my work quickly.

## 20.8 Present Future Cloze

## 20.9 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. are eating
2. has been praising
3. has been
4. am getting
5. am going to fall asleep ( or will fall asleep)
6. is
7. will revive
8. don't know
9. makes
10. are you worrying
11. states
12. want
13. won't want ( or will not want)
14. is running

15. will have finished
16. will have lifted
17. am feeling
18. always feel
19. eat
20. have not been eating
21. is inspiring
22. has given
23. will teach ( or is going to teach)
24. will try
25. have been talking
26. have been setting up
27. is that man carrying
28. will find out ( or are going to find out)

It's 13.45 and Bilbo and Jam (1) are eating lunch together. Bilbo (2) has been praising the clown convention for twenty minutes already.

"The day (3) has been wonderful so far," he says.

"But I (4) am getting tired," Jam says. "I (5) am going to fall asleep during the afternoon talk."

"Nonsense! There (6) is a break before it. And the workshop after lunch (7) will revive you."

"I (8) don't know about that. Physical comedy (9) makes me very nervous."

"Why (10) are you worrying so much? The information pack (11) states that you can watch if you don't want to join in."

"But I (12) want to join in, right now. I only fear I (13) won't want to when everyone (14) is running around hitting their heads on planks."

"Well, by 2 p.m. we (15) will have finished this hearty meal and perhaps your spirits (16) will have lifted . I (17) am feeling much livelier already, myself."

"You (18) always feel lively, Bilbo. It might be because you (19) eat too much sugar."

"Ha! I (20) have not been eating any sugar for two months, in fact. I am lively because this conference (21) is inspiring me. The workshop on children (22) has given me lots of new ideas, and the talk on clown history (23) will teach us about what it takes to really succeed."

"Okay, okay. I (24) will try to enjoy the afternoon. I think that while we (25) have been talking , they (26) have been setting up the workshop. Why (27) is that man carrying two buckets of water?"

"We (28) will find out soon!"

## 20.9 Present Future Narrative

### 20.10 Answers

1. He was going to eat all the cake, but it was too much. ( or He would have eaten all the cake, but it was too much.)
2. They were going to buy a hot tub until they saw the running costs.
3. Shirley was going to go to university if she got the grades. ( or Shirley would go to university if she got the grades.)
4. She was going to learn to dance before the end of the year. ( or She would learn to dance before the end of the year.)
5. Our neighbours were going to repair the fence. ( or Our neighbours would repair the fence.)

6. I was going to travel to Germany for Oktoberfest. ( or I thought I would travel to Germany for Oktoberfest.)
7. The poster said it would start at 7 p.m. ( or The poster said it was going to start at 7 p.m.)
8. I was going to meet Geoff in the park. ( or I would meet Geoff in the park.)
9. They said it would rain. ( or They said it was going to rain.)
10. Uncle Jim was going to supply beer for the party.
11. Luke said he would not drink my tea.
12. Sam did not think she would pass her exams. ( or Sam thought she was not going to pass her exams.)

#### 20.10 Future in the Past

#### 20.11 Answers

1. A) I wrote B) my boss has asked
2. A) she saw B) Tess has been learning
3. A) it has been getting B) I am starting
4. A) who left B) Brian and Freda are arguing
5. A) it rained B) the bench is
6. A) they found B) our company is moving
7. A) she started B) Jenny drives
8. A) the woodland animals were B) Bernice has barely slept
9. A) my family came B) have lived
10. A) she was having B) the hot water ran out C) has stopped
11. A) we asked B) have they brought
12. A) I didn't see B) what are you drinking
13. A) the driver said B) are we riding C) we must exit
14. A) we studied B) who has completed
15. A) the dog was B) where is

#### 20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

#### 20.12 Answers

1. A) Dad is eating B) we are going
2. A) he is practising B) they will be expecting
3. A) the price seems B) I will buy
4. A) who is preparing B) Tyler is going to get
5. A) she is earning B) she will spend
6. A) I love chocolate B) it will make
7. A) I am making B) will you wear
8. A) are the police investigating B) will the thief escape

9. A) is the table B) not everyone will fit  
10. A) I have not checked in B) Does the flight leave

#### 20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

#### 20.13 Answers

1. A) we are peeling B) they will be ready
2. X – simultaneous
3. A) the girl he met B) Ron is going to introduce
4. A) she failed B) she has been studying C) Mia is taking
5. A) that sign was not B) someone has put
6. A) and B) X – simultaneous (dark clouds suggest / storm is coming) C) will it strike
7. A) she ate B) when Wendy gets here C) we will ask
8. A) he added B) and C) X – simultaneous (The chef admits / he claims) D) he will not do
9. A) they broke B) they have not apologised C) the boys are not playing
10. A) she has been happily married B) Tina is publishing
11. A) What did that man say B) You have been sitting
12. A) Is Dermot ready B) is he going to train
13. A) My uncle gave B) I gave C) Does Cindy have
14. A) Had Pat tried B) he visited C) He orders
15. A) have you seen B) Will you come

#### 20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

#### 20.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been learning
2. has been ( or had been)
3. thought
4. lives
5. is working
6. goes
7. drives
8. teaches
9. said
10. has been listening
11. enjoys
12. watches
13. bought



14. had been playing
15. was enjoying
16. yearned
17. was saving
18. wished
19. was not earning
20. had been collecting
21. had planned ( or had been planning)
22. is doing ( or has been doing)
23. will help ( or are going to help)
24. will not have ( or is not going to have)
25. is going to come ( or will come / will be coming)
26. is going to find ( or will find)
27. will be playing ( or is going to be playing)

#### Emily's Piano

Emily (1) has been learning to play the piano for eight months. It (2) has been ( or had been) a dream of hers for many years, but she never (3) thought it would be possible until last November. She (4) lives with her parents in a small house and, for now, she (5) is working as a waitress before she (6) goes to university. Her father (7) drives buses and her mother (8) teaches in the local school. The family live comfortably, but her father (9) said they had no space or money for a piano.

Still, Emily (10) has been listening to piano concertos since she was a child, and (11) enjoys reading books about musicians and music theory. She (12) watches all the online videos about piano tuition that she can find. When she was little, her parents (13) bought her a miniature keyboard. She (14) had been playing on it every day for years when the keyboard broke. But by then she (15) was enjoying school and parties too much to care.

As Emily got older, she (16) yearned to play music again. While she (17) was saving money to continue her education, she secretly (18) wished for a piano instead. She (19) was not earning enough for both, though. Then, in November, her father revealed that he (20) had been collecting extra money himself. Emily's parents (21) had planned ( or had been planning) to buy her a piano as a gift before university, all along! They even paid for lessons, and now Emily (22) is doing ( or has been doing) so well that they (23) will help ( or are going to help) her to continue once she moves to university. She (24) will not have ( or is not going to have) space at university for a piano, but (25) is going to come ( or will come / will be coming) home every other weekend, and is sure she (26) is going to find ( or will find) a piano somewhere on campus. In fact, Emily is certain she (27) will be playing ( or is going to be playing) piano for many years to come.

#### 20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

#### 20.15 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been watching
2. have been getting
3. has improved
4. have also been changing
5. did not like
6. prefer
7. had been following

8. came
9. would have considered
10. started
11. spread
12. will continue
13. has quickly made ( or is quickly making)
14. likes
15. enjoys
16. have already bought
17. has not read
18. is looking
19. will meet
20. has had
21. will help
22. will give
23. thinks
24. will not turn
25. does not believe
26. are going to invade
27. sounded
28. will be talking

#### Wizards and Dragons

For the past few weeks, Bernice (1) has been watching a new television show about wizards and dragons. Such fantasy shows (2) have been getting more popular in recent years. This is partly because technology (3) has improved enough to make fantasy more realistic. But attitudes to fantasy (4) have also been changing . Bernice (5) did not like fantasy before; she and her friends usually (6) prefer shows about crime and mysteries. They (7) had been following a seaside detective drama for five years, before this fantasy show (8) came along. None of them (9) would have considered fairy tales seriously before.

Then, everyone (10) started talking about this new show. It (11) spread across the internet, and (12) will continue to spread even more when the new series arrives. The popularity of the show (13) has quickly made ( or is quickly making) it cool to like fantasy. Bernice (14) likes that, because she really (15) enjoys the show.

In fact, Bernice and her friends (16) have already bought all the books that accompany the show. She (17) has not read any yet, but (18) is looking forward to them. Their group (19) will meet and discuss the books, once everyone (20) has had a chance to read some. The books (21) will help them understand the wider story of the television show, and (22) will give them an idea of what to expect in future. Bernice (23) thinks that the wizards (24) will not turn evil, and she (25) does not believe the theories that zombies (26) are going to invade the fantasy world. That (27) sounded be silly.

Whatever happens next, Bernice is sure they (28) will be talking about this show for many years to come!

20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

20.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. is being
2. is not moving
3. will return
4. is getting
5. has served
6. is not closing
7. will upgrade
8. does this mean
9. puts
10. are bringing
11. will strengthen
12. will close
13. have given
14. will buzz
15. form
16. are creating
17. listened
18. responded
19. are eagerly awaiting
20. will have closed
21. will sit
22. is working

#### A New Library

The Worthing Library (1) is being relocated later this year. It (2) is not moving far, and it (3) will return soon enough – new and improved. The reason: the existing building (4) is getting renovated. The current library (5) has served the community since 1975, so locals are happy that it (6) it is not closing for good. With the improvements, it (7) will upgrade its status to a “community hub”. What (8) does this mean ?

This concept (9) puts public buildings at the heart of the community; the council (10) are bringing many services together in one place. This (11) will strengthen the community aspect of the library, although buildings offering other services (12) will close .

In remodelling the library, the designers (13) have given consideration to quiet and private spaces, but the “hub” (14) will buzz with other activity. Sarah Blemming, involved in the project, said, “Libraries (15) form the heart of a community. We (16) are creating something that embraces and celebrates that.”

During the public consultation, the council (17) listened to various proposals for how to remodel the library. The public (18) responded very favourably, and now (19) are eagerly awaiting the results. By the time the community hub is complete, the council (20) will have closed the library for six months. But the relocated services (21) will sit just across the road. Meanwhile, the council (22) is working with more partners to identify other locations for community hubs.

20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

20.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been hosting
2. looks
3. bought
4. has been maintaining
5. raised
6. are now raising
7. has spread
8. have settled
9. are living
10. would not come
11. is becoming ( or has been becoming)
12. have learned
13. will not recover
14. will have been flying
15. will they have done
16. did not want
17. has come up with
18. does not work
19. has been studying
20. bought
21. is arranging
22. will drive
23. has gathered
24. will have been travelling
25. will cause
26. does not mind
27. is going to spend

#### Holiday Plans

Gerry Davies (1) has been hosting family Christmas celebrations at his mountain lodge for the past twelve years. The lodge is in the French Alps and (2) looks beautiful surrounded by snow. Gerry (3) bought it in 1973, and (4) has been maintaining it himself, ever since. He (5) raised two children who have married and (6) are now raising his five grandchildren. The extended family (7) has spread out across Europe: Gerry lives in England, but his son's family (8) have settled in Scotland, and his daughter's family (9) are living in Ukraine while she completes a teaching contract.

Gerry was worried that his family (10) would not come to France this Christmas. Last year, his children said that it (11) is becoming less and less desirable to travel in the holiday, as they (12) have learned terrible things about global warming. His daughter says frequent flying damages the planet, and it (13) will not recover . They (14) will have been flying to France every Christmas for thirteen years, next year! How much damage (15)

will they have done by then?

But Gerry (16) did not want to lose these special times with his family, and he (17) has come up with a solution. He (18) does not work anymore, so he has lots of free time. For the past few months, he (19) has been studying all the latest information about the healthiest ways to travel. He (20) bought an electric car last week and for the next Christmas he (21) is arranging for his family to meet him via train at convenient locations. He (22) will drive them the rest of the way to the mountain lodge. By the time everyone (23) has gathered for Christmas, he (24) will have been travelling for two weeks himself, but it (25) will cause minimal harm to the environment. And Gerry (26) does not mind collecting everyone. It means he (27) is going to spend even more time with his family!

20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

20.18 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. gathered
2. had been
3. have been hiding
4. is lying
5. have been practising
6. had not heard
7. was going to reveal
8. wanted
9. did not murder
10. are searching
11. has not made
12. have been feeling
13. have been working
14. swear
15. was working
16. did he have ( or does he have)
17. were going to defend
18. are all conspiring
19. Are you going to explain
20. had avoided
21. will not tolerate
22. am going to leave
23. is not coming
24. instructed
25. Is he related
26. Will you talk
27. did you find

28. were asking ( or asked)

29. did not say

30. were drinking

31. were you discussing

32. had discovered

33. were

34. were going to pour

35. had not seen

36. did not know

37. would inherit

38. pulled out

39. will survive

40. had been waiting

41. had heard

42. am arresting

Murder Mystery

Detective Stevens (1) gathered the manor guests in the games room, along with the butler, the cleaner and the cook. There were eight people left, now that three others (2) had been killed.

"People (3) have been hiding their true identities," Detective Stevens announced.

"Yes!" the butler said. "Dr Julian is lying about being a heart surgeon!"

"How insulting!" said Dr Julian. "I (5) have been practising surgery for ten years!"

"When I phoned the hospital this morning, they (6) had not heard of him."

Dr Julian was trapped. "Very well. But I (7) was going to reveal the truth before leaving, honestly. I am a bank clerk – I only (8) wanted to impress Miss Tatiana! But I (9) did not murder her! And if we (10) are searching for liars, what about the cook? He (11) has not made a good meal all weekend!"

"I (12) have been feeling unwell," the cook said. "But I (13) have been working here since the manor opened, I (14) swear ."

"He (15) was working here when I arrived," the cleaner confirmed. "And what reason (16) did he have to kill Miss Tatiana, Mr Fredericks or the manager, Mr Bollier?"

"Ah ha!" Detective Stevens said. "I thought you (17) were going to defend him. You (18) are all conspiring together. The house staff and ... Colonel Stamp! (19) Are you going to explain , or shall I?"

Colonel Stamp, who (20) had avoided attention until then, looked worried. He said, "I (21) will not tolerate this, no. I (22) am going to leave as soon as my driver arrives."

"But your driver (23) is not coming ," Detective Stevens said. "I (24) instructed him to take the night off. You see, Colonel Stamp is, in fact, Lemuel Bollier!"

"Bollier?" said the final guest, Mrs Smythe. " (25) Is he related to the manager?"

"(26) Will you talk , now, Lemuel? Your secret is out."

"How (27) did you find out?" Colonel Stamp – actually Lemuel Bollier – said.

"Simple," Detective Stevens said. "When we dined on Friday night, you (28) were asking many strange questions about the manor. And you (29) did not say anything about your own history. While we (30) were drinking brandy in the parlour, Miss Tatiana saw you talking with the cook and the butler. What (31) were you discussing, I wonder?"

"I (32) had discovered a draught in my room and wished to be moved!"

"There (33) were no other rooms available, until Mr Fredericks died. Indeed, you requested a change because you (34) were going to pour poison through the floorboards, onto the manager while he slept! Your father, who (35) had not seen you since childhood, and (36) did not know you (37) would inherit his manor. Having promised to reward all the house staff!"

Lemuel Bollier (38) pulled out a gun. "Very well, it is all true. But no one (39) will survive to tell the story."

The doors burst open. Police officers (40) had been waiting in the hall, and (41) had heard everything. The criminals were trapped. Detective Stevens said, "Lemuel Bollier, I (42) am arresting you for murder."

## 20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

### 21.1 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Past simple (regular)
3. Past simple (irregular)
4. Bare infinitive
5. Past simple (regular)
6. Bare infinitive
7. Bare infinitive
8. Past simple (regular)
9. Past simple (irregular)
10. Bare infinitive
11. Bare infinitive
12. Past simple (regular)

### 21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

### 21.2 Answers

1. Present simple
2. Bare infinitive
3. Bare infinitive
4. Present simple
5. Present simple
6. Bare infinitive
7. Bare infinitive
8. Present simple
9. Bare infinitive
10. Bare infinitive (imperative)

11. Present simple
12. Bare infinitive (imperative)

#### 21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

#### 21.3 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Bare infinitive
3. Present simple
4. Past simple (regular)
5. Bare infinitive
6. Past simple (irregular)
7. Past simple (irregular)
8. Present simple
9. Bare infinitive
10. Bare infinitive
11. Present simple
12. Past simple (irregular)

#### 21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

#### 22.1 Answers

1. We have been living here for twenty years. (Past participle)
2. What kind of nuts did you use in this meal? (Bare infinitive)
3. I will be waiting for your return. (Bare infinitive)
4. They have had enough of the loud music now. (Present auxiliary)
5. The internet has had a huge impact on the way we interact. (Past participle)
6. Will you direct me to the nearest post office? (Bare infinitive)
7. I have beaten the eggs; now to complete the cake. (Past participle)
8. The criminal had broken the window twice before they found him. (Past participle – passive tense)
9. We will have visited Grandma before Christmas Day. (Past participle)
10. You must mend the garden shed before it collapses. (Bare infinitive)
11. When they have mastered the art of dancing, they will try fencing. (Past participle)
12. Julio ran through the bath-house naked, because Frank had stolen his robe. (Past participle)

#### 22.1 Past Participles

#### 22.2 Answers

1. He had peeled all the potatoes, ready for dinner. (Past participle)
2. We were singing too loudly, that's why they complained. (Present participle)
3. Have they been watching us for long? (Present participle)



4. Give me a hand with this log – I can't move it myself. (Bare infinitive)
5. The plumber had worked on the sink all morning. (Past participle)
6. I have been studying for hours; I need a break. (Present participle)
7. She will slip on the ice, in those silly shoes. (Bare infinitive)
8. Hans was reading when his chair collapsed. (Present participle)
9. Are you seriously wearing that jacket again? (Present participle)
10. Smoking is not allowed here. (Present participle – used as a noun)
11. Will the game have finished by the time we get there? (Past participle)
12. I will be there in a minute, I am just cleaning this cup! (Present participle)

## 22.2 Present Participles

### 23.1 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Past participle
3. Bare infinitive
4. Bare infinitive
5. Present participle
6. Past participle
7. Bare infinitive
8. Bare infinitive
9. Past participle
10. Bare infinitive
11. Present participle
12. Past participle
13. Past participle
14. Bare infinitive
15. Bare infinitive
16. Past participle
17. Present participle
18. Bare infinitive
19. Bare infinitive
20. Present participle

### 23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

#### 23.2 Answers

1. When will you be catching the train? (Present participle)

2. Jamie can't dance , she's too old! (Bare infinitive)
3. I have never made so many sandwiches in all my life. (Past participle)
4. What did he ask you about? (Bare infinitive)
5. Is this group of gymnasts performing all month? (Present participle)
6. Why Kylie had taken the biscuits, no one knew. (Past participle)
7. The canaries will have escaped , the cage door was left open! (Past participle)
8. You will have been learning all this for nothing, if you don't apply it later. (Present participle)
9. I cannot bear to think about the war. (Bare infinitive)
10. Can you whistle ? (Bare infinitive)
11. It was snowing when we left the house, but it has stopped now. (Present participle, past participle)
12. Why did that shop assistant give you so much trouble? (Bare infinitive)
13. Have you been looking for these hairclips? (Present participle)
14. She couldn't afford any more pork scratchings. (Bare infinitive)
15. Has your business grown much since we last met? (Past participle)
16. That man has played his last game of chess, he's banned now. (Past participle)
17. It was tragic that the game was cancelled when they were winning . (Present participle)
18. Do you think you will pass all of your modules at university? (Bare infinitive)
19. We are completing our assignments next week. (Present participle)
20. Have I written enough about the seaside? (Past participle)

### 23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

#### 23.3 Answers

1. I don't want any more muesli.
2. He is flying to Norway.
3. Jane will be very happy with the results.
4. The students have handed in their final project.
5. What do the parrots look like?
6. Why have you broken my favourite mug?
7. Where are you going to put your bag?
8. It must have been difficult to learn Chinese.
9. Have you seen this new chair I bought?
10. She was thinking of phoning her mum.

### 23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

Full Exercise List

Tense Forms

Forming the Past

## 1. Past Simple

### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

### 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

### 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

## 1. Past Continuous

### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

### 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

### 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

### 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

## 1. Past Perfect

### 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

### 3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

### 3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

### 3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

## 1. Past Perfect Continuous

### 4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

### 4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

### 4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

### 4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

### 4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

## Forming the Present

## 1. Present Simple

### 5.1 Present Simple Statements

### 5.2 Present Simple Questions 1

### 5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

### 5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

### 5.5 Mixed Present Simple

## 1. Present Continuous

### 6.1 Present Continuous Statements

### 6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

1. Present Perfect

7.1 Present Perfect Statements

7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

1. Present Perfect Continuous

8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous

Forming the Future

1. Future Simple

9.1 Future Simple Statements

9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

9.5 Mixed Future Simple

1. Future Continuous

10.1 Future Continuous Statements

10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

1. Future Perfect

11.1 Future Perfect Statements

11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

1. Future Perfect Continuous

12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

Forming Mixed Tenses

1. Mixed Simple Tenses

13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

13.2 Simple Questions

13.3 Simple Negative Questions

13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

1. Mixed Continuous Tenses

14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

14.2 Continuous Questions

14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

14.4 Continuous Contractions

14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

1. Mixed Perfect Tenses

15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

15.2 Perfect Questions 1

15.3 Perfect Questions 2

15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

15.5 Perfect Contractions

15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

1. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

## 16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

### Tenses in Use

#### 1. The Past in Use

##### 17.1 Complete or Process 1

##### 17.2 Complete or Process 2

##### 17.3 Complete or Process 3

##### 17.4 Past States 1

##### 17.5 Past States 2

##### 17.6 Past Sequences 1

##### 17.7 Past Sequences 2

##### 17.8 Processes in the Past

##### 17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

##### 17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

##### 17.11 Mixed Past Perfect in Use

##### 17.12 Mixed Past Matching

##### 17.13 Past Time Sequences

##### 17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

##### 17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses

##### 17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

##### 17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

#### 1. The Present in Use

##### 18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

##### 18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

##### 18.3 Present States

##### 18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

##### 18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

##### 18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

##### 18.7 Past Present Emphasis

##### 18.8 Duration in the Present 1

##### 18.9 Duration in the Present 2

##### 18.10 Duration in the Present 3

##### 18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

##### 18.12 Mixed Present Matching

##### 18.13 Present Time Sequences

18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

1. The Future in Use

19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

19.3 Mixed Future Simple

19.4 Future Processes

19.5 Future Sequences

19.6 Duration in the Future 1

19.7 Duration in the Future 2

19.8 Mixed Future Matching

19.9 Future Time Sequences

19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

1. Mixed Tenses in Use

20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

20.5 Past Present Matching

20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

20.8 Present Future Cloze

20.9 Present Future Narrative

20.10 Future in the Past

20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Infinitives and Participles

1. Identifying Bare Infinitives

21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

1. Participles

22.1 Past Participles

22.2 Present Participles

1. Mixed Verb Types

23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

A Note from the Author

Also by Phil Williams

Answers

1.1 Answers

1.2 Answers

1.3 Answers

1.4 Answers

1.5 Answers

2.1 Answers

2.2 Answers

2.3 Answers

2.4 Answers

2.5 Answers

3.1 Answers

3.2 Answers

3.3 Answers

3.4 Answers



3.5 Answers

4.1 Answers

4.2 Answers

4.3 Answers

4.4 Answers

4.5 Answers

5.1 Answers

5.2 Answers

5.3 Answers

5.4 Answers

5.5 Answers

6.1 Answers

6.2 Answers

6.3 Answers

6.4 Answers

6.5 Answers

7.1 Answers

7.2 Answers

7.3 Answers

7.4 Answers

7.5 Answers

8.1 Answers

8.2 Answers

8.3 Answers

8.4 Answers

8.5 Answers

9.1 Answers

9.2 Answers

9.3 Answers

9.4 Answers

9.5 Answers

10.1 Answers

10.2 Answers

10.3 Answers

10.4 Answers

10.5 Answers

11.1 Answers

11.2 Answers

11.3 Answers

11.4 Answers

11.5 Answers

12.1 Answers

12.2 Answers

12.3 Answers

12.4 Answers

12.5 Answers

13.1 Answers

13.2 Answers

13.3 Answers

13.4 Answers

13.5 Answers

14.1 Answers

14.2 Answers

14.3 Answers

14.4 Answers

14.5 Answers

14.6 Answers

15.1 Answers

15.2 Answers

15.3 Answers

15.4 Answers

15.5 Answers

15.6 Answers

15.7 Answers

16.1 Answers

16.2 Answers

16.3 Answers

16.4 Answers

16.5 Answers

16.6 Answers

16.7 Answers

17.1 Answers

17.2 Answers

17.3 Answers

17.4 Answers

17.5 Answers

17.6 Answers

17.7 Answers

17.8 Answers

17.9 Answers

17.10 Answers

17.11 Answers

17.12 Answers

17.13 Answers

17.14 Answers

17.15 Answers

17.16 Answers

17.17 Answers

18.1 Answers

18.2 Answers

18.3 Answers

18.4 Answers

18.5 Answers

18.6 Answers

18.7 Answers

18.8 Answers

18.9 Answers

18.10 Answers

18.11 Answers

18.12 Answers

18.13 Answers

18.14 Answers

18.15 Answers

18.16 Answers

18.17 Answers

19.1 Answers

19.2 Answers

19.3 Answers

19.4 Answers

19.5 Answers

19.6 Answers

19.7 Answers

19.8 Answers

19.9 Answers

19.10 Answers

19.11 Answers

19.12 Answers

19.13 Answers

19.14 Answers

19.15 Answers

19.16 Answers

20.1 Answers

20.2 Answers

20.3 Answers

20.4 Answers

20.5 Answers

20.6 Answers

20.7 Answers

20.8 Answers

20.9 Answers

20.10 Answers

20.11 Answers

20.12 Answers

20.13 Answers

20.14 Answers

20.15 Answers

20.16 Answers

20.17 Answers

20.18 Answers

21.1 Answers

21.2 Answers

21.3 Answers

22.1 Answers

22.2 Answers

23.1 Answers

23.2 Answers

23.3 Answers

Copyright

Copyright © 2019 by Phil Williams

The moral right of Phil Williams to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All the characters in this book are fictitious, and any resemblance to actual persons living or dead is purely coincidental.

All rights reserved.

This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

ISBN: 978-1-913468-07-1

Cover design by Phil Williams

Cover images © Bob Wright, © schiva (Depositphotos)

The English Tenses

Exercise Book

---

Phil Williams

Table of Contents

Introduction

How to Use This Book

Tense Forms

Forming the Past

1. Past Simple
2. Past Continuous
3. Past Perfect
4. Past Perfect Continuous

Forming the Present

1. Present Simple

2. Present Continuous
3. Present Perfect
4. Present Perfect Continuous

#### Forming the Future

1. Future Simple
2. Future Continuous
3. Future Perfect
4. Future Perfect Continuous

#### Forming Mixed Tenses

1. Mixed Simple Tenses
2. Mixed Continuous Tenses
3. Mixed Perfect Tenses
4. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

#### Tenses in Use

1. The Past in Use
2. The Present in Use
3. The Future in Use
4. Mixed Tenses in Use

#### Infinitives and Participles

1. Identifying Bare Infinitives
2. Participles
3. Mixed Verb Types

#### A Note from the Author

Also by Phil Williams

Answers

Full Exercise List

Copyright

Introduction

Welcome to The English Tenses Exercise Book – a collection of 161 exercises designed to drill the 12 key tenses of English: the past , present and future in their simple , continuous , perfect and perfect continuous forms. This book can be used for general, independent practice, though the exercises roughly match the guidelines laid out in The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide .

This book is designed to make you fully comfortable with forming and using the tenses, both on their own and in conjunction with other tenses. Many other excellent grammar guides and exercise books exist, but it is rare that they offer more than one or two exercises on a particular topic. This book does the opposite: the topic is narrow, but the quantity of exercises and number of examples is vast. Some examples repeat similar ideas or themes – this is to reinforce lessons, demonstrate different usage and (in some cases) provide extra continuity or engagement.

As a writer and teacher for over fifteen years, I have devised these exercises and examples with the aim of presenting English in natural use, considering various styles and subjects. You will find everyday sentences and more unusual examples; short stories and non-fiction passages;

academic English and business English; and more. Regardless of your level, my hope is that the examples will help familiarise you with the tenses across a broad range of usage. The vocabulary I have chosen is generally at an intermediate level, occasionally using more basic or advanced language, and the majority of verbs come from lists of those most commonly used. The prose exercises particularly aim to present more varied and fluent use of English, and for wider exposure, some examples have been included to demonstrate how a particular tense could be used. Please do complete the book with an accompanying dictionary if necessary and feel free to get in touch if anything is unclear.

And if you find some examples lean towards life in an English seaside town, that reflects my own setting, and the setting for my website, English Lessons Brighton .

## How to Use This Book

The exercises in this book primarily concern verb forms, asking you to choose and correctly form the appropriate tense for each sentence. Sentences are either presented in isolated lists or in prose format. Instructions are given for each exercise as to the tense or tenses being tested, usually indicated in bold .

These exercises usually provide a space for you to fill in the correct tense. The information in brackets lets you know which verb to use and whether any additional words are necessary, such as a subject or adverbs. The spaces are standard sizes depending on the exercise and do not specifically indicate how long the answer should be.

The book is organised into two main sections, Tense Forms and Tenses in Use . These are divided into groups covering the past , present and future tenses, and each also contains mixed tense exercises. Within each grouping, you will find more basic list exercises and more complex prose exercises for comparative use. You may complete the exercises in any order you choose, but be aware that the book becomes more complex as it builds to more comparative use at the end of each section, particularly with the mixed tenses exercises. To present more natural use, there are occasional passive or modal examples to demonstrate wider contexts of the tenses. An additional section, Infinitives and Participles , is included at the back to specifically drill understanding of the verb forms that help complete the more complicated tenses.

You can complete these exercises mentally, but I recommend writing your answers on a piece of paper or in a notebook so that you can check them against the answers. The links at the bottom of each exercise will take you directly to the answers for that exercise, where you will also find links to go back to the exercise. A full list of exercises can be found at the back, if you wish to quickly find a particular topic.

The answers usually demonstrate complete correct sentences. Corrected sentences are shown in italics , occasional highlighted form changes are shown in bold and additional information is given in (brackets).

I hope you will enjoy these exercises and find them educational – now let's get started!

## Tense Forms

The following section drills forming the tenses, to get you used to quickly identifying and using different verb forms in the past , present and future . Each section includes exercises for the simple , continuous , perfect and perfect continuous , covering affirmative and negative statements, questions with and without question words, negative questions and mixed tenses.

The focus here is always on the required tense form. This means that the example sentences in this section are not necessarily the only way to express these points, but are used for illustrative purposes. This is particularly true of the perfect and perfect continuous forms, which can be relatively rare in practice, and usually require specific contexts to make complete sense. The mixed tenses passages are designed to include as many instances of these forms as possible, though in everyday use such passages may be expressed in simpler ways.

### Forming the Past

#### 1. Past Simple

##### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the past simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

● Q: I / to know / not / where he lived

● A: I did not know where he lived.

1. the postman / to be / late again

2. Felicity / to grow / tomatoes in her garden

3. he / to understand / not / the project

4. we / to fail / to finish in time
5. they / to give / not / us the bag of flour
6. Liam / to ask / not / the question politely
7. the hummingbirds / to build / a nest in our attic
8. the piano / to look / too old to use
9. she / to say / we / to be / wrong
10. I / to pick / not / the right flowers
11. our cake / to taste / not / right
12. we / to drive / all the way to Scotland
13. you / to bring / not / the green umbrella
14. they / to arrest / the wrong man
15. the lady of the manor / to write / not / a convincing memoir

#### 1.1 Answers

#### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

Convert the following past simple statements into past simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

- Q: We went to Bali on our honeymoon.
  - A: Did you go to Bali on your honeymoon?
1. Our dogs were very messy.
  2. The chef cooked something spectacular.
  3. I read all three of my textbooks this weekend.
  4. She asked him to go on a date.
  5. You knew about the rotten fruit!
  6. The priests demanded that the film be banned.
  7. I bought a new bicycle.
  8. He hoovered the house because of the dust.
  9. The children played on the swings.
  10. She was very disappointed with the presentation.
  11. We misjudged the time it would take to get to the party.
  12. I lost my keys again.
  13. The story got a lot more interesting after the main character died.
  14. They sent a replacement cabinet after ours broke.
  15. The council banned parking on my road.



16. She ran a marathon last spring.
17. It was the hottest day of the year.
18. Ulric visited the doctor for the first time.
19. My computer stopped working.
20. They prepared for the storm months in advance.

## 1.2 Answers

## 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

Convert the following past simple statements into past simple questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be.

For example:

- Q: He purchased two bottles of wine. (what)
  - A: What did he purchase?
1. I helped the old man in the market. (where)
  2. Julian sang a beautiful ballad. (what)
  3. We searched for the doctor in the jungle. (where)
  4. She was very angry because of the train delays. (why)
  5. After the competition, everyone went for ice cream. (when)
  6. They stole the gold necklaces, but not the silver ones. (which)
  7. I gave the homeless man £20. (how much)
  8. The critic hated the director's latest film. (what)
  9. He had a disagreement with the man who sold him his car. (who)
  10. The great oak tree was cut down yesterday. (what)
  11. Tyler wanted to free the guinea pigs. (what)
  12. The family took the bottles to the new recycling centre. (where)
  13. The girl believed in magic, but not dwarves. (what)
  14. We tied the knots by following the instructions on the internet. (how / to tie)
  15. Someone ate her last cupcake! (who)

## 1.3 Answers

## 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the past simple negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. Remember that past simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ his trumpet? (Timmy / to play)
  - A: Why did Timmy not play his trumpet?
1. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (he / to tell)

2. \_\_\_\_\_ like an easy task? (it / to seem)
3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the students? (Mindy / to take)
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ locked? (the door / to be)
5. How \_\_\_\_\_ there in time? (we / to get)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ any water on the hike? (they / to bring)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ supposed to be in Italy this week? (she / to be)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ for very long? (the spiders / to live)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ sad about the game being cancelled? (you / to be)
10. When \_\_\_\_\_ a manager? (the football team / to have)

#### 1.4 Answers

#### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

Complete the following sentences in the appropriate past simple affirmative, negative or question form , without contractions, using the information provided in brackets.

For example:

• Q: \_\_\_\_\_ happy with the result? (she / to be / not)

• A: Was she not happy with the result?

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ very good at sports. (to be / not)
2. The Morrisons \_\_\_\_\_ too many chickens. (to own)
3. Herman \_\_\_\_\_ with his neighbours. (to get on / not)
4. Where \_\_\_\_\_ my car? (I / to park)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ that new ballet? (you / to see)
6. The builders \_\_\_\_\_ a large breakfast. (to eat)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a good swimmer? (she / to be / not)
8. The lady \_\_\_\_\_ to buy the dress. (to decide / not)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio? (they / to listen / not)
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ all the way around the park. (to run)

#### 1.5 Answers

##### 1. Past Continuous

#### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the past continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: the man / to run / for his train

• A: The man was running for his train.

1. the giraffe / to lie down
2. they / to draw / not / pictures of fruit

3. it / to get / dark outside
4. you / to tell / me about your new phone
5. they / to fly / not / over Mongolia
6. I / to clean / the pans when the police arrived
7. the animals / to dig / a hole
8. Kyle / to read / not / novels this summer
9. we / to paint / the house all day
10. no one / to help / with the display
11. the computer / to load / not / properly
12. you / to sleep / not / in the right room
13. she / to brush / her teeth
14. I / to test / the light switch
15. the rodents / to plan / something

## 2.1 Answers

## 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

Form complete past continuous yes or no questions , without question words, using the information provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: he / hang / washing / outside
  - A: Was he hanging his washing outside?
1. they / to build / a new school
  2. Lily / to hide / something
  3. the days / to get / longer
  4. you / to ask / about my van
  5. the light / to work / when you got home
  6. his father / to try / to play the piano
  7. the students / to travel / through Bolivia
  8. everyone / to wait / for me
  9. I / to say / the right word
  10. the sailors / to load / the correct boat
  11. the bus / to stop / everywhere
  12. we / to sing / in tune
  13. Rupert and Jim / to fight / again
  14. the sun / to shine / on your wedding day
  15. the trains / to arrive / on time last weekend

## 2.2 Answers

### 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following past continuous statements into past continuous questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They were cycling in Sweden. (where)
  - A: Where were they cycling?
1. The students were doing very well. (how)
  2. Tim was studying French. (what)
  3. You were flying to Ireland. (where)
  4. The cat was running away. (why)
  5. They were singing the national anthem. (what)
  6. I was living in America for three years. (how long)
  7. Someone was leaving dirty dishes out. (who)
  8. Her husband was watching a detective show on TV. (what)
  9. The tour guide was taking them to the cathedral. (where)
  10. Hailey was smiling because she had flowers. (why)
  11. The Japanese investors were meeting with someone. (who)
  12. The restaurant was getting crowded because it was so busy. (why)
  13. The new shoes were arriving at noon. (when)
  14. Alison was preparing a banner for the carnival. (what)
  15. We were picking up bad habits from our friends. (what)

## 2.3 Answers

### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio? (you / to listen)
  - A: Why were you not listening to the radio?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ the party? (you / to enjoy)
  2. What \_\_\_\_\_ them? (the man / to show)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ the right pen? (I / to hold)
  4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ warmer? (the weather / to get)
  5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ during the cruise? (the boat / to stop)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ the correct ingredients? (you / to use)
  7. When \_\_\_\_\_ ? (the bell / to ring)

8. \_\_\_\_\_ more sandwiches? (they / to bring)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ at the back of the class? (he / to sit)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher? (the children / to follow)

## 2.4 Answers

## 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate past continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

The Ice Cream Van

Simon: Do you know what I just saw? An ice cream van (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) down our road.

Carl: Really? (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to sell) ice cream? It's November!

Simon: Well, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to play) music, so I think they wanted customers.

Carl: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the van / to go) to the beach?

Simon: It couldn't have been; (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the driver / to head / not) in the right direction.

Carl: Then where (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to plan) to park?

Simon: Hmm. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (something / happen / not) in the town centre earlier today?

Carl: Of course! (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / open) a new sports shop this morning!

Simon: Oh! I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) about going to that, but I decided not to.

Carl: But (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to expect / not) ice cream! Let's go!

## 2.5 Answers

### 1. Past Perfect

## 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the past perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: it / to be / twenty long years since he was there

• A: It had been twenty long years since he was there.

1. they / to start / the party early
2. it / to snow / overnight
3. the delivery truck / to park / outside
4. I / to hear / not / about the Incas before
5. you / to warn / me not to go there, but I did
6. she / to arrive / too late for the exam
7. Simone realised / she / to listen / not / to this tune yet
8. before finding the lecture hall, we / to go / to Room 2b
9. we / to agree / not / on a price for the painting by noon
10. he / to read / the book thirteen times

11. the picnic was ruined; the rats / to eat / everything
12. the shop / to close down / for good
13. I / to ask / not / for a map, because I knew the way
14. she / to forget / where the cups were kept
15. Ryan went to see a film, but they / to sell / all the tickets

### 3.1 Answers

### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following past perfect statements into past perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Use the information in brackets when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Maria had studied all night to pass the test.
  - A: Had Maria studied all night to pass the test?
1. They had been to California before.
  2. I had already asked you about your toe.
  3. He hadn't worn his coat to the park.
  4. The horse had eaten already.
  5. Someone had broken the window.
  6. The mice had infested the house.
  7. I had never been able to juggle.
  8. Roger had repaired the bicycle.
  9. Jonas had taken the wrong bag.
  10. The cleaners hadn't emptied the bins.

### 3.2 Answers

### 3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following past perfect statements into past perfect questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They had driven to the coast for the weekend. (where)
  - A: Where had they driven to for the weekend?
1. Lisa had added something to the soup. (what)
  2. The cows had escaped from the field. (how)
  3. We had discussed many topics in the previous two lessons. (what)
  4. I had put my glasses on the table. (where)
  5. The clock had stopped at 1 p.m. (when)
  6. She had changed her clothes during the break. (when)

7. The President had appointed a new secretary. (who)
8. Harry had heard something behind the shed. (what)
9. All the eggs had gone. (where)
10. We had stayed in an excellent hotel last time. (where)

### 3.3 Answers

### 3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past perfect negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ your homework? (you / to finish)

• A: Why had you not finished your homework?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ her about the invitation? (he / to tell)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ in Boston? (where / Charlene / to be)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ together? (the team / to work)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the cooker before going out? (I / to turn off)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the radiator to the right temperature? (the plumber / to set)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ in his report? (what / the night manager / to include)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 a.m.? (why / the alarm / to go off)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ to the soup? (what / the chef / to add)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the situation clearly? (I / to explain)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the car's engine before travelling? (why / they / to check)

### 3.4 Answers

### 3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate past perfect affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### A Fresh Cake

Stephen was looking forward to a freshly baked cake. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to leave) it baking for 45 minutes now. This was the final step in a process (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (Stephen / start) four hours earlier, after (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to suggest) that he try a new recipe (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to find). (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / not / to plan) to spend the day baking, but (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to buy) all the ingredients already, and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / not / to make) homemade cake for a long time, so he agreed to give it a go.

Once he started, he realised it was actually good fun. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to measure) everything carefully before combining the ingredients, and then made a terrible mess mixing the batter. It was too sticky. His wife asked: (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / he / not / to use) more flour? (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / read) the recipe correctly?

Eventually, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (Stephen / to wrestle) the mixture under control, and he cleaned the whole kitchen while they waited for it to rise. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to turn out) to be quite simple really. When he put the mix in the oven, he asked himself, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / he / not / to try) this sooner?

After half an hour, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (the kitchen / to start) to smell amazing.

Finally, 45 minutes were almost over, and Stephen's mouth was watering. He opened the oven to find (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (the cake / to rise) beautifully, and (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to develop) a firm, golden top. They would definitely enjoy this, and Stephen admitted, (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to be) right. It was a good idea.

### 3.5 Answers

1. Past Perfect Continuous

#### 4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the past perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: the circus / to come / to town for twenty years
  - A: The circus had been coming to town for twenty years.
1. they / to travel / all night
  2. I / to listen / not / during the lecture
  3. she / dance / with Raul
  4. the bird / to sing / for hours
  5. it / to snow / not / before they left the hotel
  6. the traffic lights / to work / not / that morning
  7. Sidney / to learn / to play the bassoon
  8. strange symbols / to appear / all over town
  9. the price of cauliflower / to rise / throughout January
  10. Tina / to wait / for the right man
  11. we / to go / to the same holiday villa for years
  12. wild dogs / to steal / from the pantry
  13. the children / to practise / not / their handwriting
  14. they / to camp / not / in Wales before
  15. I / to hope / for a good result

### 4.1 Answers

#### 4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following past statements into past perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Use the information in brackets when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: It had been raining during the night.
  - A: Had it been raining during the night?
1. We had been watching Channel 4.
  2. The garden seemed dry. (Jim / to water)
  3. There was cat hair in the bedroom. (the cat / to sleep)
  4. They had been training together for a long time.
  5. The carpenter had new chairs in the window. (to make)
  6. I had been snoring in my sleep.



7. She knew what they said in their phone call. (to listen)
8. The door had been closing on its own.
9. She had received help with her studies. (Winston / to help)
10. The bracelet had been sitting on the table all along.

#### 4.2 Answers

#### 4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following past statements into past perfect continuous questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: They had been searching for cheap train tickets for hours. (how long)

• A: How long had they been searching for cheap train tickets (for)?

1. She had been hiding the cake. (where)
2. We had been listening to classical music in the car. (what)
3. The dog had been barking at squirrels. (what)
4. Clive had been planning to go on holiday that April. (when)
5. The man had been playing the trumpet all morning. (how long)
6. Mum had been preparing burritos for dinner. (what)
7. I had been sitting on a wet patch of grass. (where)
8. I had been working at the weekend because I wouldn't say "no". (why)
9. They had been thinking about banning whistles. (what)
10. Fiona had been cooking bagels in the oven before she bought the toaster. (how)

#### 4.3 Answers

#### 4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in past perfect continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: What \_\_\_\_\_ at school? (they / to learn)

• A: What had they not been learning at school?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ in the right space? (we / to park)
2. Where \_\_\_\_\_ a mess? (the boys / to make)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to the teacher? (she / to listen)
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_? (the water / to boil)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ fast enough? (I / to walk)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ all day? (it / to rain)
7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the books I gave her? (Lily / to read)

8. When \_\_\_\_\_ the truth? (the politician / to tell)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning? (they / to run)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the roses? (the gardener / to trim)

#### 4.4 Answers

#### 4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate past perfect continuous affirmative, negative or question form, without contractions, using the information in brackets.

##### A Ruined Allotment

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to rain) all night, we could tell. The allotment was flooded. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to warn / not) everyone about this for months? If they had listened, we could have built a shelter. But (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do) other things, like swimming in the lake. Besides, Barry kept arguing, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the potatoes / to grow / not) anyway. Why bother?

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the weather / to get) more unpredictable, that was the main problem. Some months we had no rain at all. As much as two months ago, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (people / to say) we might have a completely dry season. But I remembered the storms, three years ago, when I lost everything. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / not / to listen) when the forecasts offered warnings that time. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / I / not / to pay) more attention during that period? Back when it would have helped ... The same reason no one listened to me this time. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / to go) so well!

#### 4.5 Answers

##### Forming the Present

#### 1. Present Simple

##### 5.1 Present Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the present simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: I / to eat / not / eggs every day

• A: I do not eat eggs every day.

1. Billy / to like / cats
2. trains in Japan / always / to run / on time
3. Tina / to drink / not / banana milkshakes
4. the shopping centre / to open / every day at 6 a.m.
5. all cookies / to taste / amazing
6. I / to find / biology / interesting
7. Fred and Shirley / to eat / not / after midnight
8. unhappy employees / to be / not / good for business
9. the last house on my street / to look / haunted
10. my car / to have / climate control / but / it / to work / not
11. flocks of birds / to fly / in interesting formations
12. peanut butter and cheese / to go / not / well together
13. reading books definitely / to make / you smarter

14. we / to travel / not / to the lakes more than twice a year

15. Grandma's stuffed animal collection / to scare / everyone who / to come / to visit

### 5.1 Answers

### 5.2 Present Simple Questions 1

Convert the following present simple statements into present simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

• Q: I own a red bicycle.

• A: Do you own a red bicycle?

1. I am hungry.
2. Lily listens to heavy metal music.
3. All parrots have colourful feathers.
4. The carnival is safe for children.
5. Uncle Jeff knows the way to the beach.
6. You speak a foreign language.
7. I want another cup of tea.
8. You are sure this milk is non-dairy.
9. Howard always talks during class.
10. Your parents live near your house.
11. Exercise is important to you.
12. The campers sleep in tents.
13. My cat seems fat because he is so fluffy.
14. Good grades matter if I want to be an artist.
15. The path under the bridge is safe at night.
16. Abigail works in the library.
17. I need to keep taking these pills.
18. This cauliflower smells strange.
19. Glass bottles are good for storing hot liquids.
20. That man is a friend of yours.

### 5.2 Answers

### 5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

Convert the following present simple statements into present simple questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

• Q: She lives in Spain now. (where)

• A: Where does she live now?

1. There is something in your backpack. (what)
2. The sun rises at 6 a.m. (when)
3. You boil perfect eggs. (how)
4. Brianne buys her hats in the market. (where)
5. The boys play in the park every Tuesday. (where)
6. We always visit the same café. (why)
7. Michael always knows the answers to these questions. (how)
8. You want to go to the cinema. (when)
9. Your father works near here. (where)
10. The running club meets on Saturday mornings. (when)
11. Those teachers wear such smart clothes. (why)
12. I have to do something to open this tin of beans. (what)
13. The gardeners cut the grass twice a week. (how often)
14. The cutlery goes in the middle drawer. (which)
15. The children get home from school at 4 p.m. (when)

### 5.3 Answers

### 5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in present simple negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. Remember that present simple questions require the auxiliary to do or to be .

For example:

• Q: What food \_\_\_\_\_? (you / to eat)

• A: What food do you not eat?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ milk? (that chocolate / to contain)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the owner of this car? (he)
3. Which \_\_\_\_\_ a swimming pool? (hotel / to have)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ expected before 7 p.m.? (the guests)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a good time to visit? (when)
6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ more tennis? (Ben / to play)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the colour of their bedroom? (they / to like)
8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the boss already? (she)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ right in this picture? (what / to look)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ if we go to the beach this weekend? (it / to matter)

### 5.4 Answers

### 5.5 Mixed Present Simple

Complete the following text with the appropriate present simple affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

### Bonfire Night in Lewes

Every year on November 5th, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Lewes / to host) one of the largest bonfire nights in the UK. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (some people / to call) Lewes the "Bonfire Capital of the World". (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to be) so special about these evenings?

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the festivities / to mark) Guy Fawkes Night by bringing together bonfire societies from across Sussex. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (seven local societies / run) six separate parades and firework displays, but (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be / not) alone. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (the town / to draw in) as many as 30 other societies from across Sussex. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the evening / to be / not) a small event: up to 5,000 people take part in the celebrations, and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the town / to welcome) tens of thousands of spectators; as many as 80,000 one year!

On these evenings, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (the trains / take) a long time to queue for, and the locals might complain: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / these people / to go / not) somewhere else?! With a population of only 17,500, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the market town / to have / not) the facilities for such a big crowd.

(13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / so many people / to travel) so far for these parades?

(14) \_\_\_\_\_ (the history / to go) back a long way. In the past, the celebrations were more like riots, which gradually became the processions (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to see) today. Even now, (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (the evenings / to stir) controversy: many people ask that (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (the societies / to burn / not) effigies that cause offence. Between the many memorable evenings, the rich history and the media attention, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be / not / inevitable) that so many people should visit?

### 5.5 Answers

1. Present Continuous

### 6.1 Present Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the present continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: Freddie / to play / in the garden

• A: Freddie is playing in the garden.

1. my mother / to watch / the television
2. the cat / to sleep / on the sofa
3. it / to rain / not / anymore
4. the phone / to ring
5. you / to learn / very fast
6. we / to work / not / together today
7. the tap / to drip / again
8. I / to write / not / about the Egyptians
9. the nuns / to dance / to disco music
10. she / to sing / far too loudly
11. the plants / to grow / very fast
12. Oliver / to sleep / not / in his own bed
13. raccoons / to steal / from our bins
14. that man / to stare / at you
15. you / to sit / not / in the right seat

## 6.1 Answers

### 6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Tim plays the flute.
  - A: Is Tim playing the flute?
1. You are writing an essay.
  2. The council are building a new swimming pool.
  3. He is avoiding his boss.
  4. We are heading north.
  5. That girl is carrying too many books.
  6. Your son behaves well at school.
  7. I feel like I am catching a cold.
  8. Chelsea are winning the match.
  9. Melissa eats healthy food.
  10. There could be buns baking in the oven.
  11. Her pregnancy shows.
  12. The walls in our building are getting dirty.
  13. Our creative team generates a lot of ideas.
  14. Henry is sharing his cake with everyone.
  15. I could be looking at this picture the wrong way around.

## 6.2 Answers

### 6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following present continuous statements into present continuous questions, using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Julie is applying to a college. (which)
  - A: Which college is Julie applying to?
1. I am trying to do something. (what)
  2. He is drilling into that wall. (why)
  3. Nancy is thinking about something. (what)
  4. We are walking to the casino. (where)
  5. They are investing their savings. (how)
  6. The business is expanding slowly. (why)

7. Hank is storing his old photos in a strange box. (where)
8. Something is drawing lots of birds to the garden. (what)
9. The wind is blowing from the north. (which direction)
10. The councillors are insisting on raising taxes. (why)
11. The kitchen staff are preparing food for many guests. (how many)
12. Lula is parking the car in the street. (where)
13. The nurse is giving you medicine. (what)
14. Something is making that awful sound. (what)
15. Thirteen visitors are waiting in the hall. (how many)

### 6.3 Answers

### 6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in present continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Which dish \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner? (we / to prepare)
  - A: Which dish are we not preparing for dinner?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ his dog? (Charles / to bring)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ enough homework? (the teachers / to set)
  3. Which ingredient \_\_\_\_\_? (I / to taste)
  4. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the children? (she / to take)
  5. Why \_\_\_\_\_ their juice? (my children / to drink)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ wet in the rain? (the bikes / to get)
  7. Which places \_\_\_\_\_ on your honeymoon? (you / to visit)
  8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ in this room? (the towels / to dry)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ her boyfriend? (she / to miss)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ the poetry competition? (Joe and Kyle / to enter)

### 6.4 Answers

### 6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate present continuous affirmative , negative or question form , using the information in brackets.

Proud Mr Duff

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Duff / to build) a new shed in his garden. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to borrow) tools from his neighbour, Mr Benton, but (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to work / not) well because Mr Duff has not fully charged them. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the shed / to fall) behind schedule. Mr Duff's wife has asked, "(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / to go / not) to plan?"

Mr Duff is a proud man. Though the problem persists, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to admit / not) it, so over time (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (his wife / to ask) more questions about the delayed shed. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (winter / to come), and while Mr Duff works on the shed (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the family / to store) their outdoor things under the porch.

"(10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to do) something wrong," Mrs Duff insists.

“(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to talk) about?” Mr Duff replies, stubbornly.

(12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the situation / to worry) Mrs Duff. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (her husband / to get) upset and (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to spend) too much time out there. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (how / she / to go) to help? She decides to ask Mr Benton.

Mr Benton suggests that (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Duff / to take / not) proper care of the tools. Benton listens, and realises (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (the tools / to make) the wrong noises. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the man / to charge / not) them properly?! Knowing Mr Duff is proud, Mr Benton suggests Mrs Duff charge the tools at night, when (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (her husband / to watch / not). She does, and soon the construction speeds up. (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (everything / to come) together – just in time.

## 6.5 Answers

### 1. Present Perfect

#### 7.1 Present Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the present perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: the engineer / to repair / the van
- A: The engineer has repaired the van.
- 1. Remi / to choose / her dress carefully
- 2. the sailors / to paint / the boat bright green
- 3. the dentists / to order / a new chair
- 4. my father / to retire / not / yet
- 5. you / to create / a wonderful display
- 6. the Robinsons / to prepare / not / the table for dinner
- 7. we / to pay / the delivery man for the pizza
- 8. I / to refuse / to take part in the parade
- 9. the police / to identify / not / the thief
- 10. she / to mention / her family's wealth many times
- 11. Edward / to believe / not / in Santa since he was young
- 12. the bus service / to improve / not
- 13. I / recommend / this movie many times
- 14. the storm / to destroy / our fence
- 15. my parents / to decide / not / which house to buy

## 7.1 Answers

#### 7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: She has visited over 50 countries.
- A: Has she visited over 50 countries?



1. You have seen the newspaper this morning.
2. The weather is getting better. (to improve)
3. All the boxes are gone. (they / to take)
4. We have got some bread.
5. Drew has told you about her exam results.
6. The postman has delivered your package.
7. Your wife has agreed to a colour for the walls.
8. I'm unsure if we've brought enough cheese.
9. The teacher set some homework.
10. The grass looks like it has been cut. (the gardener / to cut)
11. Carl and Harry spent all their holiday money.
12. You must listen to this new song. (to hear)
13. My mother is going to the market.
14. I understand this correctly.
15. All the teams are submitting their final answers.

## 7.2 Answers

## 7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following statements into present perfect questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They have offered us a free box of muffins. (what)
  - A: What have they offered you?
1. I received this package. (why)
  2. You have not been in the office this month. (where)
  3. Rebecca did something with her hair. (what)
  4. Something fell out of the basket. (what)
  5. The farmer has raised many pigs. (how many)
  6. The club has closed. (why)
  7. My sweets are gone. (where)
  8. You have chosen some socks to wear. (which)
  9. The scientist has never been wrong. (when)
  10. The company supplied us with recycled paper. (which paper)
  11. She has failed to convince them. (why)
  12. This musician remains unknown. (how)
  13. You put my violin somewhere. (where)

14. You have fed something to those ducks. (what)

15. Sally flew to Portugal. (why)

### 7.3 Answers

### 7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the present perfect negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

• Q: \_\_\_\_\_ to Belgium? (who / to be)

• A: Who has not been to Belgium?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the news? (you / to hear)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ him? (why / his sister / to forgive)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ? (what / the mice / to eat)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ yet? (the meeting / to finish)
5. Which rooms \_\_\_\_\_ ? (they / to clean)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ enough? (these people / to suffer)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ more umbrellas? (why / the store / to sell)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ in this report? (what problems / the team / to analyse)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ about the cinema? (Terry / to reply)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ of? (what / we / to think)

### 7.4 Answers

### 7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate present perfect affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

Molly's Travels

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Molly / to return) after a year of travelling. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to bring) her family many gifts, but they are more interested in her stories. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / she / to be)? What fascinating sights (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to see)?

"(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to experience) many things," Molly says. "(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to wasted / not) the time I had. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to read / not) my blog about it?"

Most of her family read the blog, but (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (her Dad / to find / not) the time yet. He asks, "What exotic foods (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to try)?"

"(10) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to write) so many things about the dishes in China already!" Molly says. "(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (one blog post / to reach) 5,000 visitors so far."

Everyone congratulates her. Dad wonders, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / so many people / to visit) Molly's blog? He did not know she was a talented writer.

"Which country did you like most?" Mum asks.

"America is nice," Molly says, "but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (Australia / to steal) my heart for good. (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to enjoy / not) better weather anywhere else in my life! (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (my new friends / to invite) me back to Melbourne already."

(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to make) new friends across the world, to go with this successful blog? (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (travelling / to change) his daughter, Dad can see. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / his shy little girl / to go)? Perhaps now the better question is, (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / she / to be / not)? He is happy for her, though, and (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to learn) his lesson. Next time she

goes away, he will pay more attention!

## 7.5 Answers

1. Present Perfect Continuous

## 8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the present perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

• Q: Billy / to feed / the ducks all week

• A: Billy has been feeding the ducks all week.

1. we / to live / here for eight years
2. I / to listen / to pop music
3. it / to get / harder to park on my road
4. those boys / to sit / there for hours
5. Ferdinand / to take / not / French lessons
6. our car / to make / strange noises
7. he / to talk / for 30 minutes
8. pigeons / to nest / on our roof
9. the pie shop / to turn / people away
10. she / to sell / her paintings cheaply
11. you / to watch / not / TV all morning
12. Eric / to draw / not / funny cartoons
13. the phone / to ring / non-stop
14. I / to read / a book about trees
15. more raccoons / to steal / from our bins

## 8.1 Answers

## 8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into present perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: I have been running today.

• A: Have you been running today?

1. I haven't been practising hard enough.
2. We have been making too much noise.
3. She has been swimming in the lake.
4. I'm not sure if you heard. (to listen)
5. The days seem to be getting dark earlier.

6. No one has watered the plants.
7. They have been waiting for a long time.
8. Tim might be working for your father.
9. I might have been paying too much for soap.
10. The fox has been sleeping in the garden.

## 8.2 Answers

### 8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into present perfect continuous questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: William has been feeding his rabbit grass. (what)
  - A: What has William been feeding his rabbit?
1. This story has been going somewhere. (where)
  2. My computer has been heating up. (why)
  3. Oliver has been riding horses for many years. (how long)
  4. She has been sending out invitations. (why)
  5. Something has been happening in town this weekend. (what)
  6. They have been delivering our mail to the wrong address. (where)
  7. I don't know what the trucks have been carrying this week. (what)
  8. The geography club has been exploring in a jungle. (which)
  9. Mr Jones has been teaching us anatomy. (what)
  10. The batteries have been charging for two hours. (how long)

## 8.3 Answers

### 8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in the present perfect continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: Where \_\_\_\_\_ cookies? (the girl / to deliver)
  - A: Where has the girl not been delivering cookies?
1. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (Len / to tell)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_? (anyone / to study)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend? (who / to read)
  4. What \_\_\_\_\_ right? (she / to do)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ to dance class regularly? (you / to go)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ Wanda enough attention? (I / to give)

7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ this spring? (the wind / to blow)
8. What questions \_\_\_\_\_? (the reporters / to ask)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you? (that sound / to worry)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ harder? (the team / to work)

#### 8.4 Answers

#### 8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate present perfect continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### Cleaning the Beach

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (the council / to make) efforts to improve Worthing's beach. For a long time, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (the beach / to suffer) from soiled water. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (the daily tests / to meet / not) expected hygiene levels. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to cause) this?

The council claims there are two main problems with the water. One is waste from people, where (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (holiday-makers / to pick up / not) after themselves. Another is waste from animals – where (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (people / to clean up / not) after their dogs.

(7) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / the council / to do) to change this?

Litter pick stations have been set up. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (visitors / to collect) rubbish whilst walking on the beach. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (the council / to provide) bags and "grab sticks" to encourage this. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (children / to treat) this as a game: how much litter can they pick up in an hour?

Meanwhile, dogs are no longer allowed on the beach during summer. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (dog walkers / to ignore) the signs, so there are now big fines in place. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (beach patrols / to warn) dog walkers not to use certain areas to avoid being fined. Not everyone is happy about this. Hillary Menrose complained, "(13) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / they / to focus) so hard on dogs, when seagulls make just as much mess. We always pick up after Fluff Doogle on our walks, but (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to watch) those birds, and they drop litter, too!"

There were big protests when the council wished to further limit dog walkers, and (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (the truth / to come out). Actually, there is a third reason that the sea is dirty: (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (the water company / to dump) waste into the sea. (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the council / to focus / not) on them? One thing's for sure: (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (the beach / to get / finally) the attention it deserves!

#### 8.5 Answers

#### Forming the Future

##### 1. Future Simple

#### 9.1 Future Simple Statements

Form complete sentences in the future simple (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form when necessary.

For example:

• Q: we / to be going to / not / to travel / for three months

• A: We are not going to travel for three months.

1. the final exam / will / to be / difficult

2. our friends / will / to come / for dinner

3. they / to be going to / not / to watch / the show together

4. Sasha / will / not / to buy / the next round of drinks

5. Amy / to be going to / to regret / her decision
6. my shoes / to be going to / not / to last / another winter
7. you / will / not / to agree / with me
8. the church bells / to be going to / to ring / today
9. those geese / will / to steal / your bread
10. the client / will / to approve / these new designs
11. I / to be going to / not / to lend / Charles any more money
12. Mrs Freda / will / not / to teach / noisy children
13. the festival / to be going to / to include / a lot of musicians
14. your new table / will / to arrive / tomorrow
15. this course / to be going to / not / to take / very long

#### 9.1 Answers

#### 9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future simple yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form when necessary. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I'm not sure if the waiter will clear away my dirty dishes.
  - A: Will the waiter clear away your dirty dishes?
1. You are going to the party on Saturday.
  2. I wonder if he is going to give back my book.
  3. The actor must remember his lines. (will)
  4. I'm not sure if this bus stops in Portsmouth. (to be going to)
  5. The performance had better start on time. (will)
  6. Vera hopes to meet the man of her dreams. (will)
  7. The Olympics might be held in Italy. (to be going to)
  8. Tom will admit that he ate the cake.
  9. Our house should sell by September. (to be going to)
  10. You have not finished your coffee. (to be going to)
  11. The old bicycle might need to be repaired. (will)
  12. James should bring his wife to the concert. (will)
  13. The doors need to be replaced. (to be going to)
  14. That truck might not fit in the parking space. (to be going to)
  15. I think the T-shirt is going to shrink in the washing machine.
  16. We want to split the bill evenly. (will)
  17. She must learn these words by Tuesday. (will)

18. I am hoping to see my cousins at the weekend. (to be going to)
19. Our town might change over the next five years. (will)
20. It looks like that young man is about to propose to his girlfriend. (to be going to)

## 9.2 Answers

### 9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future simple questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Dom is going to ask for a raise tomorrow. (when)
  - A: When is Dom going to ask for a raise?
1. Someone must pay for this damage. (who / to be going to)
  2. The builders will finish the roof soon. (when)
  3. Something is going to happen to the vacant beach huts. (what)
  4. Harry intends to climb that tree. (how / to be going to)
  5. The papers are writing about the new President. (what / will)
  6. You are going to lose your job. (why)
  7. My father will return from his holiday this Monday. (when)
  8. The barbecue is going to be held in the park. (why)
  9. We need to find a good carpet. (where / to be going to)
  10. The mice will cause havoc. (how)
  11. I must do something while my computer is updating. (what / will)
  12. She is going to cook something for her lunch. (what)
  13. The new product is going to be ready by autumn. (when)
  14. I need someone to volunteer to take my Saturday shift. (who / will)
  15. You will go somewhere for your summer holiday. (where)

## 9.3 Answers

### 9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future simple negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets.

For example:

- Q: What \_\_\_\_\_ her parents? (Olivia / to be going to / to tell)
  - A: What is Olivia not going to tell her parents?
1. \_\_\_\_\_ next year? (you / will / to return)
  2. When \_\_\_\_\_ at home? (they / to be going to / to be)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ on his trip? (what / Drew / to be going to / to take)
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ TV for a week? (how / I / will / to watch)

5. \_\_\_\_\_ pasta for dinner? (we / to be going to / prepare)
6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ them more toys? (their mother / to be going to / to buy)
7. What terms \_\_\_\_\_ to? (they / will / to agree)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ with us to Kent? (who / will / to come)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ ? (that tall cake / to be going to / to fall over)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ to her wedding? (who / she / will / to invite)

#### 9.4 Answers

#### 9.5 Mixed Future Simple

Complete the following text with the appropriate future simple affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets.

#### The Spaceship

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / to build) a spaceship in our back garden. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will / not / to be) easy, but we have the plans and the right tools. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (my Uncle Jimmy / will / to help) put it together, as (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to need) to earn his keep while he stays with us this summer. We haven't asked him yet, but (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / will / to say) yes, I am sure. But (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / to share) all our plans with him? I hope (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / will / to agree) without knowing how valuable the project is.

(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the rocket / will / to fly) faster and higher than any before. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be going to / not / to cost) much to make, because (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (my dad / will / to find) good materials in the dump. I do have some unanswered questions, though: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (how many / people / will / to fit) inside? (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the government / to be going to / to notice) what we are doing? If they hear about our amazing rocket, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / not / to allow) us to succeed. The government does not want competition – (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (our rocket / to be going to / to reach) Venus. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to discover) valuable diamonds before they do.

Mum thinks I can't do it. She says, "(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / will / to use) to fuel the rocket?"

"Hope," I tell her. "(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be going to / to work) because we have hope."

And anyway, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to persuade) Jimmy to deal with the other problems. We are the brains and the planners, after all: (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (the adults / will / to build) it. As long as (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Uncle Jimmy / to be going to / not / to steal) our ideas.

#### 9.5 Answers

##### 1. Future Continuous

##### 10.1 Future Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the future continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

• Q: Jamie / will / to attend / the conference with Howard.

• A: Jamie will be attending the conference with Howard.

1. I / will / to ask / everyone two questions

2. the days / to be going to / to get / longer

3. my friend / will / to drive / us to Oxford

4. we / will / to play / football all morning

5. you / to be going to / to wait / for hours

6. Richard / to be going to / not / to research / traffic control this week



7. she / will / to sweep / the floor
8. the company / to be going to / to organise / a trip soon
9. I / to be going to / not / to work / this afternoon
10. Penny / will / to aim / for the best results
11. he / to be going to / to add / songs to his playlist all night
12. the bank / will / not / to open / a new branch in Rye
13. we / to be going to / to dance / on stage this Friday
14. you / to be going to / not / to sit / there when I get back
15. the baby / will / to wake up / soon

#### 10.1 Answers

#### 10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form and particular verbs. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I would like a break soon. (to be going to / to get)
  - A: Are you going to be getting a break soon?
1. You are going to be washing these dishes.
  2. Jools should go to Detroit by train. (will / to take)
  3. They might supply us with milk. (will / to supply)
  4. Eric is going to be expanding his gallery.
  5. I hope she is going to be speaking on the panel.
  6. The badgers might be sleeping during the day. (will)
  7. No one is sure if the producers will be continuing the radio show. (will)
  8. They might be closing more stores. (to be going to)
  9. The planes could be landing at this airport. (will)
  10. Mrs Antwerp may spend time here during her visit. (to be going to)
  11. The Duke might discuss his retirement this week. (to be going to / to announce)
  12. We will be meeting the neighbours together.
  13. They said they might collect the sofa today. (will / to collect)
  14. That field is where the farmer should grow wheat. (to be going to / to plant)
  15. I heard you might perform at the Royal Albert Hall. (to be going to)

#### 10.2 Answers

#### 10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future continuous questions, using the question words and other information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: The boat is leaving at 3 p.m. (when / to be going to)
- A: When is the boat going to be leaving?
  1. Everyone will be sitting in the living room this evening. (where)
  2. You are going to be doing lots in Bali. (what)
  3. Tristan plans to exercise more this month. (how often / to be going to / to exercise)
  4. Greta is giving a speech on Wednesday. (what / will / to talk about)
  5. I must share a room. (who / to be going to / with)
  6. She should be jogging tomorrow. (when / to be going to)
  7. They need to clear away this mess. (will)
  8. I will read a crime thriller next week. (what)
  9. The barman is hanging his new fairy lights all over the bar. (where / will)
  10. Clive has been fixing that van for a long time. (how long / to be going to / to fix)
  11. We are going to be skating outside tomorrow. (where)
  12. There will be a prize for the best costume. (who / will / to wear)
  13. The school is starting to teach Pilates this spring. (what / to be going to / to teach)
  14. The bakers sell their doughnuts at unusual times. (when / to be going to / to sell)
  15. Someone must accept the award. (who / to be going to / to accept)

### 10.3 Answers

### 10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future continuous negative question form, without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_ his calls? (will / Grant / to answer)
- A: Why will Grant not be answering his calls?
  1. When \_\_\_\_\_ this week? (you / will / to study)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow? (the girls / to be going to / to swim)
  3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the horse? (he / to be going to / to ride)
  4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the party? (they / will / to attend)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ a new dish? (the chef / will / to prepare)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ for the President's arrival? (the flag / to be going to / to fly)
  7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ for the escaped mongoose with us? (they / will / to look)
  8. What \_\_\_\_\_ on this trip? (Liz / will / to bring)
  9. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the badminton club? (you / to be going to / to join)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ the boiler over lunch? (the plumber / to be going to / to repair)

## 10.4 Answers

### 10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate future continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

#### The Scout Trip

The Wood Row (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (scouts / will / to go) to the New Forest for four days next week. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / to camp) in a field where they will study the local wildlife. Their leader, Mr Ryan, said, “(3) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / to be going to / not / to laze) about. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to challenge) themselves all weekend, so they can learn more.”

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / will / the scouts / to do) on their adventure? A full itinerary has been prepared:

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / will / to make) notes about the animals they see. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to hike) for three hours each day, and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / not / to rest) much at camp, as (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (everyone / to be going to / to cook) two meals each day. Phones are banned, so (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / will / not / to call) home.

(11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what else / to be going to / to happen) over the weekend? Well, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (the weather / will / to change) on Saturday morning – from sunny to rainy – but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Ryan / will / not / to let) that stop them. He asked himself, “When (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will / not / to rain)?” and made sure that (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (their activities / to be going to / to occur) at those times.

“(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to prepare) alternative indoor activities, too”, he said. “(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / we / will / to do) while it’s raining? Well, there’s a nice old car museum to explore, for starters.”

One thing is for sure: the young scouts are going to be tired.

## 10.5 Answers

### 1. Future Perfect

#### 11.1 Future Perfect Statements

Form complete sentences in the future perfect (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

• Q: the burritos / will / to eat / by dawn

• A: The burritos will have been eaten by dawn.

1. we / will / to decide / by 1 p.m.
2. she / will / to sell / the dress before noon
3. I / to be going to / not / to finish / this book by nightfall
4. the workers / will / to paint / our bedroom
5. you / will / to accept / my proposal by Friday
6. Regina / to be going to / to design / a new logo before the meeting
7. the champion / to be going to / to play / his last game by December
8. the scientists / will / to add / the new planets to the map
9. the council / will / to clear / the roads for the festival
10. our neighbours / to be going to / to replace / their windows by Monday
11. the keys / will / not / to be / find / by then
12. the university / will / to award / my niece a prize

13. Victor / to be going to / to escape / before we get back
14. the groundsmen / will / to plant / new grass over the old field
15. the eggs / will / not / to go / bad

#### 11.1 Answers

#### 11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future perfect yes or no questions (they do not require question words). The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I am not sure if I will finish my essay in time.
  - A: Will you have finished your essay in time?
1. They have to replace the batteries by tomorrow. (will)
  2. You are going to measure the temperature.
  3. You must wash the dishes in time for dinner. (will)
  4. I wonder if the dentist has raised her prices. (will)
  5. They are going to have fixed the leaking sink by 10 a.m.
  6. I am not sure if I am going to have managed this project well.
  7. The new batteries are going to arrive in time.
  8. Perhaps the hats will have sold.
  9. Billie will have brought her best socks.
  10. Mrs Carter should have visited her daughter. (to be going to)
  11. Petrol prices might have risen again. (will)
  12. The priest must learn to dance before the ball. (to be going to)
  13. The geese are going to have left the park.
  14. We must make enough scones for everyone. (will)
  15. The panel will have discussed the important issues.

#### 11.2 Answers

#### 11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future perfect questions , using the question words provided. First person statements should become second person questions. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: They will have built three new condos by spring. (what)
  - A: What will they have built by spring?
1. Some people are going to have eaten before the party. (who)
  2. The wall will have been damaged. (what / to happen)
  3. You are going to have stayed in many places this summer. (where)

4. Manny must not have returned that book yet. (when / to be going to)
5. The pirates will have hidden the treasure. (where)
6. The manager will have handled his own accounts. (how)
7. Our clients are going to have paid us by Wednesday. (when)
8. I will have learned many things on the course. (what)
9. The sandwiches will have been prepared before lunch. (when)
10. The traders are going to have docked the ship in Portsmouth. (where)

### 11.3 Answers

### 11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future perfect negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_ the assignment on time? (who / will / to complete)
  - A: Who will have not completed the assignment on time?
1. Where \_\_\_\_\_? (Darren / to be going to / to be)
  2. What \_\_\_\_\_ through? (the gerbils / will / to bite)
  3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ from their mistakes? (they / will / to learn)
  4. How many \_\_\_\_\_ by Saturday? (cakes / you / to be going to / to make)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ her article on time? (the reporter / will / to write)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ this puzzle before the bell? (who / to be going to / to solve)
  7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ her dress before tomorrow? (Mrs Harris / to be going to / to fix)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ a delay? (the traffic / will / to cause)
  9. Where \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of my reading tour? (I / to be going to / to speak)
  10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ the bad news before he arrives? (they / will / to deliver)

### 11.4 Answers

### 11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

Complete the following text with the appropriate future perfect affirmative , negative or question form , using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

#### The Big Presentation

Bob and Charlotte are giving a big presentation tomorrow at 2 p.m. Their (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (German clients / will / to arrive) by then, and it is important to impress them. There is lots to do. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to finish) the overall report by this evening, but the graphs will be incomplete as (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / not / to process) all the data in time. Charlotte is worried because she has to take her children to school before work in the morning, but (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bob / will / to start) on the graphs before she arrives.

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / he / will / to do)? She hopes (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to call) the research department and compiled their data. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / he / will / not / to complete)? The graphs themselves. Unfortunately, Bob is not very good with graph software. But Charlotte imagines (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / will / to create) all the necessary graphs before noon. That will give them time to prepare to greet the clients.

Charlotte will be so busy, she will not have time for lunch. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / will / to prepare) smoothies in the morning, though. Hopefully the clients won't notice (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to be going to / to eat / not) lunch. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (the pair / will / to polish) their presentation to such a high standard, the clients should be too impressed to care about anything else. By tomorrow afternoon, Charlotte imagines (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to seal) the deal.

## 11.5 Answers

1. Future Perfect Continuous

## 12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

Form complete sentences in the future perfect continuous (affirmative or negative), without contractions, using the information provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Herman / will / to live / in Dresden for two years by this summer
  - A: Herman will have been living in Dresden for two years by this summer.
1. I / will / to learn / Mandarin for a month by this Friday
  2. soon, the couple / will / to argue / for 20 minutes
  3. we / to be going to / to dance / all night long
  4. you / will / to choose / the flowers carefully
  5. the storm clouds / to be going to / to gather / for a while
  6. Georgie / will / to listen / to pop music again
  7. our dog / will / to sleep / while we were out
  8. I / to be going to / to cycle / all morning, so I'll need a shower
  9. Carl / will / to practise / for the Olympics
  10. the boats / will / to bump / into each other overnight
  11. the spies / will / to listen
  12. my uncle / to be going to / to research / our family history ahead of the reunion
  13. it / will / to get / hotter before we go on holiday
  14. the tree / will / to shed / its leaves for weeks
  15. she / to be going to / to laugh / at her own radio show

## 12.1 Answers

## 12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Convert the following statements into future perfect continuous yes or no questions (they do not require question words). Where necessary, the questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: He will have studied in Wales for a long time.
  - A: Will he have been studying in Wales for a long time?
1. We might be waiting all morning. (to be going to)
  2. Nancy will have been singing throughout the first act.

3. They will bake a cake. (will)
4. I am going to have been wasting my time.
5. The shoppers are going to queue for hours.
6. I hope Charlie shaves regularly during the holiday. (will)
7. We will have been writing to each other a for long time.
8. Sally is going to have been working in insurance for two years.
9. The tide should have been going out. (to be going to)
10. The grapes might have been getting mouldy. (will)

## 12.2 Answers

### 12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Convert the following statements into future perfect continuous questions , using the question words provided. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They will have been travelling by boat. (why)
  - A: Why will they have been travelling by boat?
1. She will have been practising for a long time. (how long)
  2. Jim will have been swimming in the creek. (where)
  3. You are going to have been travelling a great distance. (how far)
  4. The trucks are going to have been carrying crackers. (what)
  5. The children will have been walking home. (why)
  6. We are going to have been working on this project for months. (how long)
  7. They are going to have been waiting for a decision. (what)
  8. The foxes will have been gathering in the garden. (why)
  9. He is going to have been asking for help. (who)
  10. The intern is going to have been saying good things about his job. (what)

## 12.3 Answers

### 12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

Complete the following sentences in future perfect continuous negative question form , without contractions, using the subjects and verbs in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

For example:

- Q: Why \_\_\_\_\_? (the surgeon / will / to operate)
  - A: Why will the surgeon not have been operating?
1. Where \_\_\_\_\_? (the tractor / will / to go)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ enough? (I / to be going to / to participate)
  3. How long \_\_\_\_\_ for? (your aunt / to be going to / to work)

4. What \_\_\_\_\_? (we / to be going to / to see)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ hope? (they / will / to lose)
6. Why \_\_\_\_\_ for the test? (he / to be going to / to prepare)
7. Which buildings \_\_\_\_\_? (the company / will / to develop)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ in the right places? (the coats / to be going to / to hang)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ upright? (the guard / will / to stand)
10. What \_\_\_\_\_ us? (our friends / will / to show)

#### 12.4 Answers

#### 12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate future perfect continuous affirmative, negative or question form, using the information in brackets. The questions indicate whether to use the will or going to form.

##### The Fish of Mugrub

Things have been changing in the fishing village of Mugrub. By November, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (things / will / to change) for five years. Lots of new buildings have been built there; some residents feel that when the next few projects begin (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to build) apartments forever. Resident Liam McDonald said, "And because of the noise, when they finish, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / not / to sleep) for years!"

Tourists and researchers have been coming to Mugrub to see a new glowing fish, discovered almost five years ago. If projections are met this December, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the population / will / to grow) by 25% each year. Should the latest tackle shop get permission, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (new shops / will / to open) at a rate of four a year. But has happiness been increasing in the same way?

"(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to live) here for three decades this August," McDonald said. "And (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / not to work) for almost half of that. I liked the peace and quiet before. The mayor says it will calm down, but (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (these outsiders / to be going to / not / to hovering) around for five years, soon?"

Not everyone is as unhappy with the changing village. Shop owner Jenny McCluck looks forward to the future: "I imagine (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / will / to get) visitors from all over the world during the summer. They cannot resist the village, and though (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to be going to / not / to expect) to stay for long, they will do. It's good for business."

It's also good for the glowing fish. This summer, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (local researchers / will / to apply) for grants each year for the past five years – and they are confident Mugrub's popularity will finally secure funding this time. Dr Bailey said, "Next year, we expect to uncover the mysteries of the glowing fish, as (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to be going to / not / to waste) time searching for funding!"

#### 12.5 Answers

##### Forming Mixed Tenses

1. Mixed Simple Tenses

#### 13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete past simple, present simple or future simple statements and questions using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: washed / Mary / in the river / her clothes

• A: Mary washed her clothes in the river.

1. isn't / ? / this / easy

2. too many people / were / on the boat / there



3. not / seem / Paul / does / ? / quiet today
4. loud / swans / very / are
5. to go swimming / not / is / it / a good day
6. will / to the gala / wear / ? / what / you
7. waited / we / for hours
8. be / before noon / they / at the dock / will
9. this photo / ? / real / to you / does / look
10. did / her house / ? / Nina / when / buy
11. she / for more mushrooms / to the shop / went
12. always / I / my wallet behind / leave
13. later / your room / won't / ? / tidy / you
14. too tired / you / to swim / look
15. a new boat / the fisherman / did / ? / how / buy
16. to me most / this tie / appeals
17. their medicine / who / ? / did / take / not / this morning
18. give up / not / on this reform / will / the President
19. over a period of many years / fell apart / our house
20. perfect / practice / makes

### 13.1 Answers

### 13.2 Simple Questions

Form past simple, present simple or future simple questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I could not find my book. (where / to be)
  - A: Where was your book?
1. I'm not sure what rabbits eat. (to eat / grass)
  2. Jimmy was muddy. (to fall / the mud)
  3. The circus always makes you happy. (you / to enjoy)
  4. Wendy should be in the market tomorrow, but she hasn't confirmed.
  5. The river runs through the north part of town. (where / to run)
  6. Dozens of men waited in the street. (how many)
  7. The man was still on the bench, two hours later. (he / to sit / for two hours)
  8. There should be twenty people at dinner.
  9. We cannot wait past noon for the delivery. (what time / the delivery / to arrive)
  10. They study very hard just before exams. (when)

11. Cape Town was the busiest city that year. (which)
12. Someone must watch my child tomorrow. (who)
13. He claims men are less healthy than women. (men)
14. The squirrels will steal those nuts.
15. The radio stopped working. (the radio's battery / to run out)
16. She likes many flowers, but especially marigolds. (the marigold / to be / her favourite)
17. I saw Polly with a bicycle but I'm not sure if it is hers. (Polly / to own)
18. The lifeguards saved all the children. (who)
19. When I am older, I intend to get twenty cats.
20. Before the war, this shop had fresh bread. (to sell)

### 13.2 Answers

### 13.3 Simple Negative Questions

Form past simple, present simple or future simple negative questions using the information provided, with or without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Children are playing outside today when they should be in school. (the school / to open)

• A: Is the school not open today? or Isn't the school open today?

1. Robert only has vegetables on his plate. (to eat / meat)
2. The investigator wrote a confusing summary of the report. (to understand / the report)
3. Our charity isn't getting donations. (why / people / will / to give)
4. She refuses to see her mother again. (she / to visit)
5. You don't look happy about the bagpipes playing. (you / to like)
6. Harry is unwell, perhaps he will not go to school tomorrow.
7. Our friends did not meet until college.
8. These questions are very strange.
9. Running every day might make me fit, but I'm not sure.
10. The ducks look hungry again. (you / to feed)
11. Julian does not practise guitar very often. (who)
12. The council did not remove our rubbish this week. (why)
13. There is nowhere to park, but our friends are coming. (they / to be able to / their car)
14. Simon took his driving test but is not driving. (Simon / to pass)
15. Something is not right. (what / to look)

### 13.3 Answers

### 13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following simple tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect.

For example:

• Q: She watch TV every day.

• A: Incorrect – She watches TV every day.

1. The employee will wait until he is called.
2. I do live there anymore.
3. The kitchen smell like sweet apple pie.
4. I did not pass my exams last week.
5. Herman and Claire enjoys playing chess on Saturdays.
6. That woman is exactly who she says she is.
7. You will not improve if you do not study.
8. This aeroplane will flies if it is repaired.
9. He did not arrived in time for the show last night.
10. The greyhounds returns after they escaped.
11. The little children seem tired at the moment.
12. The car looked dirty now.
13. The toaster works when we tried it earlier.
14. Dani will not come to the seminar this evening.
15. They want all the different flavoured pizzas available now.

#### 13.4 Answers

#### 13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

Complete the following text with the appropriate past simple , present simple or future simple forms, using the information in brackets.

#### A House by the Sea

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to live) in a bungalow by the sea, now. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (his house / to sit) opposite the beach. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / always / to dream) of owning a house with a sea view, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / finally / to have) it. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to take) him fifteen years to find the right home. At times, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / not / to believe) it would be possible. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (his friends / often / to ask), “(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / you / to want) a home by the sea? (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (did / anyone / not / to tell) you that the sea is dangerous? (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / will / not / to drown)?”

Indeed, before he moved, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (many people / to say) that storms and floods could damage a seaside home. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (beach property / to tend) to be expensive, too. And in England, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to be / not / easy) to find space along the sea, certainly not near big towns. (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (these details / to bother / not) Bill. Whatever the price, (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to determine), his dream would come true.

Finally, (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to save) enough money and found exactly the right place. (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to buy) his bungalow outright. Now, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to enjoy) sitting on the porch watching the waves. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (the water / to come / not) high enough to damage the house. (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to be going to / invite) all his friends down during the summer, and (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to see) for themselves how wonderful it is here.

But now Bill has achieved his dream, (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / will / he / to do) next? (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to have) other plans? Yes. (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bill / to imagine) what life would be like on the sea. (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to be going to / to study) to become a boat captain. Then, (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to buy) a boat. (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (nothing / to be going to / to stop) him.

#### 13.5 Answers

## 1. Mixed Continuous Tenses

### 14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete past continuous, present continuous or future continuous tense statements using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: in the parade / to carry / will / Carlos / the flag

• A: Carlos will be carrying the flag in the parade.

1. here after he buys some wine / to come back / will / he
2. to enjoy / everyone / themselves before we got there
3. Rita / to sew / a new dress two days ago
4. exceptionally well today / Joe / to dance
5. to perform / you / will / first tonight
6. will / people / this for a long time to come / to discuss
7. I / to party / all night, so I needed to rest
8. to sit / she / in the wrong seat, someone tell her
9. in the street / we / to arguing / but got told to stop
10. the giraffe / while it rained / to stand / under the tree
11. their wounds later / the defeated team / to lick / will
12. to try / to sleep but / it is too noisy outside / I
13. will / to learn / exciting new techniques / we / next week
14. the cleaners / to empty / the bins right now
15. to annoy / you / me, please go away

### 14.1 Answers

### 14.2 Continuous Questions

Form past continuous, present continuous or future continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Kim has the TV on. (what / she / to watch)

• A: What is she watching?

1. It seemed like we were working all night. (how long)
2. They will be climbing the mountain in the morning. (when)
3. Our boy is not improving with his studies. (to study / enough)
4. Jenny has booked another language test. (to take / again)
5. He was fighting with a gorilla in the jungle. (where)
6. She has prepared an entry for the contest. (to enter)

7. Rupert is getting very fit. (to do / lots of exercise)
8. Everyone seemed angry at the volume of my voice. (to talk / too loudly)
9. The gang was hanging out near the club. (where)
10. Everyone is getting sweets from Charlotte! (Charlotte / to give out)
11. The police suspect a pink car was used in the crime. (why / the police / to search)
12. She's not sure how long this mess will take to clean up.
13. I've arranged to meet Bob in the foyer at 9 p.m. (Bob / to wait)
14. The unhappy workers were gathering below the balcony. (who)
15. Wait for Charles, I think his shoelaces are undone! (Charles / to tie)

#### 14.2 Answers

#### 14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

Form past continuous , present continuous or future continuous negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: We are not travelling to Scotland.

• A: Are you not travelling to Scotland?

1. You are not eating well.
2. They arrived unexpectedly. (they / to plan / to come)
3. I hope you will be joining us.
4. I feel like it is getting warmer.
5. You must recycle more plastic. (why)
6. The coastguard is patrolling the east beach. (where)
7. Henry has decided not to give any presents this Christmas. (why)
8. The foxes were not standing on the roof.
9. The bookshop is opening late today. (why / early)
10. I don't think our team is playing in the match this weekend.
11. Sheila would not reveal the truth about her birdcage. (what / to reveal)
12. The girl was not standing there when you took the photo.
13. We have no fresh water for the campers. (the campers / will / to expect)
14. Should that lion be this close to the shelter? (that lion / to get)
15. You weren't waiting in the parlour last night. (why)

#### 14.3 Answers

#### 14.4 Continuous Contractions

Form past continuous , present continuous or future continuous negative questions using the information provided, with contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They were not listening to the professor during the lecture.
- A: Weren't they listening to the professor during the lecture?
  1. You are not reading that magazine.
  2. They stopped work during yesterday's storm. (they / to work)
  3. We have hardly any tissues left. (your tissues / to run out)
  4. I'm not sure if Danny will be waiting at home.
  5. It seemed like you took a long break from studying. (how long / to study / for)
  6. We are not sitting close to the stage. (why)
  7. Hailey will not be skiing with us.
  8. They were fighting over the last piece of cheese.
  9. The weather is changing rapidly.
  10. Something was definitely missing from the recipe. (what / they / to include)
  11. The field seems very empty. (the farmers / to work)
  12. Howard may have been pretending to gather mushrooms last week. (to gather)
  13. The fireman is not listening. (why)
  14. The tulips are turning a curious shade of purple.
  15. Your notepad was empty! (to take / notes)

#### 14.4 Answers

#### 14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following continuous tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

- Q: He was not listen to the teacher.
- A: Incorrect – He was not listening to the teacher.
  1. You was singing the right tune.
  2. The band will not be coming unless we pay them more.
  3. He is moving to Seattle today.
  4. I are baking a wonderful cake.
  5. His parents will visiting tomorrow.
  6. The birds were not sit there yesterday.
  7. It is raining too heavily for us to go out.
  8. We are shopping in the mall when the alarm went off.
  9. The guards are not watching the diamonds right now.
  10. She was practising piano last summer.
  11. We will not be waited very long if you call ahead.

12. The men will be drinking all night, now the bar has a new license.

13. Brenda was washing the windows last week.

14. The cat are staring out of the window again.

15. They will not performing this evening, after all.

#### 14.5 Answers

#### 14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate continuous forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

##### Going to the Cinema

Billy: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to book) tickets for the cinema. Do you want to come?

Angela: Hmm. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / to play)?

Billy: It's a superhero movie. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / will not / show) for much longer, so we need to go now.

Angela: Another superhero movie! (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / they / to make / still) them?

Billy: This is the best one yet – (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to get) amazing reviews.

Angela: I don't care – (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / not / to go) to another superhero film.

Billy: Well, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to watch) it whether you come or not. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to do), anyway?

Angela: (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to be / study) for my exam on Friday before you interrupted, actually.

Billy: (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to revise / not) all day yesterday?

Angela: Yes, and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / will / to read) all day tomorrow, too. So what?

Billy: (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to work) too hard! Come to the cinema and have a break.

Angela: Fine. I'll come, but (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to see / not) that superhero film.

Billy: (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / to think) of watching instead?

Angela: There's a new thriller. With a twist. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (Bridget / tell) me about it last week.

Billy: Hmm. Fine. But (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / drive)!

#### 14.6 Answers

##### 1. Mixed Perfect Tenses

##### 15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete perfect tense statements and questions, without contractions, using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: to fifteen countries / Felicity / to be / so far

• A: Felicity has been to fifteen countries so far.

1. my essay but / I / to finish / was not happy with it

2. Ryan / a new camera / and cannot stop talking about it / to buy

3. before you get there / to close / the shop / will

4. you / to prepare / have you / ? / the salad, / not
5. to record / many artists / the tune / before John produced a cover
6. the door / ? / forced open / to be
7. to arrive / yet, by this time tomorrow / will / our friends / not
8. will / the weather / to change / by the weekend / ?
9. she / a new book / to start / even though she was still reading one
10. Sam / will / to walk / home, if he is not at the school
11. this film before; / to see / I / it looks good / not
12. they / so many scones / to eat / ? / that they could not have cake
13. to build / the children / a den, so the living room is a mess
14. the priest / to go / ? / before she arrived
15. will / dinner / the restaurant / to serve / not / by 7 p.m., as the chef is missing

#### 15.1 Answers

#### 15.2 Perfect Questions 1

Form past perfect, present perfect or future perfect questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: Frederick has passed his written exam.

• A: Has Frederick passed his written exam?

1. You have been to Hungary before.
2. They weren't sure if they'd locked the door before going out. (to lock)
3. I hope we have soup today. (the chef / to cook)
4. We need time to rest before the train comes. (will / to rest)
5. The wheel had been punctured deliberately.
6. I feel like I have told her this before.
7. The water might have boiled. (to boil / yet)
8. The minister discovered his backpack was full of oranges. (to take / the wrong backpack)
9. Hopefully the snow will have cleared by morning.
10. You seem to like Japanese cinema. (you / to see / many Japanese films)
11. I have not heard from the university about my application yet. (the university / to receive)
12. They should have released the lobsters later. (to release / too early)
13. She was unsure if she entered the right answer. (to write)
14. I think Maria will have done the pies by 2 p.m. (the pies / will / to cook)
15. They say it has become harder to buy property.

#### 15.2 Answers



### 15.3 Perfect Questions 2

Form past perfect, present perfect or future perfect questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: The postman has left something by the door. (what)
- A: What has the postman left by the door?
  1. Shirley has done something bad. (what)
  2. He was inside, but no one knew how. (how / to get)
  3. The courier will have left the package under the porch. (where)
  4. Luke has put all the empty milk cartons in the garage. (where)
  5. I did not hear what the man at the front desk had said. (what / the man)
  6. It is stuffy in here and the windows are closed. (why / no one / to open)
  7. My papers have been drawn all over. (who / to draw)
  8. We could not find the badgers. (where / the badgers / to hide)
  9. The boats will have docked by sunset. (when)
  10. Tim's phone was broken. (how / to break)
  11. She has lost the remote control. (where / to put)
  12. The caretaker had cleaned the floor with a new product. (what)
  13. The package was waiting when we got home. (when / the package / to arrive)
  14. The award will go to whoever has showed the most potential this year. (who / to show)
  15. We have stored some decorations in the garage. (what / to store)

### 15.3 Answers

### 15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

Form past perfect , present perfect or future perfect negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: I have not received any emails today. (why)
- A: Why have you not received any emails today?
  1. You have not seen Alfred this month.
  2. The mail is not here yet. (to arrive)
  3. It seemed the explorers had taken the wrong turn. (to take / the correct turn)
  4. The hosts will not have prepared for 100 guests.
  5. I think we put the bread in the oven 45 minutes ago. (to be / 45 minutes / since)
  6. I needed a new question to ask. (what question / to ask / before)
  7. Their seats at the theatre will not be reserved. (to reserve)

8. The cupboard had not squeaked as loudly that morning.
9. She is waiting for her boyfriend to return. (her boyfriend / to return)
10. I thought we paid for this meal already. (to pay)
11. I fear the shops will have closed by 7 p.m.
12. Harriette had not packed the correct shoes. (why)
13. He seemed tired when he started work. (to rest / before)
14. I don't see your name on the list for lessons. (to sign up)
15. The taxi might not arrive by midnight.

#### 15.4 Answers

#### 15.5 Perfect Contractions

Form past perfect , present perfect or future perfect negative questions using the information provided, with contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: They will never complete the project before sundown.
  - A: Won't they have completed the project before sundown?
1. The President has not achieved all his goals. (which goals)
  2. I can't believe you have not heard this tune before. (why)
  3. The thieves had not hidden the jewels.
  4. The men will not have distributed the presents in time.
  5. She had not wanted everything that she received. (what)
  6. The tour group has not visited the Alps. (where)
  7. They hadn't known the door would be locked. (how)
  8. Our opponents cannot plan for everything. (what / to plan)
  9. I thought I helped with the dishes.
  10. The kitten has not damaged all the chairs. (which / chair)
  11. The creature was following him, unnoticed. (he / to notice)
  12. Let's consider what we will not have completed by New Year.

#### 15.5 Answers

#### 15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following perfect tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

- Q: Clive has eat all the pudding.
  - A: Incorrect – Clive has eaten all the pudding.
1. I have not see that play, but I hear it is good.
  2. Gill has not eaten her carrots because they looked green.

3. The team will have repaired the boat in time for the race this Saturday.
4. Victor has learned to play the piano yet.
5. Why have you not given me my watch back?
6. It had not was easy, but the girls replaced the punctured tyre.
7. We hadn't bring a map and got hopelessly lost.
8. Had Sue feed animals before or not?
9. He will has heard the good news before the meeting.
10. Hadn't I seen Martin's new guitar somewhere before?
11. They will have collect all the flowers before the wedding day.
12. The magicians have not agreed on a trick, so we have cancelled the performance.
13. She have not lived here for long, have she?
14. I will recovered by the time they arrive tomorrow.
15. The project won't exceed its budget if we stay on track.

#### 15.6 Answers

#### 15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

Complete the following text with the appropriate perfect forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

#### The House that Would Not Sell

The building on Grand Avenue (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) up for sale for a long time now. The owners (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to renovate) it recently: (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / decorate) all the rooms, and are currently building a new garage. They claim (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / will / to spend) more than £10,000 on these improvements once they are done. But (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (the house / will / to be) on the market six months by next week.

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / it / to fail) to sell?

The property probably (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sell) because of the damp problems. One couple who went to view it complained that (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (the owners / to paint) over mould on one wall before they visited. The real estate agent expressed frustration: "I wish (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to ask) more questions before taking on the house. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / the owners / to hire) two different estate agents already? Because the others quit after they discovered the damp!"

The owners, Jeff and Winn Murray, insist (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do / not) anything wrong. Jeff said, "(12) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to live) here for ten years and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (the damp / never / to bother) us. When we first moved in, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (mushrooms / to grow) on the carpet. Did we complain? No, because (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to expect) a few problems beforehand. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (anyone / to move / ever) house without problems?"

(17) \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr Murray / to find / not) his potential customers forgiving, however. Buyers can easily spot damp now, as moisture scanners (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) so effective. Winn Murray said, "One young couple's clothes beeped while we showed them around. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / they / to bring) in their pockets? A damp-measuring device! Perhaps we need a new estate agent, who will bring less devious buyers. But (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (how many agents / we / will / to try) then? Perhaps we should just keep the house!"

#### 15.7 Answers

##### 1. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

#### 16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

The following sentences have been scrambled. Form complete perfect continuous tense statements and questions, without contractions, using the words provided.

For example:

• Q: the sea / to get / warmer since April

• A: The sea has been getting warmer since April.

1. Ben / TV for an hour / to watch / while the soup simmered
2. your phone / why / to ring / your shower / ? / since you started
3. our friends / to visit / us once a week until they left town
4. the gate / to open / properly for a week now / not
5. to study / medicine for / you / two years last time I saw you
6. they / you get to the party / will / to wait / all evening by the time
7. Jason / to call / the council every day / not / this week
8. to travel / I / for / how / will / when I finally get home / ?
9. to see / each other / we / for a year before we got married
10. the men / they reach the summit / to climb / for days before / will
11. she / to learn Spanish before / to try / ? / her holiday next month
12. whether or not to / I / to consider / go out this evening

#### 16.1 Answers

#### 16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

Form past perfect continuous, present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: I estimate that the bus has been stopping every two minutes.

• A: Has the bus been stopping every two minutes?

1. He had been studying for a long time before the exam.
2. They will have been building that wall all summer.
3. I'm not sure if we were sitting or standing when the bell rang.
4. I have been reading about giraffes this week.
5. They say Ben will have been living on a boat for two years this August.
6. I'm worried she has been staring at me all morning.
7. I think you had been looking for a new bag last time I saw you.
8. Someone, possibly my wife, has been cooking something that smells delicious.
9. We were afraid that mushrooms had been growing under the floorboards.
10. Our nephew will have been walking for months before we see him.
11. The neighbours seem angry with Hillary. (Hillary / to argue)
12. The squirrels will have been sleeping all winter.

#### 16.2 Answers

#### 16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

Form past perfect continuous , present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous questions using the information provided. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Bob has been making a model aeroplane. (what)
- A: What has Bob been making?
  1. There was lots of banging on the door that night. (who / to bang)
  2. She must be hiding her silverware in the cellar. (where / to hide)
  3. Greg has sent the TV station angry letters. (why)
  4. The plumber has been in the basement for a long time. (what / to do)
  5. Jane will have been learning to ride camels for a year come March. (how long)
  6. Simon had an important phone call before dinner. (who / to talk to)
  7. The cake will cool on the windowsill for three hours before tea. (where)
  8. The birds arrived at the lake after two hours of flying. (how long / to fly)
  9. You keep writing things in your journal. (what)
  10. We will need two weeks to practise this dance before the show.

#### 16.3 Answers

#### 16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

Form past perfect continuous , present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous negative questions using the information provided, without contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

- Q: Clive has not been swimming this week.
- A: Has Clive not been swimming this week?
  1. I don't think the tomatoes have been growing in this soil. (the tomatoes / to grow)
  2. Veronica had refused to send the letters. (to send)
  3. They claimed they had collected no names during the survey. (to collect)
  4. You will not have been working here long enough for a raise this month.
  5. She might not have been paying attention when the homework was set.
  6. The old man still has a full cupboard of beans. (to eat / his beans)
  7. The couple will not have been renting for long before they buy.
  8. Roger and Kelly's towels seem very dirty. (to wash / their towels)
  9. My aunt had not been buying anything online.
  10. Sandy will not have been working today. (why)

#### 16.4 Answers

#### 16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

Form past perfect continuous , present perfect continuous or future perfect continuous negative questions using the information provided, with

contractions. Use the will form for future questions. First person statements should become second person questions.

For example:

• Q: I have not been making pies. (what)

• A: What haven't you been making?

1. The Queen had not been wearing her crown at night. (who)
2. He might not have been travelling through Europe next month.
3. Sally had not been sharing her chocolate with anyone. (what)
4. I think you should have been using the blue pen.
5. Dennis thought he had been searching for this wallet all morning.
6. I have been trying to watch all the new cookery shows, but might have missed some. (which / cookery shows / to watch)
7. She has been ignoring my messages for two weeks. (how long / she / to reply)
8. It's uncertain if the club will have been expanding quickly enough to earn a bonus.
9. The charity has not been accepting donations since January. (why)
10. He claimed the cupboard had not been squeaking last time we were there.

#### 16.5 Answers

#### 16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

Identify grammatical mistakes in the following perfect continuous tense sentences, marking the sentences as either correct or incorrect .

For example:

• Q: The children have been gathered flowers for hours.

• A: Incorrect – The children have been gathering flowers for hours.

1. The pot plants will have been getting enough water this week.
2. The Smiths have not been closing their windows at night, even when it rained.
3. The children have playing outside this week.
4. Will they have been preparing for long enough by next week?
5. We have not to be meeting as often now as we used to.
6. The goats had not been cooperating with the farmer yesterday.
7. Mandy had been let her sister use the computer that summer.
8. You have not been listening to me, please do!
9. Won't Felicity have been cycling at all this winter?
10. She will has been reading the correct book.
11. Jim had been working for eight days by tomorrow morning.
12. Had Ralph been putting the clean cups in the wrong cupboard all along?
13. People had not been returning books to the library last month.
14. Has our guests been waiting long? They look bored.
15. My car will have not been starting since the accident last Thursday.

## 16.6 Answers

### 16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

Complete the following text with the appropriate perfect continuous forms, using the information in brackets. Use contractions where possible.

#### Extreme Endurance

Janet (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to train) to complete the Extreme Endurance Race in July. The race (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take place) in Devon for eight years now, and involves swimming, running, cycling and climbing. Janet (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) and cycling since she was young, but before last January she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim / not) for a long time and she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to climb / never). By the time of the race, she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) to climb for only six months!

(7) \_\_\_\_\_ (why / she / to work) so hard for this? Before Christmas, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (Janet / to get) ill frequently. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to see) doctors two or three times a week, and all of them said she needed more exercise. Her friend (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (Claude / to compete) in tough races for decades, and he suggested she try one. So she chose the toughest. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (what / she / to think)?

By February, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to rise) every morning at 5 a.m. for two months. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (her diet / not / to help), so she cut out sugar and dairy. The improvements were rapid. Janet has not only lost weight and raised her stamina, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to feel) more awake and alive. What's more – (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / not / to get) ill anymore. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (her life / to improve / also) in other ways she did not expect – (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / even / to sleep) better.

But the Extreme Endurance Race is quickly approaching, and (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to grow) more nervous by the day. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to practise) for long enough to face it? She isn't sure, but one thing is certain: by the time it's over, (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (Janet / to work) hard enough to form a habit. Now she's started getting fit, she doesn't expect to stop.

## 16.7 Answers

### Tenses in Use

The following section is designed to drill usages of the different tenses, so you can get a feel for the appropriate application of each tense in context. These are divided into the past, present and future, with each section including exercises that cover the uses of the simple, continuous, perfect and perfect continuous forms. There are also comparative exercises that relate the tenses to each other, as referenced in the book *The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide*. Following the specific uses, there is a group of mixed tenses exercises, drawing all the tenses together for drills of more free and flexible use.

#### 1. The Past in Use

##### 17.1 Complete or Process 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form. Remember, we use the past simple for actions completed in the past, while we use the past continuous for ongoing or interrupted processes.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ my dog when it started to rain. (to walk)

• A: I was walking my dog when it started to rain.

1. Billy \_\_\_\_\_ his homework before tea. (to complete)

2. We \_\_\_\_\_ to meet at 4 p.m. (to agree)

3. Lynn called while I \_\_\_\_\_ for a bus. (to wait)

4. He is only here because you \_\_\_\_\_ him. (to invite)

5. We could see that the ship \_\_\_\_\_. (to sink)

6. John \_\_\_\_\_ into the room to deliver the news. (to burst)

7. She \_\_\_\_\_ her glasses under the sofa. (to find)

8. Only three students \_\_\_\_\_ their essays early. (to submit)

9. They left early because they \_\_\_\_\_ the film. (to enjoy / not)
10. The boy cried when a bee \_\_\_\_\_ him. (to sting)
11. I lost my phone while I \_\_\_\_\_ in Spain. (to relax)
12. Vera \_\_\_\_\_ to lock the door again. (to forget)
13. Ruth \_\_\_\_\_ for her mother, so could not go to the party. (to care)
14. The dog snarled because it \_\_\_\_\_ its toy. (to protect)
15. Fred \_\_\_\_\_ the car when he remembered his goggles. (to load)
16. We discovered our parents \_\_\_\_\_ too much for gas. (to pay)
17. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the time that the fire started? (you / to do)
18. When \_\_\_\_\_ how to turn on the fridge? (she / explain)
19. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the diamonds? (the thieves / to hide)
20. Why \_\_\_\_\_ during the meeting? (Julia / to laugh)

#### 17.1 Answers

#### 17.2 Complete or Process 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form. Remember, we use the past simple for actions completed in the past, while we use the past continuous for ongoing or interrupted processes. Use contractions where possible.

For example:

• Q: "Is the new cinema open yet?"

"I think so – when I looked, they \_\_\_\_\_ tickets online." (to sell)

• A: "Is the new cinema open yet?"

"I think so – when I looked, they were selling tickets online."

1. "Are you going on holiday this year?"

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ on one already." (to go)

1. "I heard you gave up science classes."

"Yes, I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ enough." (to learn / not)

1. Penny collected model buses for many years. She \_\_\_\_\_ to get enough to start a museum. (to try)

2. "Why did we stop using disposable cups?"

"Because management \_\_\_\_\_ to reduce plastic." (to decide)

1. Sparrows \_\_\_\_\_ in our loft. We could hear them above us. (to nest)

2. "What did that sign say?"

"I couldn't see, it \_\_\_\_\_ in the wind." (to sway)

1. The new restaurant was a massive success. Hundreds of customers \_\_\_\_\_ in the first two days. (to come)

2. "You're home early tonight."

"Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ back to watch the game." (to hurry)



1. Didn't that man look terribly cold? \_\_\_\_\_ all over? (he / to shake / not)

2. "Look at how many burgers I have!"

"Wow, \_\_\_\_\_ them all?" (to buy)

1. "Your father called to ask where you were. \_\_\_\_\_ him we were going to the beach?" (you / to tell / not)

2. "I heard they gave Michelle a first-class ticket to Bali."

"Yes, I think so – \_\_\_\_\_ on the site of a new hotel?" (she / to consult / not)

## 17.2 Answers

## 17.3 Complete or Process 3

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, we use the past perfect for actions completed at a particular point in the past, while we use the past perfect continuous for processes ongoing or interrupted at a particular point in the past.

For example:

• Q: We \_\_\_\_\_ the sink before John came home. (to fix)

• A: We had fixed the sink before John came home.

1. There were no biscuits left because she \_\_\_\_\_ them all. (to eat)

2. The guests surprised her, as their flight \_\_\_\_\_ early. (to arrive)

3. Our neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ for hours when we asked them to stop. (to shout)

4. All our lights went out. I \_\_\_\_\_ to pay the meter. (to forget)

5. Raccoons \_\_\_\_\_ our bins every night, so we added locks. (to raid)

6. She \_\_\_\_\_ a presentation but went out before it was finished. (to prepare)

7. He left the café because his friends \_\_\_\_\_ at him. (to laugh)

8. Anna \_\_\_\_\_ all the author's books except one. (to read)

9. Which book \_\_\_\_\_ before she found this one? (she / to read)

10. When \_\_\_\_\_ the new bar? It looked very vibrant. (they / to open)

## 17.3 Answers

## 17.4 Past States 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the past simple is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

• Q: The postman arrived when I \_\_\_\_\_ in the shower. (to be)

• A: The postman arrived when I was in the shower.

\_\_\_\_\_

1. Sheila \_\_\_\_\_ her dress during a storm. (to iron)

2. When we arrived at the hotel, it \_\_\_\_\_ closed. (to look)

3. Though they \_\_\_\_\_ dim, the lights were on. (to seem)

4. By 3 p.m. all his shares had risen; he \_\_\_\_\_ a good day. (to have)

5. No one moved: the man \_\_\_\_\_ a gun. (to have)
6. Her husband always bought books when he \_\_\_\_\_ bored. (to feel)
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ a bad dream, so I woke you. (to have)
8. At the time, they \_\_\_\_\_ the problem. (to understand / not)
9. Throughout July, we \_\_\_\_\_ to paint our shed. (to try / often)
10. Geoff \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio at 11 a.m. (to listen)
11. She had not fully decided, but she \_\_\_\_\_ the yellow curtains. (to prefer)
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ War and Peace but took a break to read a comic. (to read)
13. The man \_\_\_\_\_ a tie for so long that they closed the shop. (to choose)
14. As she entered the garage, Enid \_\_\_\_\_ a curious sound. (to hear)
15. Luke studied hard because he \_\_\_\_\_ to get top marks. (to aim)
16. Would work send me to Italy? It was exactly what I \_\_\_\_\_. (to want)
17. He waited for a decision. \_\_\_\_\_ his story? (they / to believe)
18. When we met Lana, \_\_\_\_\_ of smoke? (she / to smell)
19. The parrots surprised everyone – why \_\_\_\_\_ so angry? (they / to appear)
20. While I made tea, \_\_\_\_\_ in my diary? (you / to look)

#### 17.4 Answers

#### 17.5 Past States 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the past perfect is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

• Q: The guard investigated after he \_\_\_\_\_ that something was wrong. (to sense)

• A: The guard investigated after he had sensed that something was wrong.

1. I was tired because I \_\_\_\_\_ in the library. (to study)
2. Jolene \_\_\_\_\_ her backpack, but it was time to give it away. (to love)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ success while working at the bank. (to taste)
4. Two wolves \_\_\_\_\_ near the camp at night. (to lurk)
5. Though he \_\_\_\_\_ kind when he visited, he stole my ring. (to seem)
6. The shop \_\_\_\_\_ from a lack of donations, so they ran an advert to help. (to suffer)
7. Marius \_\_\_\_\_ in Lewes for thirteen years before he moved to Germany. (to live)
8. Claude \_\_\_\_\_ in Lewes for thirteen years when he was asked to move. (to live)
9. The cheese \_\_\_\_\_ fine in the morning, but was bad by lunch. (to smell)
10. Tammy \_\_\_\_\_ it was impossible until she discovered the answer. (to believe)

#### 17.5 Answers

#### 17.6 Past Sequences 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or past perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past perfect indicates an action was completed at a particular point in the past.

For example:

• Q: We \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) dinner before we \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) out.

• A: We had prepared dinner before we went out.

1. The hotel \_\_\_\_\_ (to cost) a lot because it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) the height of summer.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to exchange) letters only after they \_\_\_\_\_ (to separate).
3. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) a new car two days before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) us.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) my driving test once I \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) 40 lessons.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to ride her bike but the chain \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) the day before.
6. Miles \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) the guitar for three years before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) interest in it.
7. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) the water he \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) for?
8. Shelly \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) early because she \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete) her assignment.
9. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ (to prescribe) some medicine but Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) taking it after a day.
10. By the time the firemen \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive), the building \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) evacuated.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) boiled eggs but they \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) me beans on toast.
12. The bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) repairing because the river \_\_\_\_\_ (to flood) that morning.
13. The children who \_\_\_\_\_ (to achieve) the best results \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) hardest.
14. By the time the procession \_\_\_\_\_ (to start), thousands of people \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) to see the Queen.
15. Our aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (to retire) early because she \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) saving at an early age.

## 17.6 Answers

## 17.7 Past Sequences 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or past perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past continuous indicates an action was in progress at a particular point in the past, while the past perfect indicates the action was completed.

For example:

• Q: When I \_\_\_\_\_ every day, I felt very healthy. (to swim)

• A: When I was swimming every day, I felt very healthy.

1. They needed to hurry because the ice \_\_\_\_\_ . (to melt)
2. Roland could not find the toy because his friend \_\_\_\_\_ it. (to hide)
3. The pie \_\_\_\_\_, so I switched the oven off. (to burn)
4. Grandma \_\_\_\_\_, so we sent out a search party. (to escape)
5. Hillary knew a lot because she \_\_\_\_\_ all the books in the library. (to read)
6. I could not hear the news because my son \_\_\_\_\_ . (to talk)
7. Though Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his computer, the screen still did not work. (to repair)

8. She called her mum while she \_\_\_\_\_ home. (to walk)
9. The family \_\_\_\_\_ a garden party until they forecast rain. (to plan)
10. Claus could not go to the shops because Herman \_\_\_\_\_ his car that morning. (to borrow)
11. Though the game \_\_\_\_\_, the crowd did not go home. (to end)
12. We sat on the bench as the bus \_\_\_\_\_ a long time to arrive. (to take)
13. Neil stopped studying the letter; he \_\_\_\_\_ the answer. (to find)
14. When she \_\_\_\_\_ across Europe, Gina visited Switzerland. (to travel)
15. Because the tree \_\_\_\_\_, the road was blocked. (to fall)

#### 17.7 Answers

#### 17.8 Processes in the Past

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or past perfect continuous form. Remember, the past perfect continuous is used to demonstrate duration before a particular time in the past.

For example:

• Q: Her dress won the contest because she \_\_\_\_\_ it for three days. (to improve)

• A: Her dress won the contest because she had been improving it for three days.

1. By the time I left Romania, I \_\_\_\_\_ there for three years. (to teach)
2. While Jen \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes, Roy cleaned the table. (to wash)
3. We sheltered in the barn because it \_\_\_\_\_. (to rain)
4. The track was impassable as it \_\_\_\_\_ heavily. (to snow)
5. Alan \_\_\_\_\_ to his bank manager all morning. (to speak)
6. You would have heard my answer if you \_\_\_\_\_. (to listen)
7. I didn't use the sink as the tap \_\_\_\_\_ lately. (to leak)
8. The bus \_\_\_\_\_ funny noises, so we pulled over. (to make)
9. He could not drive home because he \_\_\_\_\_ wine. (to drink)
10. The cleaners \_\_\_\_\_, and decided it was time to take action. (to talk)

#### 17.8 Answers

#### 17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past simple form, without contractions.

#### Felix and the Umbrella

Felix (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to decide) to go the park last Saturday. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to see the pond and feed the ducks. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) a sunny day, so he needed an umbrella. The umbrella (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) in its usual place. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) his sister: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have / she) his umbrella? She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) no.

"(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave / you) it at school?" she replied.

He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not). He (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the umbrella when he (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) home on Thursday. He (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remember) leaving it to dry in the bathroom.

Felix (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) the bathroom door locked. His father (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) him the bath (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) replacing.

“(16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / you) my umbrella in there?” Felix (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask).

“Why (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put / not / you) it back by the door?” his dad (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to answer).

Felix (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to explain) that it had been wet. But the umbrella (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) in the bathroom when he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lock) the door, his dad (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) sure. (24) Where \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) it?

Felix (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) on the stairs, sad. It (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) possible to visit the park without the umbrella. What else (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / can / to do)?

Just as he (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) about to give up hope, his mother (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (return) from shopping. She (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the umbrella!

Felix (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grab) the umbrella from her startled hands, and (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to charge) outside, finally ready to visit the park. He (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) down the road, and (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop / not) for anything on the way. He (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at the pond, at long last. The ducks (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) there. (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (where / they / to go)?

Of course, Felix (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to understand), standing in the rain. The ducks (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like / not) the rain either. They (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) safe, inside, out of sight.

He would have to come back another day.

## 17.9 Answers

### 17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past continuous form, without contractions.

#### An Unsatisfactory Restaurant

When I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to search) for a new restaurant, I discovered Calbini's had opened in the town centre. They (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) a promotion that week: three courses for £12.95. Very cheap, as others nearby (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to provide) a main course for £18! (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the place / to sell) itself short? Or (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to offer) a worse service?

I visited on a Wednesday night with my colleague Gunther. He (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to decide what to eat on the way, from the online menu, but he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to discuss / not) it with me. Gunther is a quiet man.

On our arrival to the restaurant, the building (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to bustle) with people. Very busy for a Wednesday night! And the staff (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to handle / not) it well: waiters (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) around, hot-faced, and the man who welcomed us was tired and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to smile / not). Moreover, what (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to wear)? Not a smart uniform, but brightly patterned rags covered in stains. Why (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (the managers / dressing) their staff like clowns?

Our table was at the back of the room, next to the kitchen. The door (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open / and / to close) constantly. Even worse, we (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for fifteen minutes before a waiter gave us a menu. The writing was badly printed: (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (how / they / to expect) anyone to read this?

We used Gunther's online menu instead. By then, my stomach (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rumble). We had to give our orders twice because the waiter (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen / not). He (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) the other tables; with so many people there, (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to plan / he) a route of attack?

Eventually, our order was placed: for the main course, I (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the calzone and Gunther chose tortellini.

Our starters arrived – prawns for both of us. The prawns (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim) in brine. Undercooked. I stood and demanded to know if they (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) us garbage.

The waiters, of course, were too busy to notice. The other customers (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) noisier as the restaurant only got busier. And now, as I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand), I saw the food on other tables. All as bad as ours.

I told Gunther we (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) at once, only to discover he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) the vile prawns!

“It's not bad,” he told me. Clearly he (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come / not) with me.

He wasn't the only one happy. Other people (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to laugh). They (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) this cheap, busy restaurant! (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (the chefs / to put) something special in the food? Or (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (everyone / to question / not)

the quality because it was so cheap?

Either way, it (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fool / not) me. I gathered my things and left. The last time I saw him, Gunther (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to devour) my meal, too.

#### 17.10 Answers

#### 17.11 Mixed Past Perfect in Use

Complete the text below by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past perfect or past perfect continuous form, without contractions.

#### The Mystery of the Missing Sandwich

Lunch was approaching. Xavier (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) forward to his sandwich all morning. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) a special sandwich today: halloumi, salad with hummus that his wife (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make). She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) her own hummus for years, and it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to reach) perfection.

But when Xavier opened the fridge, the sandwich (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disappear). He stared in disbelief: he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) it there last night. His wife (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to comment) on it at 9 a.m., when she took milk for her tea, "That looks nice!" Where (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to go)?

Xavier was alone that morning. His wife (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the train to York for the day. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (someone / to sneak) in while he (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) TV? He (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear / not) anything, but he (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen / not) carefully.

Xavier searched the house for signs of an intruder – or clues to what (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) of the missing sandwich. His daughter's room was locked, because she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) for university a week ago. The other bedroom and the living room (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disturb / not).

The garden door was open, because Xavier (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) some fresh air. He stood checking the trees. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (a squirrel / to come) inside and opened the fridge? (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to notice / not) a genius thief?

After searching the garden for crumbs, Xavier returned to the kitchen. He (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find / not) any evidence of an intruder or the sandwich's fate. Why (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to play) the TV so loud? His distraction (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) some terrible person steal his amazing sandwich.

Finally, Xavier decided to call his wife and tell her about this tragedy. But first, he saw he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to receive) a message from her already.

"Thank you for preparing that lovely sandwich – it was everything I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to dream) of all morning!"

Xavier stared in horror. His wife (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) the sandwich was for her. She (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) it with her when she left! But he could only blame himself. Why (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to prepare / not) one for her, too?

#### 17.11 Answers

#### 17.12 Mixed Past Matching

Form logical past sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. The detective followed the clues to the creepy house.
- b. The detective was following clues when the thief struck again.
- c. The detective had followed many clues before he found the suspect.
- d. The detective had been following clues for three days while the thief was still out there.

1.

2.

3.

4.

### 17.12 Answers

### 17.13 Past Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple past tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which started first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: When his patient arrived, the doctor was having a coffee.

• A: A) the doctor was having B) his patient arrived

was having = past continuous, action was in process

arrived = past simple, action completed

1. Carl washed the dishes after he ate dinner.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She was preparing her speech when the ambassador arrived.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I had been studying for weeks by the time I took the exam.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The cat slept in the living room because Boris closed the door to the garden.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Helga was listening to music while she travelled on the bus.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. We could not enter the house because someone had taken the spare key.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. While he was fixing the sink, the post arrived.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Kim went to the gym after she finished work.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Our neighbours were talking loudly before they left this morning.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Roland returned the bike that he had borrowed.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What were you eating when you stayed in Japan?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Did he wipe his feet when he came in from the rain?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Had Jim been asking for volunteers when you sent the email?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who was playing the piano while we were painting in the attic?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The cake tasted incredible – what did they put in it?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 17.13 Answers

#### 17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

The following passage describes the everyday routine of Jen the Magician. Indicate which states are true at the listed times.

Jen the Magician wakes each day at 07:00. She has a shower before breakfast and she finishes eating by 07:30. She does not own a car, so Jen catches the 07:45 bus for a twenty-minute journey into town. She listens to music and checks her emails on the way. Jen starts her workday at the Friends Centre at 08:30, after buying a coffee. She entertains children for an hour, then walks for fifteen minutes to perform at a care home.

Jen usually has lunch at 12:00, at Buster's Burritos. She stays there for an hour, reading magazines about magic. Her friend Mary comes in around 12:30. They have tea, but do not eat together as Jen usually finishes her burrito before Mary arrives.

In the afternoon, Jen visits schools in the suburbs. She demonstrates magic to classes of children, and teaches them tricks. This occupies her until 16:00, at which time she travels back to the Friends Centre. Jen runs magic classes for adults from 17:00 until 19:30, then takes the bus home. Usually, she cooks dinner and eats before practising new tricks from 21:00 to 22:00. Then she settles down with a good book before falling asleep at 23:00.

For example:

At 07:45 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen had a shower.
- b. ... Jen was getting the bus. – TRUE
- c. ... Jen drove to work.
- d. ... Jen had eaten breakfast. – TRUE

1. At 07:55 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen was on the bus.
- b. ... Jen was listening to music.
- c. ... Jen was checking her make-up.
- d. ... Jen arrived at the Friends Centre.

1. At 09:35 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen was entertaining children.
- b. ... Jen had drunk a coffee.
- c. ... Jen was walking through town.
- d. ... Jen had started her second job.

1. At 12:45 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen had eaten a burrito.
- b. ... Jen was reading a magazine.



c. ... Jen had been reading a magazine.

d. ... Mary bought a burrito.

1. At 15:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was travelling to the Friends Centre.

b. ... Jen had been visiting schools for over two hours.

c. ... Jen was teaching adults.

d. ... Jen finished visiting schools.

1. At 19:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen finished work for the day.

b. ... Jen had taught magic to adults.

c. ... Jen was cooking dinner.

d. ... Jen went to get the bus.

1. At 10:30 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen practised new tricks.

b. ... Jen fell asleep.

c. ... Jen had eaten dinner.

d. ... Jen was reading a book.

17.14 Answers

17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses

To practise understanding of the different uses of the past tenses, the following passage contains many highlighted verb phrases. Choose which use is being demonstrated for each phrase from the list below.

- Past Action
- Past State / Possession / Sense
- Ongoing Past Process
- Past Action Completed Earlier
- Earlier Past State / Possession / Sense
- Earlier Ongoing Past Process

The Forgotten Book

Richard (1) was standing at the Petersons' door, trying to decide if he should knock. It (2) was cold and dark , and very late. The lights (3) were off . He (4) had noticed that from the road; everyone inside (5) had gone to bed. They (6) had probably been sleeping for hours. But he (7) needed to get his book back. He (8) had an exam the next day, and he needed to study. (9) Why had he left the book there this afternoon? Was it because (10) he had been flirting with Paula?

He (11) wished he (12) had not been so foolish. Last time this happened, her parents (13) had been angry at him for weeks. They (14) had been sleeping when he knocked then, too, and they (15) had shouted at him. He (16) did not want that to happen again.

He (17) chose not to knock.

He (18) began to walk quietly away. As he (19) was leaving , someone shouted from the window. It was Paula! She (20) was waving at him.

"Richard!" she (21) called out. "You left your book behind!"

He (22) smiled, this (23) was going well, after all.

Paula (24) threw the book, and it hit him on the nose. As he stumbled in pain, she (25) was laughing hysterically. He suspected that she (26) had done that on purpose.

#### 17.15 Answers

#### 17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

Complete the following text with the appropriate past forms, without contractions, using the information in brackets and the context of the text.

##### A New Pier

In April, the seaside town of Trilby-on-Sea (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to announce) plans to build a new pier. Before this decision, Trilby's council (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) with local charities and tourist organisations for six months. A Scottish architect (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to submit) designs including shops and rides. Most of the town (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to love) the designs, but the council were unsure. They (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to experience) budget cuts for the past few years.

Local residents (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to form) a group called Pier Alliance in January to convince the council. They (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to argue) that the new pier would bring wealth to Trilby. Visitor numbers (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to decrease) since two summers before, and everyone (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to find a solution. They remembered: Trilby's old pier (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to draw) massive crowds, many decades ago.

Newspaper clippings (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) that hundreds of people (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) on the pier daily. It (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) unstable in the 1980s, when the supports (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) damaged in a terrible storm. The council (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remove) the pier, saying they (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (can / not) afford to maintain it.

Technology (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to improve) a lot since then, so Pier Alliance (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to insist) the new pier would be cheaper and safer. By time of the final decision, they (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) ten different experts to speak to the council about it. In March, a gentleman from America (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) the town. He (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to research) piers for thirteen years and said he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) a better design than Trilby's new proposal. Slowly, Pier Alliance (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to persuade) the council. The men in charge (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to delay) the decision, so the town finally (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hold) a rally to demonstrate how support (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grow) for the new pier.

Finally, the council (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) in, and the April announcement (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lead) to great celebrations. The new pier (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) at last!

#### 17.16 Answers

#### 17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

Complete the following text with the appropriate past forms, without contractions, using the information in brackets and the context of the text.

##### The Pen Thief

Vicky was certain Clive (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) her pen. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to disappear) while she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to repair) the printer.

"What (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) ten minutes ago?" Vicky asked. "You (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit / not) at your desk, I am sure."

"(6) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to watch) me?" Clive replied.

She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look / not) his way, no. But he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) when she fixed the printer, not if he stole her pen. She (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) him to answer her question.

"I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) tea," he told her.

Vicky (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) a mug of tea on his desk. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to drink) it already? She (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to suspect) not. "You (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wander) around my desk, weren't you?"

"Absolutely not!" Clive protested. He (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) near her desk since Vicky (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to catch) him stealing her paper a month ago. She (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) him to stay away, and she (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) the results ever since.

(19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to let) her guard down too soon?

“(20) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to take) my pen?” she asked, plainly.

Clive shook his head, but (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) scared. “I did not, I would not, I never!”

He (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to admire) her pen ever since she bought it; it (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a platinum grip. Vicky decided he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) honest. But she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) nowhere with words. She (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grab) him quickly, and he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to cry) out when she found the pen in a pocket. He (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lie) all along!

Vicky (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) to her manager, but when she got there Clive (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave / already). The manager (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand) nearby. (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to watch) all along?

“What (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to steal) this time?” the manager asked.

Vicky (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) him the pen, and the manager sighed sadly. Clive (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) away with these thefts for too long. But they (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to expose) him, at last.

#### 17.17 Answers

##### 1. The Present in Use

#### 18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is mostly used for timeless actions while we use the present continuous for ongoing or interrupted temporary processes.

For example:

• Q: Brianne \_\_\_\_\_ green beans every week. (to buy)

• A: Brianne buys green beans every week.

1. My family usually \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at 7 p.m. (to eat)

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ for this meal. (to pay)

3. Jonas \_\_\_\_\_ at St Mary's High School. (to teach)

4. Our children \_\_\_\_\_ any instruments. (to play / not)

5. This bed always \_\_\_\_\_ noisily. (to creak)

6. We \_\_\_\_\_ a new house. (to buy)

7. Albert \_\_\_\_\_ hard enough – he can do better. (to try / not)

8. You \_\_\_\_\_ in my chair, please move. (to sit)

9. Every time I \_\_\_\_\_ Gran, she \_\_\_\_\_ me sweets. (to visit / to give)

10. Her friends \_\_\_\_\_ her this time. (to help / not)

11. This professor's course \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly each year. (to fill)

12. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ food at the soup kitchen on Tuesdays. (to serve)

13. I \_\_\_\_\_ to become a lawyer anymore. (to study / not)

14. Why \_\_\_\_\_ south each winter? (the geese / to fly)

15. How \_\_\_\_\_ through the mountains on her trip? (Jenna / to travel)

16. \_\_\_\_\_ a new tie for the wedding ceremony? (you / to choose)

17. Which shops \_\_\_\_\_ non-dairy chocolates? (to offer / not)

18. What \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach right now? (to happen)
19. Who \_\_\_\_\_ that bright pink car? (to own)
20. Where \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend? (your parents / to stay)

#### 18.1 Answers

#### 18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

Complete the following sentences in the present simple or the present continuous form, without contractions, using the information in brackets.

For example:

• Q: Alexa gets up at 6 a.m. every day. Today, \_\_\_\_\_. (later)

• A: Today, Alexa is getting up later.

1. Dominic is usually so nice. Why \_\_\_\_\_? (naughty)
2. The sun is setting very late this month. Usually, \_\_\_\_\_. (earlier)
3. She refuses to say sorry. She \_\_\_\_\_. (to apologise / not)
4. Harry just climbed a tree. He \_\_\_\_\_. (to swing / a branch)
5. You will love the way Deidre cooks potatoes. She always \_\_\_\_\_. (to fry / them)
6. Mia has not given an answer yet – she \_\_\_\_\_. (to think / it)
7. I never usually buy nectarines for myself, but today I \_\_\_\_\_. (to buy / some / for my mother)
8. The boy is watching TV. He \_\_\_\_\_. (to bounce / not / his ball)
9. "Where is my magazine?"

"I think it \_\_\_\_\_." (to lie / by the sofa)

1. "We are decorating our living room."

"Oh, what colour \_\_\_\_\_?" (to paint)

1. "Mr Harris is not coming to dinner."

"Strange. He \_\_\_\_\_." (to cancel / not / often)

1. "The volleyball team surprised everyone by reaching the final."

"\_\_\_\_\_?" (to win / not / normally)

1. "\_\_\_\_\_ a bottle of wine?" (to hold / you)

"No, it's a bottle of olive oil."

1. The building supervisor does not allow smoking. We \_\_\_\_\_! (to break / the rules)
2. "I drew this picture."

"Ah, you \_\_\_\_\_!" (to improve / quickly)

#### 18.2 Answers

#### 18.3 Present States

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is used for states, for existence, possession and senses, even in temporary conditions.

For example:

- Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ you have a new puppy. (to hear)
  - A: I hear you have a new puppy.
1. This fish \_\_\_\_\_ strange, is it old? (to taste)
  2. Caroline \_\_\_\_\_ very elegant in her new dress. (to look)
  3. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ a biography of Julius Caesar. (to read)
  4. I \_\_\_\_\_ your banana, thank you. (to want / not)
  5. The cows \_\_\_\_\_ on all the flowers. (to stomp)
  6. Leo \_\_\_\_\_ to understand algebra. (to struggle)
  7. Our neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ very quiet today. (to seem)
  8. Laila and Howard \_\_\_\_\_ their peanuts. (to share / not)
  9. Finley \_\_\_\_\_ all the best Xbox games currently available. (to have)
  10. The customers \_\_\_\_\_ that they are being given a good deal. (to doubt)
  11. Eli \_\_\_\_\_ everyone a round of beers. (to get)
  12. I might not go to Calcutta – I \_\_\_\_\_ second thoughts about it. (to have)
  13. Though she needs a new chair now, Anna \_\_\_\_\_ all the options first. (to compare)
  14. We \_\_\_\_\_ to deliver the table by Friday. (to promise)
  15. Why \_\_\_\_\_ to be so dirty? (my hands / appear)
  16. \_\_\_\_\_ new batteries too, now? (that clock / to need)
  17. Who \_\_\_\_\_ to my radio show this week? (to listen)
  18. What \_\_\_\_\_ to school today? (you / to wear)
  19. \_\_\_\_\_ that singing bird? (Maria / to hear / not)
  20. Why \_\_\_\_\_ building dams? (beavers / to love)

### 18.3 Answers

### 18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

Complete the following sentences with either the present simple or the present continuous form, without contractions, using the information provided.

For example:

- Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ (to wash) my car every Tuesday.
  - A: I wash my car every Tuesday. (repeated event)
1. She's frustrated because she \_\_\_\_\_. (to clean up / always)
  2. The beach \_\_\_\_\_ crowded today. (to be)
  3. It \_\_\_\_\_ dark, I don't think we should walk home. (to get)
  4. They usually \_\_\_\_\_ in the dining room. (to eat)
  5. When you flick a switch, the light \_\_\_\_\_ on. (to come)
  6. This cheese \_\_\_\_\_ awful. (to smell)

7. "Now, I \_\_\_\_\_ this store open!" (to declare)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ for new books to read. (to look / always)
9. Our grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ twice a month. (to visit)
10. They say actions \_\_\_\_\_ louder than words. (to speak)
11. The swimmers \_\_\_\_\_ for the gold medal. (to compete)
12. Gary is not home, he \_\_\_\_\_ the dog. (to walk)
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ we take a different route home. (to propose)
14. Seagull numbers \_\_\_\_\_ because tourists \_\_\_\_\_ food around. (to increase, to leave)
15. Look, that tree \_\_\_\_\_ in the wind! (to sway)

#### 18.4 Answers

#### 18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past simple or present perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the past simple only tells us something was completed in the past, while the present perfect shows it is relevant to the present.

For example:

- Q: You \_\_\_\_\_ the door open – please close it. (to leave)
  - A: You have left the door open – please close it.
1. This bread \_\_\_\_\_ mouldy. (to go)
  2. Alison \_\_\_\_\_ a website this morning. (to create)
  3. He \_\_\_\_\_ the floor before dinner. (to sweep / not)
  4. The boiler \_\_\_\_\_ again, so there is no hot water. (to break)
  5. I cannot come to class. Last time, Mr Rogers \_\_\_\_\_ me not to come back. (to tell)
  6. Nathan has passed his driving test because he \_\_\_\_\_. (to quit / not)
  7. My cousin hates spiders, so he \_\_\_\_\_ all of his windows. (to seal)
  8. The garden \_\_\_\_\_ with the recent hot weather. (to bloom)
  9. The sailors \_\_\_\_\_ quickly because the winds were favourable. (to move)
  10. Chloe is visiting, but she \_\_\_\_\_ how long she will stay. (to say / not)
  11. My phone battery \_\_\_\_\_, can I use your charger? (to die)
  12. She could not find her purse, so \_\_\_\_\_ with her credit card. (to pay)
  13. The school want to speak to me because my essay \_\_\_\_\_ the competition. (to win)
  14. Did you receive the coffee machine you \_\_\_\_\_? (to order)
  15. We put our poster up in the hall, \_\_\_\_\_ it? (you / to see)
  16. \_\_\_\_\_ the candles when you went shopping yesterday? (you / to buy)
  17. \_\_\_\_\_ in your assignment yet? (you / to give / not)
  18. Why \_\_\_\_\_ all the baguettes? There are none left! (that woman / to take)
  19. Lola is telling everyone about her new job, \_\_\_\_\_ to you about it? (you / to speak)

20. \_\_\_\_\_ (the farmer / to deliver) that milk, or have you been to the shop?

### 18.5 Answers

### 18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the past continuous or present perfect continuous form. Remember, the past continuous tells us an action was ongoing in the past, while the present perfect continuous shows an action started in the past is ongoing in the present.

For example:

• Q: Our relatives \_\_\_\_\_ us every Christmas since 1987.

• A: Our relatives have been visiting us every Christmas since 1987.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ to pottery classes earlier this year. (to go)
2. Tristan \_\_\_\_\_ fake money and now he is in jail. (to print)
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ too hard this month, take a break. (to work)
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ her dad build the shed until Friday. (to help / not)
5. The teenagers \_\_\_\_\_ the streets last week. Are they back? (to clean)
6. Hundreds of thousands of people \_\_\_\_\_ the petition. It could reach a million by tomorrow. (to sign)
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ lessons since January, to improve our pronunciation. (to take)
8. The king \_\_\_\_\_ his responsibilities, so a committee was formed. (to avoid)
9. The ivy \_\_\_\_\_ over our wall. We must cut it back before it gets worse. (to spread)
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ the window – it stinks in here! (to open / not)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ here before me? (you / to wait)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ this exhibit for long? (the museum / to show)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you today? (the children / to bother)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ when you used the bike? (the wheel / to squeak)

### 18.6 Answers

### 18.7 Past Present Emphasis

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the past simple or present perfect form, without contractions. The past simple may be used instead of the present perfect when we wish to emphasise completion or to emphasise the subject that completed an action.

For example:

• Q: Yes, the dishes are clean. I \_\_\_\_\_ them, not Harry. (to wash)

• A: Yes, the dishes are clean. I washed them, not Harry.

1. Who left this bag here? It \_\_\_\_\_ a stain. (to leave)
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ me to come to the game. (to convince / not)
3. I know Germany well, because I \_\_\_\_\_ there for six months last year. (to live)
4. The car just made an awful noise – I think we \_\_\_\_\_ a log. (to hit)
5. She was sure about it: Simon \_\_\_\_\_ the vase. (to break)

6. I could not bring the book home. The librarian \_\_\_\_\_ to lend it to me. (to refuse)
7. This kitchen is unsanitary. Rats \_\_\_\_\_ the cellar. (to infest)
8. My phone \_\_\_\_\_ working. Can I borrow yours? (to stop)
9. What is in the oven? \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes? (you / to cook)
10. Who designed these wonderful curtains? \_\_\_\_\_ them? (you / to do)
11. Someone is stealing my socks. \_\_\_\_\_ them? (Billie / to take)
12. How is your degree? \_\_\_\_\_ any easier? (it / to get)

#### 18.7 Answers

#### 18.8 Duration in the Present 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present continuous or present perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present continuous tells us an action is ongoing now, while the present perfect continuous shows an ongoing action started in the past.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ to download this movie for hours. (to try)

• A: I have been trying to download this movie for hours.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ this washing machine for fifteen years. (to use)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ to work for the whole week, starting today. (to walk)
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ which scarf to buy. (to consider)
4. The couple \_\_\_\_\_ for a while. (to shop)
5. William \_\_\_\_\_ computer games for very long. (to play / not)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ me since I came in – stop it! (to watch)
7. Alice \_\_\_\_\_ doughnuts every day this week, we have decided. (to buy)
8. That man \_\_\_\_\_ hats at a discount for the next two hours. (to sell)
9. You've been quiet. \_\_\_\_\_ all morning? (you / to read)
10. I need the car later. \_\_\_\_\_ it all day? (you / to use)
11. She has been unwell for weeks. \_\_\_\_\_ her medicine? (she / to take / not)
12. Why \_\_\_\_\_ me so many questions right now? (he / to ask)

#### 18.8 Answers

#### 18.9 Duration in the Present 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present perfect or present perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the present perfect is used for states and to discuss occasional events, while the present perfect continuous shows an ongoing process.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ to Vilnius many times. (to go)

• A: I have gone to Vilnius many times.

1. Martha \_\_\_\_\_ six shops in Brighton. (to open)



2. We \_\_\_\_\_ in hotels many times this year. (to stay)
3. The sea \_\_\_\_\_ warmer all summer. (to get)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ to class a single time this week. (to go / not)
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes twice today. (to wash)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ as many letters as I used to, and hope that will change. (to receive / not)
7. Claudia \_\_\_\_\_ on her brother for fifteen minutes. (to spy)
8. Eliot \_\_\_\_\_ any television since yesterday. (to watch / not)
9. Margaret \_\_\_\_\_ her geography textbook since last Wednesday. (to study)
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes in the wrong cupboard for months. (to put)
11. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ his teacher an apple once a week this year. (to give)
12. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to school almost every day this year, but sometimes walks. (to take)
13. How many times \_\_\_\_\_ they would repair the road? (they / to say)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ in Oxford recently? (you / to bowl)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ her hair short for a long time? (she / to cut)
16. How long \_\_\_\_\_ for? Get them some water! (the clients / to wait)

#### 18.9 Answers

#### 18.10 Duration in the Present 3

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the present perfect or present perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember that the present perfect is used for states, possession and senses.

For example:

• Q: I \_\_\_\_\_ in Hamburg for sixteen months. (to live)

• A: I have lived in Hamburg for sixteen months.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ each other for twenty years. (to love)
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ in magic ever since they saw the Great Roberto perform. (to believe)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to rap music for the past three weeks. (to listen)
4. Axel \_\_\_\_\_ tired since he woke up. (to be)
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ Victorian ghost stories all night. (to read)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ during this holiday. (to relax / not)
7. Doris \_\_\_\_\_ all the children's speeches today. (to hear)
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ in his shed all morning? (Carter / to do)
9. How long \_\_\_\_\_ about the secret passage for? (they / to know)
10. Why \_\_\_\_\_ everything he has been saying? (we / to understand / not)
11. How long \_\_\_\_\_ on our fence for? (that fox / to sit)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ restless for long? (the villagers / to seem)

#### 18.10 Answers

### 18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

The following sentences are in the present continuous or present perfect continuous forms, which can be used to emphasise tasks or continuous temporary states. Indicate if the sentences are correct or incorrect. Try to explain why.

For example:

- Q: Clarice has been knowing her friends for years.
  - A: Incorrect – to know is not typically temporary
1. Fred is constantly practising the violin at night.
  2. Violet is always asking the wrong questions.
  3. You are not understanding the question, let me explain.
  4. The women are never being unkind to animals.
  5. She is looking rather elegant today.
  6. The garage has been smelling strange lately.
  7. This parade is taking place each winter.
  8. Our streets flood because leaves are blocking the drains.
  9. Are you seeing what's happening outside?
  10. Is he believing in aliens?
  11. Is Mario liking the shirt we gave him?
  12. Are you loving this weather or what?

### 18.11 Answers

### 18.12 Mixed Present Matching

Form logical present tense sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. I drink tea because it tastes great.
- b. I am drinking tea because I am cold.
- c. I have drunk the tea that you gave me.
- d. I have been drinking tea since I was seven.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

### 18.12 Answers

### 18.13 Present Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple present tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which started first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: I am attending college because I have finished school.

• A: A) I have finished B) I am attending

have finished = present perfect, action completed with present result

am attending = present continuous, action in progress now

1. I live in Surrey, but I commute to London every day.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My sister is asking if the teacher has marked her paper.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. He is reading because the TV is not working.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. We have been visiting this campsite for years, but it is getting more crowded.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My mother cooks an excellent soup which has been in the family for generations.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The hotel seems empty – perhaps the guests are sleeping.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. They are repairing the door I have been complaining about since Tuesday.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Lottie has learned to walk and she is wandering about everywhere.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What are you watching? Have you seen it before?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I want to get to Kings Cross – is this bus going the right way?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

### 18.13 Answers

### 18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ), without contractions, using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text.

#### A Difficult Interview

Emma (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) for the Daily Sentinel newspaper. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on a feature article about pop icon, Natalie Reid. It is a very important piece for the newspaper, because Reid (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) one of the most famous musicians in the world, and she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to grant) Emma an exclusive interview. Emma (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to research) the singer for a month, to make sure she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) an informed set of questions to ask.

Today, Emma (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to edit) her interview questions. Some of her examples (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to include):

What (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to like) to do in your free time?

How (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (fame / to change) your life?

Where (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to get) your ideas from?

How long (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to write) music for?

What (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to like / not) about being famous?

Emma (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) worried, because these questions (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) too ordinary. (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (Reid / to hear / not) them a hundred times before? Reid (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to tour) the world for the past six months. She (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) thousands of people who probably asked the same things.

Emma (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to ask something different. Reid (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) from an unusual background; she (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in a poor neighbourhood all her life, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) generously to charities. The singer (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fund / now) the construction of new housing. But Emma (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fear) asking questions about these topics, because she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit / not) Reid's neighbourhood herself. The area (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to frighten) her. And (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (her readers / to care) about these things? On social media, Reid's fans (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise / only) questions about her relationships for the past few months.

(29) \_\_\_\_\_ (Emma / to make) things too complicated?

No, Emma (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think), now, it's time to get on with it. She (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) foolish to avoid these topics. And she (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to waste) time worrying about it. Most likely, Reid (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for someone to ask the important questions!

#### 18.14 Answers

#### 18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

Barry works as a part-time school caretaker. The following passage describes what he did yesterday. Mostly, he followed a typical routine. Convert this passage to the present tense to describe his everyday routine or variations from it. The first two sentences have been done for you.

- Q: Barry got to work at 6 p.m. He talked with Year 2 teacher, Mrs Jones, as she was still in the school.
- A: Barry gets to work at 6 p.m. He talks with the teachers, if they are still in the school.

Barry started work by vacuuming all the carpets. He lifted the chairs onto tables to clear the floors, and emptied the bins in each room. Barry wiped the boards clean, which is sometimes necessary.

Then, Barry swept the tiled floors in the corridors and halls. Because it was Friday, he mopped these floors. He used two buckets, one for soapy water and one for rinsing.

Once all the floors were finished, Barry cleaned the washrooms. He sprayed them with disinfectant and scrubbed the toilets. He replaced the soap and toilet paper because they had run out.

After his cleaning duties were finished, Barry took a break at the same time as the headmistress, as usual. He made tea for himself and the headmistress, because he got to the common room first. If the headmistress had arrived first, she would have prepared the tea. Barry would have read a book during the break, like he usually does, but he forgot to bring one, so he listened to the radio.

After his break, Barry focused on more varied tasks. Firstly, he completed repairs on doors, furniture and fences. If it were winter, Barry would spread grit outside to stop the paths getting slippery. As it is summer, he cut weeds and pruned hedges.

Barry would normally finish work at 9 p.m., but he stayed later because there were extra tasks to do. A teacher needed help moving furniture and preparing equipment for a class. The teacher and Barry did these tasks together. He will get paid extra for this.

#### 18.15 Answers

#### 18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ), without contractions, using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text. Note that there is flexibility between the present simple and the present perfect for reporting stories live; mostly the present perfect is used when we reflect on the result of an action, rather than what is happening in the moment.

#### Doves United vs The Firecats: Live Commentary

You (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to join) us live for an exciting match between two women's soccer teams, Doves United and The Firecats. They (2)

\_\_\_\_\_ (to field) strong teams today, and both teams (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to perform) brilliantly to reach this semi-final. They (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to compete) since June 1st for a chance at the championship trophy, and today's match decides who (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to qualify) for the final!

Doves United (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) the game: they (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the kick-off now. The Firecats (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to chase) them right away; oh my, these women (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move) fast!

United's captain, Morales, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the ball, and she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sprint) up the right flank. But she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to face) trouble! Firecats defender Lux (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close) on Morales. They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to clash)! Lux (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to steal) the ball and she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a break. The United team (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) spread out; they (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) her through!

Lux (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to race) into the penalty box – only the keeper to beat!

Oh no! Lux is down! United's centre-half (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hit) her from behind. An awful foul! Lux (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to roll) on the floor, she could be injured. The referee (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) play, and The Firecats (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) in their opponent's half. Someone is shouting – someone else is on the floor. Another player (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to push) her over! Things (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) out of hand.

The referee (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to blow) her whistle! She (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to show) the red card to United's centre-half. And to a Firecats player! (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (the referee / to handle) this well? Yes. It (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) she has everything under control again.

The players (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to calm) down. Play will resume with a penalty.

Lux (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the penalty spot, apparently she (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to break / not) any bones. This is an exciting pairing – Lux (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to score) eight out of her last nine penalties in this tournament, but the United keeper (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) nine out of her last ten! No doubt they (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (both / to practise) very hard. Lux (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to step) back from the ball, ready to strike! She (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (to shoot) – she (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to score)!

One minute in, The Firecats (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) the lead! This game (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to promise) to be thrilling.

## 18.16 Answers

### 18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

Choose the best present form ( simple , continuous , perfect or perfect continuous ) using the information provided in brackets and the context of the text. Note that there can be some flexibility between the present simple and the present perfect for following instructions; mostly the present perfect is used when it is important that the action is completed. Use contractions where possible.

#### How to Bake a Perfect Loaf

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to want) to make a perfect loaf of bread? This recipe (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to deliver) great results.

To make life easier, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prepare) your ingredients in advance: 500g of strong flour, 8g of yeast, 300ml of water and 10g of salt. These simple ingredients (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to combine) for a basic but delicious loaf.

Before you (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin), a word about temperature. When it is hot, the mixture (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to react) faster. On colder days, the recipe (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) longer to complete. For balance, we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) the mixture to be about 75 degrees. If you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to warm) the water, you can manage this temperature.

Step one: combine the water and the yeast in a bowl. The flour (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) in next, then the salt on top of the flour. This order is important, because the salt (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to affect) the yeast if they (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to touch) directly.

Mix the ingredients: you can use a spoon, but hand mixing (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) you a better feel for the results.

(14) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / mix) it thoroughly now? (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to create) a dough! Leave it for about 20 minutes: during this time, the flour (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to absorb) water.

Next: how (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to develop) gluten? This recipe (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to require / not) kneading, but uses folding instead. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to place) the dough on a floured counter and fold one side to about halfway in. Turn 90 degrees and fold again. It (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) two or three turns, usually, until you have a tight ball. (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be / not) that easy?

(22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) the dough back in the bowl, covered by a towel, and leave it to rise for about 90 minutes. When the dough (23)

\_\_\_\_\_ (to become) light and airy, it is ready. Back on the counter, where it (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) to be folded again, like a letter. Fold to the centre, then turn, until (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to form) a tight parcel.

Now, the dough (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rise) one more time – leave it for another hour to 90 minutes. When you press it with a finger, (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (the dough / spring) back? Then it is ready.

We (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to use) a Dutch Oven to do the cooking, preheated to 475 degrees. A Dutch Oven (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to trap) steam with a lid, for the best results. The dough (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) in seam side up. The seam (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) during cooking to give a nice rustic look.

Put the Dutch Oven and dough in the oven for 25 minutes, then (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to remove) the lid. Another 15–20 minutes in the oven (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to produce) a golden loaf with a firm crust. A properly cooked loaf (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a hollow thump when you tap the base.

(35) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to sound) done? (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat / not) it yet! (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (to rest) the loaf on a wire rack for 30 minutes, so the interior crumb can set, making it easier to cut. Congratulations: (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to bake) a perfect loaf!

## 18.17 Answers

### 1. The Future in Use

#### 19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the will or to be going to future simple forms, without contractions. Remember, will is mostly used for recently decided actions and predictions, while to be going to is used for planned events and to emphasise determination.

For example:

• Q: Someone is calling – I \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.

• A: Someone is calling – I will answer the phone.

1. Because Lucas is tired, Regina \_\_\_\_\_ him a tea. (to make)
2. This Halloween, Tina \_\_\_\_\_ as a zombie. (to dress)
3. My brother is outside, \_\_\_\_\_ him in? (you / to let)
4. Those men have used the wrong timber. The house \_\_\_\_\_. (to collapse)
5. Claire thinks her boss \_\_\_\_\_ her latest report. (to like)
6. Is that a woodpecker in the tree? I \_\_\_\_\_ my binoculars to check. (to get)
7. Despite the cold summer, the building managers \_\_\_\_\_ the heating until October. (not / to activate)
8. We've been looking forward to our train journey; we \_\_\_\_\_ across the Swiss Alps. (to travel)
9. When Paul gets back from Scotland, he \_\_\_\_\_ a new job. (to start)
10. Tim's parents said he cannot go outside for a month, so he \_\_\_\_\_ computer games every weekend. (to play)
11. I was planning to go climbing, but I \_\_\_\_\_ and see if this rain stops! (to wait)
12. The swimming pool is always busy; it \_\_\_\_\_ busy today, I am sure. (to be)
13. "Where are you going with that knife?"  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of birthday cake." (to cut)
1. "What drink would you like?"  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ a cocktail." (to have)
1. "Where can I complain about the smell in our room?"

"The lady behind the counter \_\_\_\_\_ you." (to help)

### 19.1 Answers

### 19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the present simple or present continuous for future simple meaning, without contractions. Remember, the present simple is mostly used for scheduled events, while the present continuous is used for arrangements.

For example:

• Q: I need a new computer, \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow? (the shop / open)

• A: I need a new computer, is the shop open tomorrow?

1. Dawn \_\_\_\_\_ her parents next Tuesday. (to visit)
2. Our bus \_\_\_\_\_ at 12 noon. (to arrive)
3. The family \_\_\_\_\_ home next Christmas. (to stay)
4. Ian \_\_\_\_\_ during the following three weekends. (to work / not)
5. The meeting this afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ every department. (to involve)
6. Hurry, the play \_\_\_\_\_ at 8 p.m. and I don't want to be late! (to start)
7. Everyone is waiting for Cathy, because she \_\_\_\_\_ champagne. (to bring)
8. The ghost \_\_\_\_\_ at sundown, we must be ready. (to appear)
9. Construction work \_\_\_\_\_ on the new apartment block tomorrow. (to begin)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ to the dance on Thursday? (you / to come)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the speech this evening? (Adrian / to give)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ for a piano class in the morning? (we / to meet)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ at three or four? (the train / to leave)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ us for dinner? (your new girlfriend / to join)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ today? (the post office / to deliver)

### 19.2 Answers

### 19.3 Mixed Future Simple

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in the most appropriate future simple form: present simple, present continuous, will or to be going to. Use contractions where possible.

For example:

• Q: There is a terrible draft here – I \_\_\_\_\_ to sit somewhere else. (to move)

• A: "There is a terrible draft here – I'll move to sit somewhere else."

1. "We need volunteers to clean the beach."

"I \_\_\_\_\_ it if I have time." (to do)

1. "Izzy is on holiday next week."

"Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere nice?" (she / to travel)

1. "Will our bus get to the airport in time?"

"I think so, check in \_\_\_\_\_ in half an hour." (to close)

1. "Have you heard the weather forecast?"

"Yes, they said it \_\_\_\_\_." (to rain)

1. "My aunt is in town this Friday. What should we do?"

"The museum \_\_\_\_\_ an exhibition on Victorian clothes, you could try that." (to run)

1. "What time should we leave for the game on Saturday?"

"Early – the rail workers \_\_\_\_\_ on strike this weekend." (to be)

1. "I need to go home and feed my cats. What time does this show \_\_\_\_\_ ?" (to finish)
2. "Do you know we've run out of printer paper?"

"Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ some this afternoon." (to buy)

1. "Are you okay? You look very pale."

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ sick!" (to be)

1. "Can you come with me to the ballet performance?"

"Unfortunately not, I \_\_\_\_\_ golf this afternoon." (to play)

1. "Have you seen the mess on our window?"

"No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it in a minute." (to clean)

1. "Why are you writing in such a rush?"

"Because the show \_\_\_\_\_ in half an hour!" (to start)

1. "Shall we check out Dover Castle tomorrow?"

"I can't, I \_\_\_\_\_ all day tomorrow." (to work)

1. "Does anyone want to go for an ice cream?"

"Me, I \_\_\_\_\_ !" (to come)

### 19.3 Answers

### 19.4 Future Processes

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future simple or future continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future simple is mostly used for planned or expected actions while we use the future continuous for ongoing or interrupted temporary processes. For the future simple, will, to be going to or the present continuous can mostly be used flexibly here.

For example:

- Q: Theo \_\_\_\_\_ across Devon all spring. (to cycle)
  - A: Theo will be cycling across Devon all spring. (or is going to be cycling)
1. I \_\_\_\_\_ you in the park later. (to meet)
  2. He \_\_\_\_\_ me his car. (to sell)
  3. They \_\_\_\_\_ hockey for hours. (to play)
  4. It \_\_\_\_\_ colder over the next two weeks. (to get)
  5. The college \_\_\_\_\_ new students in September. (to accept)



6. We are meeting up and travelling together – our friends \_\_\_\_\_ at the station for us. (to wait / already)
7. Rebecca \_\_\_\_\_ in the Hilton while she's in town. (to stay)
8. The mayor \_\_\_\_\_ the new leisure centre this Wednesday. (to open)
9. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late. (to cook)
10. Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she \_\_\_\_\_ before then. (to eat)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ this Sunday? (you / to work)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ all the bread before 6 a.m.? (they / to deliver)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ at 3 p.m., in case we need to call? (she / to drive)
14. \_\_\_\_\_ in Scotland all weekend? (Frank / to hike)
15. \_\_\_\_\_ the right choice next time? (I / to make)

#### 19.4 Answers

#### 19.5 Future Sequences

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future simple or future perfect form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect indicates an action will be completed at a particular point in the future.

For example:

• Q: We will \_\_\_\_\_ the door by lunchtime. (to paint)

• A: We will have painted the door by lunchtime.

1. Shirley will \_\_\_\_\_ her exams in June. She will \_\_\_\_\_ by August. (to take / to graduate)
2. Our parents will \_\_\_\_\_ at Christmas. They will \_\_\_\_\_ presents. (to visit / to bring)
3. You are going to \_\_\_\_\_ some new shoes. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ enough money? (to buy / to earn)
4. The tide will \_\_\_\_\_ highest at 11 a.m., because it will \_\_\_\_\_ all the way in. (to be / to come)
5. Brenda is going to \_\_\_\_\_ a cake before the party. She will \_\_\_\_\_ it from scratch. (to bake / to make)
6. Ulrich will \_\_\_\_\_ his test by 1 p.m. We are going to \_\_\_\_\_ him a party. (to pass / to throw)
7. Workers will \_\_\_\_\_ the high street this evening. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ traffic. (to close / to divert)
8. I hope the weather will \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. They say it is going to \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning. (to improve / to rain)
9. Are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ Jon about the wedding soon? By next week, he will \_\_\_\_\_ it from someone else. (to tell / to hear)
10. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ your door before you go away? You will not \_\_\_\_\_ with it in that state, will you? (to repair / to leave)

#### 19.5 Answers

#### 19.6 Duration in the Future 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future continuous or future perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect continuous is used to indicate duration with reference to a specific point of future time.

For example:

• Q: By the time they arrive, they will \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours. (to drive)

• A: By the time they arrive, they will have been driving for three hours.

1. My parents will \_\_\_\_\_ together for 20 years this October. (to live)

2. The fishermen will \_\_\_\_\_ in 15 minutes. (to return)
3. You are going to \_\_\_\_\_ all evening. (to study)
4. He will \_\_\_\_\_ to fix the sink all day before he admits he needs help. (to try)
5. By the time of the competition, Sally is going to \_\_\_\_\_ for eighteen months. (to train)
6. I am going to \_\_\_\_\_ for three days, so I won't be able to call. (to travel)
7. The cat will \_\_\_\_\_ in the loft during the party. (to sleep)
8. Inflation will \_\_\_\_\_ for five months by February. (to rise)
9. Colin is going to \_\_\_\_\_ all day if he reaches the seaside by sunset. (to walk)
10. At midnight, we will \_\_\_\_\_ the fireworks. (to watch)
11. At noon, we will \_\_\_\_\_ for Robert for an hour. (to wait)
12. The days will \_\_\_\_\_ shorter in September. (to get)

#### 19.6 Answers

#### 19.7 Duration in the Future 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets in either the future perfect or future perfect continuous form, without contractions. Remember, the future perfect continuous is used to indicate an ongoing future process, while the future perfect tells us an action will be completed.

For example:

- Q: The guard will \_\_\_\_\_ for seven hours by the end of his shift. (to work)
  - A: The guard will have been working for seven hours by the end of his shift.
1. The eggs will \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge for a month by the weekend. (to sit)
  2. I will \_\_\_\_\_ my essay by 5 p.m. (to write)
  3. Eric will \_\_\_\_\_ Vikings for two years before he writes his book. (to research)
  4. The tourists will \_\_\_\_\_ all the pubs in town before they go home. (to visit)
  5. You won't see any birds, because they will \_\_\_\_\_ south for the winter. (to migrate)
  6. Before long, Ola will \_\_\_\_\_ for her missing sock for a week. (to search)
  7. We will \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours when Jim joins us. (to talk)
  8. If it survives much longer, the tree will \_\_\_\_\_ for fifteen years. (to grow)
  9. By the time we leave school, our teacher will \_\_\_\_\_ us everything. (to teach)
  10. Peggy will \_\_\_\_\_ a pony for three months by her birthday. (to demand)

#### 19.7 Answers

#### 19.8 Mixed Future Matching

Form logical future tense sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. We will cook dinner after your father gets back.
- b. We will be cooking dinner during the radio broadcast.

- c. We will have cooked dinner and have it ready before your father arrives.
- d. We will have been cooking dinner for an hour when your father gets back.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

19.8 Answers

19.9 Future Time Sequences

The following sentences include multiple future tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: We will buy a new boat after our old one breaks.

• A: A) our old one breaks B) we will buy

- 1. They will come inside after they finish playing.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. The party will end once the last guest leaves.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. We will have been married for ten years if we last another summer!

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. If the van is fixed by tomorrow, Tim is going to drive.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. When the company releases the game, they will have been working on it for three years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. She will visit her grandmother while she is studying in York.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. If the banks calls, tell them I will come back in an hour.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. The match will start as soon as the referee arrives.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. They will deliver the table while we are preparing dinner.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. Our luggage will be cleared after they have inspected it.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

- 1. Why are you going to Scotland while we will be in England?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will Larry collect the painting before the shop closes?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who is attending the conference in spring? Your passes will have been ordered by next week.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does the train leave after 9 a.m.? Otherwise we will have to pay for a peak ticket.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. When Aunt Gina leaves, will she have seen everyone in town?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 19.9 Answers

#### 19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form, without contractions (including present tenses for future meaning).

1. After you take a nap, you \_\_\_\_\_ a lot better. (to feel)
2. You need to finish your work before you \_\_\_\_\_ home at 6 p.m. (to go)
3. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ bread from the corner shop when it opens. (to buy)
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting. (to have)
5. Before we start our lesson, we \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday's class. (to review)
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ in the shelter when the bus comes. (to sit)
7. I'm very sorry, it seems Dr. Jones \_\_\_\_\_ back until 2 p.m. (to come)
8. I don't think you \_\_\_\_\_ any problems when you land in Boston. (to have)
9. On Friday at 8 o'clock, I \_\_\_\_\_ my friend. (to meet)
10. The English lesson \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:45. (to start)
11. Look at the clouds – it \_\_\_\_\_ in a few minutes. (to rain)
12. When you get off the train, I \_\_\_\_\_ for you by the ticket machine. (to wait)
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ your children with you to France, aren't you? (to take)
14. This time next week, I \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland! (to ski)
15. Now I \_\_\_\_\_ my answers. (to check)

#### 19.10 Answers

#### 19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the verb in brackets into an appropriate future form, without contractions. Remember that unless we have a specific reason to use certain future tenses, simpler forms are often preferred. In some cases, more than one option is possible.

1. The train \_\_\_\_\_ at 12:30. (to arrive)
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at a seaside restaurant on Sunday. (to eat)
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ in Brighton throughout the parade. (to snow)
4. By the time we get home, they \_\_\_\_\_ football for 30 minutes. (to play)

5. Paul \_\_\_\_\_ to London on Monday morning. (to fly)
6. Wait! I \_\_\_\_\_ you to the station. (to drive)
7. This summer, I will \_\_\_\_\_ in Goring for four years. (to live)
8. The baby should be due soon; next week Erin \_\_\_\_\_ pregnant for nine months. (to be)
9. Are you still writing your essay? If you finish by 4 p.m., we \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk. (to go)
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ my mother in April. (to see)
11. In three years, I \_\_\_\_\_ in a different country. (to live)
12. When they get married in March, they \_\_\_\_\_ each other for six years. (to know)
13. You're carrying too much. I \_\_\_\_\_ the door for you. (to open)
14. Do you think the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ our homework by Monday morning? (to mark)
15. When I see you tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ you my new book. (to show)

#### 19.11 Answers

#### 19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

Listed below is the Robinson family's schedule for a trip to Winchester. Indicate which statements are true at the listed times.

- 06:30: Breakfast and washing
- 07:30: Start journey by car
- 09:30: Arrive in Winchester and walk into town
- 10:15: Tea in "Frieda's Tearoom"
- 10:45: Explore town
- 11:30: Tour of cathedral
- 12:30: Lunch at "The Old Vine"
- 13:45: Visit the castle ruins, then explore more of the town
- 15:00: Visit the old mill on the way back to the car
- 15:45: Travel back by car
- 18:00: Home in time for dinner!

For example:

At 07.30, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will leave home. – TRUE
- b. ... will have travelled by car.
- c. ... are starting their journey. – TRUE
- d. ... are going to have breakfast.

1. At 10.35, the Robinsons ...

- a. ... will be parking the car.
- b. ... will have walked into town.

c. ... will be having tea.

d. ... are seeing the cathedral.

1. At 12.40, the Robinsons ...

a. ... will be in "The Old Vine".

b. ... will have been touring the cathedral for an hour.

c. ... are going to explore the town.

d. ... are going to have finished lunch.

1. At 15.15, the Robinsons ...

a. ... will be heading home.

b. ... are going to be seeing the old mill.

c. ... will have been exploring Winchester for over three hours.

d. ... will have eaten lunch.

1. At 18.00, the Robinsons ...

a. ... are going to be driving.

b. ... will arrive home.

c. ... will have eaten dinner.

d. ... will have travelled for two hours or more.

#### 19.12 Answers

#### 19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

Roger and Mandy are planning their wedding. They have a timetable set out below. Complete the sentences about the day in the future tense, without contractions, using the will form.

- 09:00 – Wedding party arrives at St Christopher's Church. System checks and final run-through with priest.
- 10:00 – Guests start to arrive. Ushers and bridesmaids help seat guests while bride and groom get ready for ceremony.
- 10:30 – Ceremony begins.
- 11:30 – Ceremony ends. The couple sign documents, followed by photos and a champagne reception.
- 12:30 – Guests driven by bus to McGruber House. Bride and groom greet guests with welcome drinks in the Library Hall.
- 13:30 – Everyone is moved to the Banquet Hall and seated. Lunch is served, with the jazz band playing.
- 15:00 – Speeches given by groom, father-of-the-bride, and best man. Gifts and thanks are also given.
- 16:00 – Guests return to the Library Hall where the jazz band play again. Magician performs tricks.
- 18:00 – Rock band arrives, with dance floor cleared.
- 18:15 – The married couple's first dance, followed by general dancing.
- 19:30 – Taco van arrives for evening snacks.
- 22:00 – Party finishes, with bus to take everyone home.

For example:

- Q: At 09:15, the wedding party \_\_\_\_\_ and they \_\_\_\_\_ a final run-through. (to arrive / to do)

• A: At 09:15, the wedding party will have arrived and they will be doing a final run-through.

1. At 10:00, the guests \_\_\_\_\_ to arrive. (to start)
2. Between 10:00 and 10:30, the ushers \_\_\_\_\_ guests to find their seats. (to help)
3. When the ceremony begins, the bride \_\_\_\_\_ about 30 minutes to get ready. (to have)
4. By 11:20, the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ for almost an hour. (to run)
5. At 11:35, the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ and the couple \_\_\_\_\_ their documents. (to end / to sign)
6. All the guests \_\_\_\_\_ to McGruber House after the photos have been taken. (to move)
7. The couple \_\_\_\_\_ welcome drinks in the Library Hall. (to host)
8. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ a seat in the Banquet Hall before lunch is served. (to take)
9. The jazz band \_\_\_\_\_ during lunch. (to play)
10. At 15:00, the groom \_\_\_\_\_ his speech. The other speeches \_\_\_\_\_. (to give / to follow)
11. A magician \_\_\_\_\_ tricks while the jazz band is playing in the Library Hall. (to perform / to play)
12. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the dance floor before the couple's first dance. (to clear)
13. A taco van \_\_\_\_\_ more food later in the evening, in case guests get hungry. (to provide)
14. When the party finishes, people \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. (to dance)
15. The bus \_\_\_\_\_ guests to their hotels at the end of the night. (to return)

#### 19.13 Answers

#### 19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

In the following dialogue, Lucy and Charles make plans for the day. Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate future form. Use contractions where possible.

#### Plans for the Day

Lucy: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to come) with me to the lake today?

Charles: I've finished my work, so (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to join) you, yes. Shall I drive?

Lucy: No, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to take) the bus. The car is making funny noises.

Charles: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to check) it out, maybe I can fix it.

Lucy: Oh, don't – (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to work) on the car for hours!

Charles: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (it / to take / only) a few minutes, I'm sure.

Lucy: The bus (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) before you finish.

Charles: But (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to use) the car this evening, too. I'd best get it working.

Lucy: This evening? Where (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to go)?

Charles: (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to play) poker at Gilbert's, from 8 o'clock until late.

Lucy: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to meet) your friends? What (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to do)?

Charles: (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to see / not) a play this evening?

Lucy: Oh no, that was cancelled weeks ago. Perhaps (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to invite) Janet round. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to come) back from Ireland today.

Charles: Great! (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to have) lots of stories, I would like to see her.

Lucy: But (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to enjoy) your game instead.

Charles: Maybe she could come another day. (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to be / not) tired this evening?

Lucy: Ireland isn't far – (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (she / to travel / not) too long. And (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to make) her some dinner.

Charles: A meal, too? No – (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to cook) this evening, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to prepare) more for you two.

Lucy: (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to start / barely) before you have to go to poker, I'm sure! It's fine. (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (we / to order) a takeaway, if we have to. Now, are you coming to the lake? (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (the bus / to leave) in around ten minutes.

Charles: Okay, okay! (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (I / to look) at the car later.

#### 19.14 Answers

#### 19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

Complete the following passage by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form ( present simple , future simple , future continuous , future perfect or future perfect continuous ), without contractions. There may be more than one option with will / to be going to / present continuous forms.

#### Summer Plans

Amber (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) school in the middle of July. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) three months of holiday, then she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) university in the autumn. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) Law at Oxford. The course (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to last) four years, and once she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to qualify) Amber (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) a job in London.

Over the summer, Amber (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) in the local garden centre. She (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) money for university, and also to travel. The garden centre (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to let) her take two weeks off in August. During that break, she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) to France with her friends, Holly and Jaime.

All three friends have different plans for the trip. Holly (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) this summer, and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to explore) Europe for two months. When Amber (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) her in France, she (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) for three weeks already. She (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) Germany and Italy, and after France she (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to continue) to Spain.

Jaime only has one week of holiday, so she (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) later, after Amber and Holly (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) Paris. They (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) south together, to stay by a lake. Amber hopes it (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) her fit before university, as the girls (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim) and (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hike) every day – as long as the weather (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to stay) good. She (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) books to prepare for her course, too. By the time Amber (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move) to Oxford, she (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete) all the advance reading.

Unless she (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) a nice young man to distract her!

#### 19.15 Answers

#### 19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

Complete the following passage by putting the verb in brackets into the most appropriate future form ( present simple , future simple , future continuous , future perfect or future perfect continuous ), without contractions. There may be more than one option with will / to be going to / present continuous forms, as illustrated in the answers.

#### An End in Sight

The computer game Badger Spies (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hit) the shelves in three months. Over the next month, the developers (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) building the game so they can test it. Beta players (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) the game in detail, trying to spot problems. While they (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to test) the game, the marketing team (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finalise) an ambitious marketing campaign.

Badger Spies (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) on sale in thirteen countries, to start with, including the USA, the UK and Germany. The developers (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to host) a big launch party for the many releases, where they (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) food and drinks inspired by the game. The staff at the party (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) costumes from the Badger Spies world.

Not everyone is in a party mood, though. One designer, Rupert, worries they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complete / not) the game in time. He



expects he (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) improvements until the last minute, which means the beta players (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) an incomplete version for months before they report. He (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to complain / not) to the team leader about it, though. They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to release) the game on the set date, even if the mistakes (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to correct / not). The company (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to invest) too much time and money in the marketing to slow down.

Rupert worries about the marketing campaign, too. It (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) people the wrong impression of the game, he thinks. The marketing team (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try / not) the game themselves, and have not discussed it with the design team. The boss announced, with great determination, that they (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) it sexy. Rupert does not think Badger Spies (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a sexy game.

Maybe he just feels negative because he is tired. By the time the game is out, Rupert and his team (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on the project for almost three years. Whether the game is good or not, he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to celebrate) finally being able to do something else. But the rest of the team are optimistic. The boss says Badger Spies (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to change) everything – children (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to dress) in badger costumes and movie producers (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) for the rights to make a film. Rupert does hope that all of that (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen). Mostly, though, he hopes the game (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to entertain) people, and that by the release day they (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fix) all the errors.

#### 19.16 Answers

##### 1. Mixed Tenses in Use

#### 20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

Read the mixed simple tense statements below. Identify the simple tense uses from following options:

- Completed action
- Past state
- Present rule
- Present state
- Future action
- Future state

For example:

• Q: Edgar washed his hands twice, to be sure.

• A: Completed action

1. Bryony queued for hours at the ticket office.
2. It will arrive in a week's time.
3. Unemployment will fall after the factory opens.
4. You never answer your phone.
5. Snails sleep under rocks.
6. It is very cold outside.
7. She gave the boys a very angry look.
8. Luke always asks about trains.
9. The mayor will resign because of the scandal.
10. They went to Dallas for his birthday.
11. I will go for a walk later.
12. On the seafront, it was incredibly windy.

13. We like dancing.
14. She will get married in the summer.
15. The men had pie for lunch.
16. Our parents will love this painting.
17. Tulips grow here each spring.
18. He will want to share that doughnut.
19. Someone took the sandwich I wanted.
20. We were ready for trouble.

#### 20.1 Answers

#### 20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

Read the mixed continuous tense statements below. Identify the continuous tense uses from following options:

- Temporary / ongoing process
- Process of change
- Emphatic repeated action
- Future arrangement

For example:

- Q: The sea level is rising because of global warming.
  - A: Process of change
1. The Robertsons are staying in Bermuda next August.
  2. My cousin is riding a bike to work from now on.
  3. She is waiting in the hallway right now.
  4. Sally was resting under the tree while reading her book.
  5. It was getting harder to find a decent bagel in town.
  6. I am moving to Mexico in two months.
  7. Erin is forever complaining that no one listens to her.
  8. His motorbike was constantly breaking down.
  9. Mr Taylor is meeting us after his flight gets in.
  10. Victor is dating the girl from the coffee shop.
  11. People will be protesting outside when they pass the new law.
  12. They were pulling the cart when the wheel fell off.
  13. The plumber is repairing our toilet tomorrow.
  14. I made lunch while the boys were playing in the garden.
  15. With better tools, the factory will be expanding.
  16. Our neighbourhood is becoming busier as more people move in.
  17. The managers are hiring a new team of coders.

18. Justin is studying for a diploma.
19. My new toothbrush is arriving this afternoon.
20. Paige and Greg are working on their communications skills.

## 20.2 Answers

## 20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

Read the mixed perfect tense statements below. Identify the perfect tense uses from following options:

- Completed at a past time
- Past state duration
- Past affecting the present
- Ongoing state / activity
- Duration of ongoing activity
- Completed at a future time

For example:

- Q: Rhona has filled in this form five times already.
  - A: Ongoing activity
1. Foxes have raided our bins; there is garbage everywhere.
  2. The astronomy club has enlisted six new members this year, and it's only March.
  3. I have found some old books, do you want them?
  4. The man had understood nothing the entire time he was studying.
  5. Juliet has learned to sing, which is very distracting.
  6. My son has watched many cartoons.
  7. She had added the ingredients in the wrong order – the biscuits were ruined.
  8. We cannot swim later, the escaped crabs will have infested the beach.
  9. It was warm when Jared got home because he had forgotten to turn off the radiator.
  10. Snakes have got into the shed – run!
  11. The committee have met once a week for two years.
  12. The couple had known each other for five years before marrying.
  13. The offer will have ended before tomorrow.
  14. Winston has spotted 50 different species of butterfly.
  15. Hazel will have submitted her thesis by this evening.
  16. Lydia had been the head chef since Rupert retired.
  17. The ducks had stolen all the bread before we realised they were there.
  18. Margret and Clive have travelled by train for twelve hours so far.

## 20.3 Answers

## 20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

Read the mixed perfect continuous tense statements below. Identify the perfect continuous tense uses from following options. Note that completed past processes often also include a duration; both uses may apply, depending on the emphasis on the activity or the time taken.

- Completed past process
- Duration of present process
- Present process started in the past
- Duration of future process

For example:

- Q: The seals will have been bathing here all summer.
- A: Duration of future process

- 
1. Adrian has been collecting names for his new club.
  2. My parents have been warning me to wrap up since August.
  3. The artist had been painting the mural when he ran out of paint.
  4. The doctor will have been seeing patients for 30 years when he retires.
  5. Wendel has been spending a lot of time worrying about earthquakes.
  6. Shops will have been selling Christmas presents for months before the holiday.
  7. This computer has been loading for an hour already!
  8. We had been cooking all morning and the dinner was finally ready.
  9. Richard has been swimming every day for a year.
  10. Lily was tired because she had been listening to reggae music all night.
  11. Christopher will have been writing letters to her all summer before she replies.
  12. She had been running daily before she twisted her ankle.
  13. You will have been designing that website for a decade before you finish.
  14. I have been looking for a new window cleaner, but haven't found one I trust.
  15. The ladies have been discussing Ancient Greece for 50 minutes.
  16. The windows are open because my apartment has been getting too hot.
  17. The children will have been opening jars all afternoon.
  18. The car has been making strange noises, so he's taking it to a mechanic.
  19. Michelle has been reading that book since January.
  20. The inspector had been scanning documents for hours before he spotted the mistake.

## 20.4 Answers

## 20.5 Past Present Matching

Form logical past and present sentences using the fragments below. Each collection of eight fragments forms four complete sentences. Note that some clauses may fit flexibly, but only one combination should satisfy all four sentences of each question.

For example:

- a. As Howard got home, he found dinner on the table.
- b. Before Howard got home, his wife had cooked dinner.
- c. Howard has got home, so we are having dinner.
- d. When Howard gets home, dinner is always ready.

1.

2.

3.

4.

#### 20.5 Answers

#### 20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past or present form.

For example:

• Q: Harry \_\_\_\_\_ all his money, so he cannot buy the football. (to spend)

• A: Harry has spent all this money, so he cannot buy the football.

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ the pier every year. (to paint)
2. Norman \_\_\_\_\_ his house this week. (to clean)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to classical music since I was a child. (to listen)
4. The fisherman \_\_\_\_\_ a huge salmon last night. (to catch)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ philosophy, but it became too confusing. (to discuss)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ a funny tune when you came in, what was it? (to whistle)
7. Look, the gardener \_\_\_\_\_ the heads off the roses! (to cut)
8. Mr Willis \_\_\_\_\_ two bags of potatoes but left one in the shop. (to buy)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ outside when it rained? You look absolutely soaked. (you / to be)
10. Can you pass me the sugar? I \_\_\_\_\_ an apple pie. (to bake)
11. The dogs \_\_\_\_\_ holes again; look at that mess. (to dig)
12. Why \_\_\_\_\_? Stop her – we have dessert! (Susan / to leave)
13. The reporter \_\_\_\_\_ tired, but kept talking anyway. (to appear)
14. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ my socks. They were here a second ago. (to steal)
15. When I met the twins, I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ double. (to see)

#### 20.6 Answers

#### 20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate past or present form.

For example:

• Q: I am walking to work today, because I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. (to miss)

• A: I am walking to work today, because I missed the bus.

1. Can I borrow your pen? I \_\_\_\_\_ mine at home. (to leave)
2. A crowd \_\_\_\_\_ in town because the council raised taxes. (to protest)
3. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ me to tea, so I am buying flowers for her. (to invite)
4. Has Bob finished that book he \_\_\_\_\_? (to read)
5. The children were excited to see Aunt Maggie, as she always \_\_\_\_\_ them chocolate. (to give)
6. Vivian always \_\_\_\_\_ late, that's why she wasn't home when we called. (to work)
7. School tests \_\_\_\_\_ harder, so students have started complaining. (to get)
8. The door was locked earlier, so I still \_\_\_\_\_ how the burglar got in. (to know / not)
9. Robert is upset because \_\_\_\_\_ the game when his team scored. (to watch / not)
10. We started running in the summer, but we \_\_\_\_\_ less often as the weather has worsened. (to go)
11. Are the potatoes not ready yet? \_\_\_\_\_ the oven before we went out? (you / to turn on / not)
12. Is Sue coming to the cinema? She \_\_\_\_\_ us for months. (to join / not)
13. I washed the dishes yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ them again today. (to wash / not)
14. Frank's son wants to drive to Scotland, but he \_\_\_\_\_ his driving test yet. (to pass / not)
15. Is that woman climbing a tree now? She \_\_\_\_\_ us all morning! (to distract)

## 20.7 Answers

## 20.8 Present Future Cloze

Complete the following sentences by putting the information in brackets into the most appropriate present or future form.

For example:

• Q: Now that I have a degree, I \_\_\_\_\_ a job. (to find)

• A: Now that I have a degree, I am going to find a job.

1. We are building a tree house so the children \_\_\_\_\_ outside more often. (to play)
2. Daisy is coming home tomorrow, because her flight \_\_\_\_\_. (to delay)
3. Howard is waiting for the bus that \_\_\_\_\_ at eleven. (to arrive)
4. I have a book in my bag, which I \_\_\_\_\_ when you arrive. (to read)
5. The men \_\_\_\_\_ the truck already, so it will definitely get there on time. (to load)
6. Will it rain later? I \_\_\_\_\_ a coat. (to take / not)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ tea after you wash those mugs? (you / to make)
8. The phone \_\_\_\_\_ all morning, I am going to disconnect it soon! (to ring)
9. Who will win the race? It \_\_\_\_\_ too close to tell. (to look)
10. I am going to the shop later. What \_\_\_\_\_ me to get? (you / to want)
11. Tyler is learning to ski but he \_\_\_\_\_ ready in time for the holiday. (to be / not)
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ that old guitar for a year this October, I think it's time he got a new one. (to play)

13. Brittany washes her hair every day – she \_\_\_\_\_ well when they go camping. (to cope / not)
14. Look, the horses \_\_\_\_\_ across that field – we will never catch them! (to race)
15. The men will be delivering our new fridge in an hour, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to finish my work quickly. (to try)

## 20.8 Answers

## 20.9 Present Future Narrative

Using the following schedule, complete the passage below in the most appropriate present or future form.

### The Jolly Clown Conference

09.00 – Registration

09.30 – Talk: Modern Clowning in Practice

11.00 – Tea and Coffee

11.30 – Workshop: Working with Children

13:00 – Lunch

14:00 – Workshop: Advanced Physical Comedy

15:00 – Break

15:30 – Talk: A History of Clowns – Learn from the Best

17:00 – End of Day

It's 13.45 and Bilbo and Jam (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) lunch together. Bilbo (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to praise) the clown convention for twenty minutes already.

"The day (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) wonderful so far," he says.

"But I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) tired," Jam says. "I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall asleep) during the afternoon talk."

"Nonsense! There (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a break before it. And the workshop after lunch (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to revive) you."

"I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not) about that. Physical comedy (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) me very nervous."

"Why (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to worry) so much? The information pack (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to state) that you can watch if you don't want to join in."

"But I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to take part, right now. I only fear I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want / not) to when everyone (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) around hitting their heads on planks."

"Well, by 2 p.m. we (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) this hearty meal and perhaps your spirits (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lift). I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) much livelier already, myself."

"You (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel / always) lively, Bilbo. It might be because you (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) too much sugar."

"Ha! I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat / not) any sugar for two months, in fact. I am lively because this conference (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to inspire) me. The workshop on children (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) me lots of new ideas, and the talk on clown history (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) us about what it takes to really succeed."

"Okay, okay. I (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) to enjoy the afternoon. Look, I think that while we (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk), they (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to set up) the workshop. Why (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (that man / to carry) two buckets of water?"

"We (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find out) soon!"

## 20.9 Answers

## 20.10 Future in the Past

Convert the following past sentences into past future forms, using the information in brackets.

For example:

• Q: She wanted to leave by 9 a.m., but was too busy.

• A: She was going to leave by 9 a.m., but was too busy.

1. He almost ate all the cake, but it was too much. (to eat)
2. They were planning to buy a hot tub until they saw the running costs. (to buy)
3. Shirley intended to go to university if she got the grades. (to go)
4. She needed to learn to dance before the end of the year. (to learn)
5. We asked our neighbours to repair the fence and they agreed. (our neighbours / to repair)
6. I thought of travelling to Germany for Oktoberfest. (to travel)
7. The poster gave a starting time of 7 p.m. (the poster said / it / to start)
8. I arranged to meet Geoff in the park.
9. The forecast was for rain. (they said / it / to rain)
10. Uncle Jim agreed to supply beer for the party. (to supply)
11. Luke promised not to drink my tea. (Luke said / to drink / not)
12. Sam did not expect to pass her exams. (Sam / to think / she / to pass)

#### 20.10 Answers

#### 20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

The following sentences include multiple past and present tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first.

For example:

• Q: I am working today because I had yesterday off.

• A: A) I had B) I am working

1. My boss has asked for a new report, even though I wrote one two days ago.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tess has been learning to dance since she saw the Nutcracker ballet.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. It has been getting harder to find work, so I am starting my own company.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Brian and Freda are arguing about who left the oven on.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Because it rained, the bench is too wet to sit on.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Our company is moving offices because they found a better site.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Jenny drives very well as she started at an early age.



A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The woodland animals were so noisy last night that Bernice has barely slept.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. My family came from Hungary originally, but have lived in Denver for five years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She was having a warm shower but has stopped because the hot water ran out.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Have they brought the cocktail sausages we asked for?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What are you drinking? I didn't see that on the menu.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The driver said we must exit at the front of the train, are we riding in the right carriage?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Who has completed their homework since we studied last night?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. If the dog was here before, where is it now?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 20.11 Answers

#### 20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

The following sentences include multiple present and future tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first.

For example:

• Q: Naomi is mending her kite because she is taking it to the park later.

• A: A) Naomi is mending B) she is taking

1. Even though we are going to a restaurant for dinner, Dad is eating a doughnut.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. They will be expecting a good performance, so he is practising very hard.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The price seems to be fair, I will buy this jacket.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tyler is going to get some cheese from that man who is preparing a stall.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. She will spend all the money she is earning.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. I love chocolate but it will make me fat.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will you wear the scarf I am making you?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Are the police investigating the burglary or will the thief escape punishment?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Is the table big enough? Perhaps not everyone will fit.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does the flight leave soon? I have not checked in.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

## 20.12 Answers

## 20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

The following sentences include multiple mixed tense clauses. Put the subjects and verbs into the order of which will start first, or indicate if the first action is unknown.

For example:

• Q: I was surprised to learn that the mayor will be opening our shop.

• A: A) I was surprised B) the mayor will be opening

1. We are peeling potatoes so they will be ready for mashing.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The spiders have been hiding in shadows – that's why you have not seen them.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Ron is going to introduce his parents to the girl he met last week.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Mia is taking her test tomorrow, and she has been studying hard since she failed last time.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. That sign was not here before, someone has put it there.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The dark clouds suggest a storm is coming, but will it strike before noon?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. When Wendy gets here, we will ask if she ate the last ham sandwich.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The chef admits that he added cumin to the soup, but he claims he will not do it again.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_ D) \_\_\_\_\_

1. The boys are not playing in the tournament this evening because they broke the rules and they have not apologised.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Tina is publishing a book on relationships soon, as she has been happily married for thirteen years.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. What did that man say to you? You have been sitting in silence ever since.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Is Dermot ready for the triathlon or is he going to train for longer?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Does Cindy have the pen I gave you? My uncle gave it to me.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Had Pat tried spicy food before he visited India? He orders it all the time now.

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_ C) \_\_\_\_\_

1. Will you come with me to Florence or have you seen everything already?

A) \_\_\_\_\_ B) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 20.13 Answers

#### 20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past , present or future forms.

##### Emily's Piano

Emily (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) to play the piano for eight months. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a dream of hers for many years, but she never (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) it would be possible until last November. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) with her parents in a small house and, for now, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) as a waitress before she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to university. Her father (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) buses and her mother (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) in the local school. The family live comfortably, but her father (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) they had no space or money for a piano.

Still, Emily (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen) to piano concertos since she was a child, and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) reading books about musicians and music theory. She (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) all the online videos about piano tuition that she can find. When she was little, her parents (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) her a miniature keyboard. She (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) on it every day for years when the keyboard broke. But by then she (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) school and parties too much to care.

As Emily got older, she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to yearn) to play music again. While she (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) money to continue her education, she secretly (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wish) for a piano instead. She (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to earn / not) enough for both, though. Then, in November, her father revealed that he (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to collect) extra money himself. Emily's parents (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to plan) to buy her a piano as a gift before university, all along! They even paid for lessons, and now Emily (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) so well that they (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) her to continue once she moves to university. She (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have / not) space at university for a piano, but (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) home every other weekend, and is sure she (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) a piano somewhere on campus. In fact, Emily is certain she (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) piano for many years to come.

#### 20.14 Answers

#### 20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past , present or future form.

##### Wizards and Dragons

For the past few weeks, Bernice (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) a new television show about wizards and dragons. Such fantasy shows (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) more popular in recent years. This is partly because technology (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to improve) enough to make fantasy more realistic. But attitudes to fantasy (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to change / also). Bernice (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like / not) fantasy before; she and her friends usually (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to prefer) shows about crime and mysteries. They (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to follow) a seaside detective drama for five years, before this fantasy show (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) along. None of them (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to consider) fairy tales seriously before.

Then, everyone (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) talking about this new show. It (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to spread) across the internet, and (12)

\_\_\_\_\_ (to continue) to spread even more when the new series arrives. The popularity of the show (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make / quickly) it cool to like fantasy. Bernice (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to like) that, because she really (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) the show.

In fact, Bernice and her friends (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy / already) all the books that accompany the show. She (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to read / not) any yet, but (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) forward to them. Their group (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) and discuss the books, once everyone (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a chance to read some. The books (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) them understand the wider story of the television show, and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) them an idea of what to expect in future. Bernice (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) that the wizards (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn / not) evil, and she (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to believe / not) the theories that zombies (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to invade) the fantasy world. That (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sound) silly.

Whatever happens next, Bernice is sure they (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) about this show for many years to come!

#### 20.15 Answers

#### 20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future form.

##### A New Library

The Worthing Library (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) relocated later this year. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to move / not) far, and it (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) soon enough – new and improved. The reason: the existing building (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) renovated. The current library (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to serve) the community since 1975, so locals are happy that it (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close / not) for good. With the improvements, it (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to upgrade) its status to a “community hub”. What (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (this / to mean)?

This concept (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) public buildings at the heart of the community; the council (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to bring) many services together in one place. This (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to strengthen) the community aspect of the library, although buildings offering other services (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close).

In remodelling the library, the designers (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) consideration to quiet and private spaces, but the “hub” (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buzz) with other activity. Sarah Blemming, involved in the project, said, “Libraries (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to form) the heart of a community. We (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to create) something that embraces and celebrates that.”

During the public consultation, the council (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to listen) to various proposals for how to remodel the library. The public (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to respond) very favourably, and now (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to await / eagerly) the results. By the time the community hub is complete, the council (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to close) the library for six months. But the relocated services (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) just across the road. Meanwhile, the council (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) with more partners to identify other locations for community hubs.

#### 20.16 Answers

#### 20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future form.

##### Holiday Plans

Gerry Davies (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to host) family Christmas celebrations at his mountain lodge for the past twelve years. The lodge is in the French Alps and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) beautiful surrounded by snow. Gerry (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) it in 1973, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to maintain) it himself ever since. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise) two children who have married and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to raise / now) his five grandchildren. The extended family (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to spread) out across Europe: Gerry lives in England, but his son’s family (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to settle) in Scotland, and his daughter’s family (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in Ukraine while she completes a teaching contract.

Gerry was worried that his family (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to come / not) to France this Christmas. Last year, his children said that it (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) less and less desirable to travel for the holiday, as they (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) terrible things about global warming. His daughter says frequent flying damages the planet, and it (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to recover / not). They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to fly) to France every Christmas for thirteen years, next year! How much damage (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (they / to do) by then?

But Gerry (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want / not) to lose these special times with his family, and he (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come up with) a solution. He (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work / not) anymore, so he has lots of free time. For the past few months, he (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) all the latest information about the healthiest ways to travel. He (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) an electric car last week and for the next Christmas he (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrange) for his family to meet him via train at convenient locations. He (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to

drive) them the rest of the way to the mountain lodge. By the time everyone (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) for Christmas, he (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) for two weeks himself, but it (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (to cause) minimal harm to the environment. And Gerry (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (to mind / not) collecting everyone. It means he (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / spend) even more time with his family!

## 20.17 Answers

## 20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Complete the text below by putting the verbs in brackets into the most appropriate past, present or future form.

### Murder Mystery

Detective Stevens (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (to gather) the manor guests in the games room, along with the butler, the cleaner and the cook. There were eight people left, now that three others (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) killed.

"People (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hide) their true identities," Detective Stevens announced.

"Yes!" the butler said. "Dr Julian (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (to lie) about being a heart surgeon!"

"How insulting!" said Dr Julian. "I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (to practise) surgery for ten years!"

"When I phoned the hospital this morning, they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear / not) of him."

Dr Julian was trapped. "Very well. But I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / to reveal) the truth before leaving, honestly. I am a bank clerk – I only (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) to impress Miss Tatiana! But I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (to murder / not) her! And if we (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (to search) for liars, what about the cook? He (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (to make / not) a good meal all weekend!"

"I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) unwell," the cook said. "But I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) here since the manor opened, I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (to swear)."

"He (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) here when I arrived," the cleaner confirmed. "And what reason (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to have) to kill Miss Tatiana, Mr Fredericks or the manager, Mr Bollier?"

"Ah ha!" Detective Stevens said. "I thought you (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to defend) him. You (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (to conspire / all) together. The house staff and ... Colonel Stamp! (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to be going to / to explain), or shall I?"

Colonel Stamp, who (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (to avoid) attention until then, looked worried. He said, "I (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to tolerate / not) this, no. I (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) as soon as my driver arrives."

"But your driver (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (to come / not)," Detective Stevens said. "I (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (to instruct) him to take the night off. You see, Colonel Stamp is, in fact, Lemuel Bollier!"

"Bollier?" said the final guest, Mrs Smythe. "(25) \_\_\_\_\_ (he / to relate) to the manager?"

"(26) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / will / to talk), now, Lemuel? Your secret is out."

"How (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to find) out?" Colonel Stamp – actually Lemuel Bollier – said.

"Simple," Detective Stevens said. "When we dined on Friday night, you (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) many strange questions about the manor. And you (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (to say / not) anything about your own history. While we (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (to drink) brandy in the parlour, Miss Tatiana saw you talking with the cook and the butler. What (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to discuss), I wonder?"

"I (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (to discover) a draught in my room and wished to be moved!"

"There (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) no other rooms available, until Mr Fredericks died. Indeed, you requested a change because you (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (to be going to / to pour) poison through the floorboards, onto the manager while he slept! Your father, who (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (to see / not) you since childhood, and (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (to know / not) you (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to inherit) his manor. Having promised to reward all the house staff!"

Lemuel Bollier (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (to pull out) a gun. "Very well, it is all true. But no one (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (will / to survive) to tell the story."

The doors burst open. Police officers (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) in the hall, and (41) \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear) everything. The criminals were trapped. Detective Stevens said, "Lemuel Bollier, I (42) \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrest) you for murder."

## 20.18 Answers

### Infinitives and Participles

The following section is designed to drill awareness of the grammar words which are necessary to accurately form the tenses. These are not essential exercises for using the tenses, but help to develop a clear impression of English structure and practice.

#### 1. Identifying Bare Infinitives

### 21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the past simple ( regular or irregular ) or a bare infinitive ?

1. Did he buy a new pair of trousers?
2. We waited for hours, but no one came.
3. I've eaten all of the chocolates, they were really good.
4. What did you say to the mayor when you met him?
5. When their team scored, the home team cheered loudly.
6. Lady Taylor didn't share her stamp collection with just anyone.
7. When did your foot get better?
8. They lived on a houseboat for three months.
9. Who came to your most recent party?
10. Where did that pile of newspapers disappear to?
11. He sent her flowers because he didn't want to seem ungrateful.
12. When she left, he cried .

### 21.1 Answers

### 21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the present simple or a bare infinitive ?

1. Wilson tends to his garden every day.
2. Do they want any more beans?
3. How far does he run each morning?
4. I don't know what she needs .
5. The dog sleeps under the table.
6. The boat does not float any more.
7. It does seem strange, doesn't it?
8. What is that new perfume you are wearing?
9. Does Mr Carpenter live here?
10. Let him see the documents.
11. He lives on the trains, always moving, never stopping.
12. Don't waste paper, re-use some of the scrap.

### 21.2 Answers

### 21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

Read the sentences below. Is the underlined verb in the present simple or past simple, or is it a bare infinitive?

1. We will go to the lakes in summer.
2. Did they have a good time at the opera?
3. What movies are on TV this evening?
4. Many sweets that I enjoyed when I was young are no longer available.
5. Do you remember which room the toilet is in?
6. I always thought he walked with a slight limp.
7. Do you know why they forbade the banjo in my school?
8. We often watch the swans in the park.
9. Can she walk now?
10. There didn't appear to be anything wrong with him.
11. If you boil vegetables for too long, they lose their nutrients.
12. Towards the end of Saturday's race, people became very tired.

### 21.3 Answers

1. Participles

### 22.1 Past Participles

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets in either the past participle or another verb form. Remember, the past participle is typically used in perfect tenses.

For example:

- Q: Oh no, I have \_\_\_\_\_ my glasses again! (to break)
  - A: Oh no, I have broken my glasses again!
1. We have \_\_\_\_\_ living here for twenty years. (to be)
  2. What kind of nuts did you \_\_\_\_\_ in this meal? (to use)
  3. I will \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for your return. (to be)
  4. They \_\_\_\_\_ had enough of the loud music now. (to have)
  5. The internet has \_\_\_\_\_ a huge impact on the way we interact. (to have)
  6. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ me to the nearest post office? (to direct)
  7. I have \_\_\_\_\_ the eggs; now to complete the cake. (to beat)
  8. The criminal had broken \_\_\_\_\_ twice before they found him. (to break)
  9. We will have \_\_\_\_\_ Grandma before Christmas Day. (to visit)
  10. You must \_\_\_\_\_ the garden shed before it collapses. (to mend)
  11. When they have \_\_\_\_\_ the art of dancing, they will try fencing. (to master)
  12. Julio ran through the bath-house naked, because Frank had \_\_\_\_\_ his robe. (to steal)

### 22.1 Answers

## 22.2 Present Participles

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets in either the present participle or another verb form. Remember, the present participle is the -ing form of the verb, typically used in continuous tenses.

For example:

- Q: They are \_\_\_\_\_ to regret opening that door. (to go)
  - A: They are going to regret opening that door.
1. He had \_\_\_\_\_ all the potatoes, ready for dinner. (to peel)
  2. We were \_\_\_\_\_ too loudly, that's why they complained. (to sing)
  3. Have they been \_\_\_\_\_ us for long? (to watch)
  4. Give me a hand with this log – I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it myself. (to move)
  5. The plumber had \_\_\_\_\_ on the sink all morning. (to work)
  6. I have been \_\_\_\_\_ for hours; I need a break. (to study)
  7. She will \_\_\_\_\_ on the ice, in those silly shoes. (to slip)
  8. Hans was \_\_\_\_\_ when his chair collapsed. (to read)
  9. Are you seriously \_\_\_\_\_ that jacket again? (to wear)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ is not allowed here. (to smoke)
  11. Will the game have \_\_\_\_\_ by the time we get there? (to finish)
  12. I will be there in a minute, I am just \_\_\_\_\_ this cup! (to clean)

## 22.2 Answers

1. Mixed Verb Types

## 23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

Read the mixed tenses statements below. Is the underlined word a bare infinitive or a verb participle ?

1. Did he wash the dishes?
2. We have gone to the theatre three times this week.
3. I might buy some dungarees.
4. Next Tuesday, Margie and I will see a movie together.
5. The little dogs are barking again.
6. Playing the piano is done on Sundays.
7. We should go now.
8. Does your mother know our priest?
9. Had they known what happened all along?
10. Did they hear what we said?
11. Won't they be waiting for us?
12. She has been here for a very long time.
13. Have you seen the weather in Idaho?



14. It might rain later.
15. Does the driver have enough fuel?
16. This woman has had too much fun for one day.
17. My favourite necklace was being repaired.
18. Did that make much sense?
19. I could drink another cup of tea.
20. There are some strange people watching us.

### 23.1 Answers

### 23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

Complete the following sentences using the verb in brackets, in either the bare infinitive, past participle or present participle form.

For example:

- Q: Have you been \_\_\_\_\_ this soup for long? (to cook)
  - A: Have you been cooking this soup for long?
1. When will you be \_\_\_\_\_ the train? (to catch)
  2. Jamie can't \_\_\_\_\_, she's too old! (to dance)
  3. I have never \_\_\_\_\_ so many sandwiches in all my life. (to make)
  4. What did he \_\_\_\_\_ you about? (to ask)
  5. Is this group of gymnasts \_\_\_\_\_ all month? (to perform)
  6. Why Kylie had \_\_\_\_\_ the biscuits, no one knew. (to take)
  7. The canaries will have \_\_\_\_\_, the cage door was left open! (to escape)
  8. You will have been \_\_\_\_\_ all this for nothing, if you don't apply it later. (to learn)
  9. I cannot \_\_\_\_\_ to think about the war. (to bear)
  10. Can you \_\_\_\_\_? (to whistle)
  11. It was \_\_\_\_\_ when we left the house, but it has \_\_\_\_\_ now. (to snow, to stop)
  12. Why did that shop assistant \_\_\_\_\_ you so much trouble? (to give)
  13. Have you been \_\_\_\_\_ for these hairclips? (to look)
  14. She couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ any more pork scratchings. (to afford)
  15. Has your business \_\_\_\_\_ much since we last met? (to grow)
  16. That man has \_\_\_\_\_ his last game of chess, he's banned now. (to play)
  17. It was tragic that the game was cancelled when they were \_\_\_\_\_. (to win)
  18. Do you think you will \_\_\_\_\_ all of your modules at university? (to pass)
  19. We are \_\_\_\_\_ our assignments next week. (to complete)
  20. Have I \_\_\_\_\_ enough about the seaside? (to write)

### 23.2 Answers

### 23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

The following ten sentences have been split and scrambled. Match the first part to the second by looking for patterns in bare infinitive and participle uses.

#### 23.3 Answers

##### A Note from the Author

Dear reader,

I hope that this book has helped develop your skills for applying the English tenses. It has been designed merely to test and apply your grammar knowledge, but was produced following *The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide*. If you have not read that book, it may provide additional insights into the tenses. Both these books were produced independently, and I have also been sharing English tips and exercises through the website *English Lessons Brighton* since 2012. I take great joy in being able to help learners everywhere advance in English, so the ability to reach more students through my books is wonderful.

If you found this book useful, please leave a quick star rating and a short review online. It helps others discover my books, which is essential for me to keep producing them! Please review *The English Tenses Exercise Book* online.

Thank you in advance,

Phil Williams

##### Acknowledgements

It takes a team to produce any book, and that is more true than ever with the independently produced ELB guides. My great thanks goes out to my supportive wife Marta, who always helps test my language material ahead of release, and my editor Caroline Hynes, whose keen eye helps keep everything in order. These books are also bolstered by the support of my large and very positive reading group on the ELB mailing list, whose words of encouragement always help motivate me.

For *The English Tenses Exercise Book*, I had the help of a great team of students and teachers who helped identify problem areas in the final book, including Andre Bianconi, Cheryl Butterfield, Annaliza Davis, Maria Eugenia del Valle, André Juilly, Howat Labrum, Jim Lindsay, Tamsyn Mott, Jaime Sanchez Rivera, Marta Stanowska, and Jennifer Tan. Thank you to everyone involved!

Also by Phil Williams

##### *The English Tenses Practical Grammar Guide*

Quickly discover the many uses of the English tenses. How do English speakers use two tenses to mean the same thing? Why do the rules not always apply?

This comprehensive guide to the usage patterns of all 12 aspects of the English language covers all the rules and grammatical forms. *The English Tenses: Practical Grammar Guide* is ideal as either an accompaniment to core texts or as a full self-study guide. It introduces the reader to flexible uses of the English tenses, with simple, easy-to-follow explanations, colourful examples and enlightening comparisons.

##### *Advanced Writing Skills for Students of English*

Want to improve your English writing skills? This guide will clearly teach you how to master written language. You'll learn how to write concisely, how to vary your structure and vocabulary, how to edit your work, and much more!

Presented with a focus on why different styles and techniques work, *Advanced Writing Skills* teaches not only what makes writing most effective, but also the reasoning behind its tips, making them easier to remember and apply. As well as covering general writing tips, across all subjects, this book also offers guidance on specific areas of writing, including business, academic and creative writing.

##### *Word Order in English Sentences*

Want to know what subject-verb-object really means? Unsure about where to place your adverbs? Need to rearrange sentences confidently?

A complete foundation in word order and sentence structure for the English language, *Word Order in English Sentences* can be used both for reference and as a full self-study guide. From basic rules through to the many considerations of adverbial phrases, prepositions and complex sentences, with exercises in between, this grammar guide contains everything you need for a strong understanding of how sentences are put together.

The rules and patterns for forming and reforming phrases and sentences are all presented with easy-to-follow explanations, clear examples and

exercises to test understanding. With his engaging style, Phil Williams takes you beyond the basics, making flexible and advanced English accessible to all.

## Answers

### 1.1 Answers

1. The postman was late again.
2. Felicity grew tomatoes in her garden.
3. He did not understand the project.
4. We failed to finish in time.
5. They did not give us the bag of flour.
6. Liam did not ask the question politely.
7. The hummingbirds built a nest in our attic.
8. The piano looked too old to use.
9. She said we were wrong.
10. I did not pick the right flowers.
11. Our cake did not taste right.
12. We drove all the way to Scotland.
13. You did not bring the green umbrella.
14. They arrested the wrong man.
15. The lady of the manor did not write a convincing memoir.

### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

### 1.2 Answers

1. Were your dogs very messy?
2. Did the chef cook something spectacular?
3. Did you read all three of your textbooks this weekend?
4. Did she ask him to go on a date?
5. Did you know about the rotten fruit?
6. Did the priests demand that the film be banned?
7. Did you buy a new bicycle?
8. Did he Hoover the house because of the dust?
9. Did the children play on the swings?
10. Was she very disappointed with the presentation?
11. Did you misjudge the time it would take to get to the party?
12. Did you lose your keys again?
13. Did the story get a lot more interesting after the main character died?
14. Did they send a replacement cabinet after yours broke?

15. Did the council ban parking on your road?
16. Did she run a marathon last spring?
17. Was it the hottest day of the year?
18. Did Ulric visit the doctor for the first time?
19. Did your computer stop working?
20. Did they prepare for the storm months in advance?

#### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

#### 1.3 Answers

1. Where did you help the old man?
2. What did Julian sing?
3. Where did you search for the doctor?
4. Why was she very angry?
5. When did everyone go for ice cream?
6. Which necklaces did they steal?
7. How much did you give the homeless man?
8. What did the critic hate?
9. Who did he have a disagreement with? ( or Who had a disagreement with the man who sold him his car?)
10. What was cut down yesterday?
11. What did Tyler want to free? ( or What did Tyler want to do?)
12. Where did the family take the bottles?
13. What did the girl believe in?
14. How did you tie the knots?
15. Who ate her last cupcake?

#### 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

#### 1.4 Answers

1. What did he not tell us?
2. Did it not seem like an easy task?
3. Where did Mindy not take the students?
4. Why was the door not locked?
5. How did you not get there in time?
6. Did they not bring any water on the hike?
7. Was she not supposed to be in Italy this week?
8. Did the spiders not live for very long?
9. Were you not sad about the game being cancelled?

10. When did the football team not have a manager?

#### 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

#### 1.5 Answers

1. We were not very good at sports.
2. The Morrisons owned too many chickens.
3. Herman did not get on with his neighbours.
4. Where did I park my car?
5. Did you see that new ballet?
6. The builders ate a large breakfast.
7. Was she not a good swimmer?
8. The lady did not decide to buy the dress. ( or The lady decided not to buy the dress.)
9. Did they not listen to the radio?
10. She ran all the way around the park.

#### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

#### 2.1 Answers

1. The giraffe was lying down.
2. They were not drawing pictures of fruit.
3. It was getting dark outside.
4. You were telling me about your new phone.
5. They were not flying over Mongolia.
6. I was cleaning the pans when the police arrived.
7. The animals were digging a hole.
8. Kyle was not reading novels this summer.
9. We were painting the house all day.
10. No one was helping with the display.
11. The computer was not loading properly.
12. You were not sleeping in the right room.
13. She was brushing her teeth.
14. I was testing the light switch.
15. The rodents were planning something.

#### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

#### 2.2 Answers

1. Were they building a new school?
2. Was Lily hiding something?
3. Were the days getting longer?

4. Were you asking about my van?
5. Was the light working when you got home?
6. Was his father trying to play the piano?
7. Were the students travelling through Bolivia?
8. Was everyone waiting for me?
9. Was I saying the right word?
10. Were the sailors loading the correct boat?
11. Was the bus stopping everywhere?
12. Were we singing in tune?
13. Were Rupert and Jim fighting again?
14. Was the sun shining on your wedding day?
15. Were the trains arriving on time last weekend?

## 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

### 2.3 Answers

1. How (well) were the students doing?
2. What was Tim studying?
3. Where were you flying (to)?
4. Why was the cat running away?
5. What were they singing?
6. How long were you living in America (for)?
7. Who was leaving dirty dishes out?
8. What was her husband watching (on TV)?
9. Where was the tour guide taking them (to)?
10. Why was Hailey smiling?
11. Who were the Japanese investors meeting with? ( or Who was meeting the Japanese investors?)
12. Why was the restaurant getting crowded?
13. When were the new shoes arriving?
14. What was Alison preparing (for the carnival)?
15. What were you picking up (from your friends)?

## 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

### 2.4 Answers

1. Were you not enjoying the party?
2. What was the man not showing them?
3. Was I not holding the right pen?

4. Why was the weather not getting warmer?
5. Where was the boat not stopping during the cruise?
6. Were you not using the correct ingredients?
7. When was the bell not ringing?
8. Were they not bringing more sandwiches?
9. Was he not sitting at the back of the class?
10. Why were the children not following the teacher?

#### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

#### 2.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. was driving
2. Were they selling
3. it was playing
4. Was the van going
5. the driver wasn't heading ( or the driver was not heading)
6. was he planning
7. Wasn't something happening ( or Was something not happening)
8. They were opening
9. was thinking
10. you weren't expecting ( or you were not expecting)

#### The Ice Cream Van

Simon: Do you know what I just saw? An ice cream van (1) was driving down our road.

Carl: Really? (2) Were they selling ice cream? It's November!

Simon: Well, (3) it was playing music, so I think they wanted customers.

Carl: (4) Was the van going to the beach?

Simon: It couldn't have been; (5) the driver wasn't heading ( or the driver was not heading ) in the right direction.

Carl: Then where (6) was he planning to park?

Simon: Hmm. (7) Wasn't something happening ( or Was something not happening) in the town centre earlier today?

Carl: Of course! (8) They were opening a new sports shop this morning!

Simon: Oh! I (9) was thinking about going to that, but I decided not to.

Carl: But (10) you weren't expecting ( or you were not expecting) ice cream! Let's go!

#### 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

#### 3.1 Answers

1. They had started the party early.
2. It had snowed overnight.

3. The delivery truck had parked outside.
4. I had not heard about the Incas before.
5. You had warned me not to go there, but I did.
6. She had arrived too late for the exam.
7. Simone realised she had not listened to this tune yet.
8. Before finding the lecture hall, we had gone to Room 2b.
9. We had not agreed on a price for the painting by noon.
10. He had read the book thirteen times.
11. The picnic was ruined; the rats had eaten everything.
12. The shop had closed down for good.
13. I had not asked for a map, because I knew the way.
14. She had forgotten where the cups were kept.
15. Ryan went to see a film, but they had sold all the tickets.

### 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

#### 3.2 Answers

1. Had they been to California before?
2. Had you already asked me about my toe?
3. Had he worn his coat to the park?
4. Had the horse eaten already?
5. Had someone broken the window?
6. Had the mice infested the house?
7. Had you ever been able to juggle?
8. Had Roger repaired the bicycle?
9. Had Jonas taken the wrong bag?
10. Had the cleaners emptied the bins?

### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

#### 3.3 Answers

1. What had Lisa added to the soup?
2. How had the cows escaped from the field?
3. What had you discussed in the previous two lessons?
4. Where had you put your glasses?
5. When had the clock stopped?
6. When had she changed her clothes?
7. Who had the President appointed? ( or Who had been appointed by the President?)



8. What had Harry heard (behind the shed)?
9. Where had all the eggs gone?
10. Where had you stayed last time?

### 3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

#### 3.4 Answers

1. Had he not told her about the invitation?
2. Where had Charlene not been in Boston?
3. Had the team not worked together?
4. Had I not turned off the cooker before going out?
5. Had the plumber not set the radiator to the right temperature?
6. What had the night manager not included in his report?
7. Why had the alarm not gone off at 7 a.m.?
8. What had the chef not added to the soup?
9. Had I not explained the situation clearly?
10. Why had they not checked the car's engine before travelling?

#### 3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

#### 3.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. He had left
2. Stephen had started
3. his wife had suggested
4. she had found
5. He had not planned
6. they had bought
7. they had not made
8. He had measured
9. why had he not used
10. Had he read
11. Stephen had wrestled
12. It had turned out
13. why had he not tried
14. the kitchen had started
15. the cake had risen
16. it had developed

17. his wife had been

#### A Fresh Cake

Stephen was looking forward to a freshly baked cake. (1) He had left it baking for 45 minutes now. This was the final step in a process (2) Stephen had started four hours earlier, after (3) his wife had suggested that he try a new recipe (4) she had found. (5) He had not planned to spend the day baking, but (6) they had bought all the ingredients already, and (7) they had not made homemade cake for a long time, so he agreed to give it a go.

Once he started, he realised it was actually good fun. (8) He had measured everything carefully before combining the ingredients, and then made a terrible mess mixing the batter. It was too sticky. His wife asked: (9) why had he not used more flour? (10) Had he read the recipe correctly?

Eventually, (11) Stephen had wrestled the mixture under control, and he cleaned the whole kitchen while they waited for it to rise. (12) It had turned out to be quite simple really. When he put the mix in the oven, he asked himself, (13) why had he not tried this sooner?

After half an hour, (14) the kitchen had started to smell amazing.

Finally, 45 minutes were almost over, and Stephen's mouth was watering. He opened the oven to find (15) the cake had risen beautifully, and (16) it had developed a firm, golden top. They would definitely enjoy this, and Stephen admitted, (17) his wife had been right. It was a good idea.

#### 3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

##### 4.1 Answers

1. They had been travelling all night.
2. I had not been listening during the lecture.
3. She had been dancing with Raul.
4. The bird had been singing for hours.
5. It had not been snowing before they left the hotel.
6. The traffic lights had not been working that morning.
7. Sidney had been learning to play the bassoon.
8. Strange symbols had been appearing all over town.
9. The price of cauliflower had been rising throughout January.
10. Tina had been waiting for the right man.
11. We had been going to the same holiday villa for years.
12. Wild dogs had been stealing from the pantry.
13. The children had not been practising their handwriting.
14. They had not been camping in Wales before.
15. I had been hoping for a good result.

##### 4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

##### 4.2 Answers

1. Had you been watching Channel 4?
2. Had Jim been watering the garden?
3. Had the cat been sleeping in the bedroom?
4. Had they been training together for a long time?
5. Had the carpenter been making new chairs?

6. Had you been snoring in your sleep?
7. Had she been listening to their phone call?
8. Had the door been closing on its own?
9. Had Winston been helping with her studies?
10. Had the bracelet been sitting on the table all along?

#### 4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 4.3 Answers

1. Where had she been hiding the cake?
2. What had you been listening to in the car?
3. What had the dog been barking at?
4. When had Clive been planning to go on holiday?
5. How long had the man been playing the trumpet (for)?
6. What had Mum been preparing for dinner?
7. Where had you been sitting?
8. Why had you been working at the weekend?
9. What had they been thinking about (banning)?
10. How had Fiona been cooking bagels (before she bought the toaster)?

#### 4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 4.4 Answers

1. Had we not been parking in the right space?
2. Where had the boys not been making a mess?
3. Had she not been listening to the teacher?
4. Why had the water not been boiling?
5. Had I not been walking fast enough?
6. Had it not been raining all day?
7. Why had Lily not been reading the books I gave her?
8. When had the politician not been telling the truth?
9. Had they not been running in the morning?
10. Why had the gardener not been trimming the roses?

#### 4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 4.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. It had been raining
2. Had I not been warning

3. they had been doing
4. the potatoes had not been growing
5. The weather had been getting
6. people had been saying
7. I had not been listening
8. Why had I not been paying
9. Things had been going

#### A Ruined Allotment

(1) It had been raining all night, we could tell. The allotment was flooded. (2) Had I not been warning everyone about this for months? If they had listened, we could have built a shelter. But (3) they had been doing other things, like swimming in the lake. Besides, Barry kept arguing, (4) the potatoes had not been growing anyway. Why bother?

(5) The weather had been getting more unpredictable, that was the main problem. Some months we had no rain at all. As much as two months ago, (6) people had been saying we might have a completely dry season. But I remembered the storms three years ago, when I lost everything. (7) I had not been listening when the forecasts offered warnings that time. (8) Why had I not been paying more attention during that period? Back when it would have helped ... The same reason no one listened to me this time. (9) Things had been going so well!

#### 4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

##### 5.1 Answers

1. Billy likes cats.
2. Trains in Japan always run on time.
3. Tina does not drink banana milkshakes.
4. The shopping centre opens every day at 6 a.m.
5. All cookies taste amazing.
6. I find biology interesting.
7. Fred and Shirley do not eat after midnight.
8. Unhappy employees are not good for business.
9. The last house on my street looks haunted.
10. My car has climate control, but it does not work.
11. Flocks of birds fly in interesting formations.
12. Peanut butter and cheese do not go well together.
13. Reading books definitely makes you smarter.
14. We do not travel to the lakes more than twice a year.
15. Grandma's stuffed animal collection scares everyone who comes to visit.

##### 5.1 Present Simple Statements

##### 5.2 Answers

1. Are you hungry?
2. Does Lily listen to heavy metal music?
3. Do all parrots have colourful feathers?

4. Is the carnival safe for children?
5. Does Uncle Jeff know the way to the beach?
6. Do you speak a foreign language?
7. Do you want another cup of tea?
8. Are you sure this milk is non-dairy?
9. Does Howard always talk during class?
10. Do your parents live near your house?
11. Is exercise important to you?
12. Do the campers sleep in tents?
13. Does your cat seem fat because he is so fluffy?
14. Do good grades matter if you want to be an artist?
15. Is the path under the bridge safe at night?
16. Does Abigail work in the library?
17. Do you need to keep taking these pills? or Do you need to keep taking those pills?
18. Does this cauliflower smell strange?
19. Are glass bottles good for storing hot liquids?
20. Is that man a friend of yours?

## 5.2 Present Simple Questions 1

### 5.3 Answers

1. What is (there) in your backpack?
2. When does the sun rise?
3. How do you boil perfect eggs?
4. Where does Brianne buy her hats?
5. Where do the boys play every Tuesday?
6. Why do you always visit the same café?
7. How does Michael always know the answers to these questions?
8. When do you want to go to the cinema?
9. Where does your father work?
10. When does the running club meet?
11. Why do those teachers wear such smart clothes?
12. What do you have to do to open this tin of beans? or What do you have to do to open that tin of beans?
13. How often do the gardeners cut the grass?
14. Which drawer does the cutlery go in?
15. When do the children get home from school?

### 5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

#### 5.4 Answers

1. Does that chocolate not contain milk?
2. Is he not the owner of this car?
3. Which hotel does not have a swimming pool?
4. Are the guests not expected before 7 p.m.?
5. When is not a good time to visit?
6. Why does Ben not play more tennis?
7. Do they not like the colour of their bedroom?
8. Why is she not the boss already?
9. What does not look right in this picture?
10. Does it not matter if we go to the beach this weekend?

#### 5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

#### 5.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Lewes hosts
2. Some people call
3. What is
4. The festivities mark
5. Seven local societies run
6. they are not
7. The town draws in
8. The evening is not
9. the town welcomes
10. the trains take
11. why do these people not go
12. the market town does not have
13. Why do so many people travel
14. The history goes
15. we see
16. the evenings stir
17. the societies do not burn
18. is it not inevitable

#### Bonfire Night in Lewes

Every year on November 5th, (1) Lewes hosts one of the largest bonfire nights in the UK. (2) Some people call Lewes the "Bonfire Capital of the

World". (3) What is so special about these evenings?

(4) The festivities mark Guy Fawkes Night by bringing together bonfire societies from across Sussex. (5) Seven local societies run six separate parades and firework displays, but (6) they are not alone. (7) The town draws in as many as 30 other societies from across Sussex to join in. (8) The evening is not a small event: up to 5,000 people take part in the celebrations, and (9) the town welcomes tens of thousands of spectators; as many as 80,000 one year!

On these evenings, (10) the trains take a long time to queue for, and the locals might complain: (11) why do these people not go somewhere else?! With a population of only 17,500, after all, (12) the market town does not have the facilities for so many people.

(13) Why do so many people travel so far for these parades?

(14) The history goes back a long way. In the past, the celebrations were more like riots, which only gradually became the processions (15) we see today. Even now, (16) the evenings stir controversy: many people ask that (17) the societies do not burn effigies that cause offence. Between the many memorable evenings, the rich history and the media attention, (18) is it not inevitable that so many people should visit?

## 5.5 Mixed Present Simple

### 6.1 Answers

1. My mother is watching the television.
2. The cat is sleeping on the sofa.
3. It is not raining anymore.
4. The phone is ringing.
5. You are learning very fast.
6. We are not working together today.
7. The tap is dripping again.
8. I am not writing about the Egyptians.
9. The nuns are dancing to disco music.
10. She is singing far too loudly.
11. The plants are not growing very fast.
12. Oliver is not sleeping in his own bed.
13. Raccoons are stealing from our bins.
14. That man is staring at you.
15. You are not sitting in the right seat.

### 6.1 Present Continuous Statements

### 6.2 Answers

1. Are you writing an essay?
2. Are the council building a new swimming pool?
3. Is he avoiding his boss?
4. Are you heading north?
5. Is that girl carrying too many books?
6. Is your son behaving well at school?
7. Are you catching a cold? or Do you feel like you are catching a cold?

8. Are Chelsea winning the match?
9. Is Melissa eating healthy food?
10. Are there buns baking in the oven?
11. Is her pregnancy showing?
12. Are the walls in your building getting dirty?
13. Is your creative team generating a lot of ideas?
14. Is Henry sharing his cake with everyone?
15. Are you looking at this picture the wrong way around? or Are you looking at that picture the wrong way around?

#### 6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

#### 6.3 Answers

1. What are you trying to do?
2. Why is he drilling into that wall?
3. What is Nancy thinking about?
4. Where are you walking (to)?
5. How are they investing their savings?
6. Why is the business expanding slowly?
7. Where is Hank storing his old photos?
8. What is drawing lots of birds to the garden?
9. Which direction is the wind blowing (from)?
10. Why are the councillors insisting on raising taxes?
11. How many guests are the kitchen staff preparing food for?
12. Where is Lula parking the car?
13. What is the nurse giving you?
14. What is making that awful sound?
15. How many visitors are waiting in the hall?

#### 6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

#### 6.4 Answers

1. Is Charles not bringing his dog?
2. Are the teachers not setting enough homework?
3. Which ingredient am I not tasting?
4. Where is she not taking the children?
5. Why are my children not drinking their juice?
6. Are the bikes not getting wet in the rain?
7. Which places are you not visiting on your honeymoon?



8. Why are the towels not drying in this room?
9. Is she not missing her boyfriend?
10. Are Joe and Kyle not entering the poetry competition?

#### 6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

#### 6.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Mr Duff is building
2. He is borrowing
3. they are not working
4. The shed is falling
5. Are things not going
6. he is not admitting
7. his wife is asking
8. Winter is coming
9. the family are storing
10. You are doing
11. What are you talking
12. The situation is worrying
13. Her husband is getting
14. he is spending
15. How is she going
16. Mr Duff is not taking
17. the tools are making
18. Why is the man not charging
19. her husband is not watching
20. Everything is coming

Proud Mr Duff

(1) Mr Duff is building a new shed in his garden. (2) He is borrowing tools from his neighbour, Mr Benton, but (3) they are not working well because Mr Duff has not fully charged them. (4) The shed is falling behind schedule. Mr Duff's wife has asked, " (5) Are things not going to plan?"

Mr Duff is a proud man. Though the problem persists, (6) he is not admitting it, so over time (7) his wife is asking lots more questions about the delayed shed. (8) Winter is coming , and while Mr Duff works on the shed (9) the family are storing their outdoor things under the porch.

"(10) You are doing something wrong," Mrs Duff insists.

"(11) What are you talking about?" Mr Duff replies, stubbornly.

(12) The situation is worrying Mrs Duff. (13) Her husband is getting upset and (14) he is spending too much time out there. (15) How is she going to help? She decides to ask Mr Benton.

Mr Benton suggests that (16) Mr Duff is not taking proper care of the tools. He listens, and realises (17) the tools are making the wrong noises.

(18) Why is the man not charging them properly?! Knowing Mr Duff is proud, Mr Benton suggests Mrs Duff charge the tools at night, when (19) her husband is not watching . She does, and soon the construction speeds up. (20) Everything is coming together – just in time.

## 6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

### 7.1 Answers

1. Remi has chosen her dress carefully.
2. The sailors have painted the boat bright green.
3. The dentists have ordered a new chair.
4. My father has not retired yet.
5. You have created a wonderful display.
6. The Robinsons have not prepared the table for dinner.
7. We have paid the delivery man for the pizza.
8. I have refused to take part in the parade.
9. The police have not identified the thief.
10. She has mentioned her family's wealth many times.
11. Edward has not believed in Santa since he was young.
12. The bus service has not improved.
13. I have recommended this movie many times.
14. The storm has destroyed our fence.
15. My parents have not decided which house to buy.

### 7.1 Present Perfect Statements

### 7.2 Answers

1. Have you seen the newspaper this morning?
2. Has the weather improved?
3. Have they taken all the boxes?
4. Have you got any bread?
5. Has Drew told you about her exam results?
6. Has the postman delivered your package?
7. Has your wife agreed to a colour for the walls?
8. Have you brought enough cheese?
9. Has the teacher set some homework? or Has the teacher set any homework?
10. Has the gardener cut the grass?
11. Have Carl and Harry spent all their holiday money?
12. Have you heard this new song?
13. Has your mother gone to the market?
14. Have you understood this correctly?

15. Have all the teams submitted their final answers?

## 7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

### 7.3 Answers

1. Why have you received this package? or Why have you received that package?
2. Where have you been this month?
3. What has Rebecca done with her hair?
4. What has fallen out of the basket?
5. How many pigs has the farmer raised?
6. Why has the club closed?
7. Where have my sweets gone?
8. Which socks have you chosen to wear?
9. When has the scientist ever been wrong?
10. Which paper has the company supplied you with?
11. Why has she failed to convince them?
12. How has this musician remained unknown?
13. Where have you put my violin?
14. What have you fed to those ducks?
15. Why has Sally flown to Portugal?

## 7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

### 7.4 Answers

1. Have you not heard the news?
2. Why has his sister not forgiven him?
3. What have the mice not eaten?
4. Has the meeting not finished yet?
5. Which rooms have they not cleaned?
6. Have these people not suffered enough?
7. Why has the store not sold more umbrellas?
8. What problems have the team not analysed in this report?
9. Has Terry not replied about the cinema?
10. What have we not thought of?

## 7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

### 7.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Molly has returned

2. She has brought
3. Where has she been
4. has she seen
5. I have experienced
6. I have not wasted
7. Have you not read
8. her Dad has not found
9. have you tried
10. I have written
11. One blog post has reached
12. why have so many people visited
13. Australia has stolen
14. I have not enjoyed
15. My new friends have invited
16. Has she made
17. Travelling has changed
18. Where has his shy little girl gone
19. where has she not been
20. he has learned

#### Molly's Travels

(1) Molly has returned after a year of travelling. (2) She has brought her family many gifts, but they are more interested in her stories. (3) Where has she been ? What fascinating sights (4) has she seen ?

"(5) I have experienced many things," Molly says. " (6) I have not wasted the time I had. (7) Have you not read my blog about it?"

Most of her family read the blog, but (8) her Dad has not found time yet. He asks, "What exotic foods (9) have you tried ?"

"(10) I have written so many things about the dishes in China already!" Molly says. " (11) One blog post has reached 5,000 visitors so far."

Everyone congratulates her. Dad wonders, (12) why have so many people visited Molly's blog? He did not know she was a talented writer.

"Which country did you like most?" Mum asks.

"America is nice," Molly says, "but (13) Australia has stolen my heart for good. (14) I have not enjoyed better weather anywhere else in my life! (15) My new friends have invited me back to Melbourne already."

(16) Has she made new friends across the world, to go with this successful blog? (17) Travelling has changed his daughter, Dad can see. (18) Where has his shy little girl gone ? Perhaps now the better question is, (19) where has she not been ? He is happy for her, though, and (20) he has learned his lesson. Next time she goes away, he will pay more attention!

#### 7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

##### 8.1 Answers

1. We have been living here for eight years.
2. I have been listening to pop music.

3. It has been getting harder to park on my road.
4. Those boys have been sitting there for hours.
5. Ferdinand has not been taking French lessons.
6. Our car has been making strange noises.
7. He has been talking for 30 minutes.
8. Pigeons have been nesting on our roof.
9. The pie shop has been turning people away.
10. She has been selling her paintings cheaply.
11. You have not been watching TV all morning.
12. Eric has not been drawing funny cartoons.
13. The phone has been ringing non-stop.
14. I have been reading a book about trees.
15. More raccoons have been stealing from our bins.

#### 8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

#### 8.2 Answers

1. Have you been practising hard enough?
2. Have you been making too much noise?
3. Has she been swimming in the lake?
4. Have you been listening?
5. Has it been getting dark earlier?
6. Has anyone been watering the plants?
7. Have they been waiting for a long time?
8. Has Tim been working for your father?
9. Have you been paying too much for soap?
10. Has the fox been sleeping in the garden?

#### 8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 8.3 Answers

1. Where has this story been going?
2. Why has your computer been heating up?
3. How long has Oliver been riding horses (for)?
4. Why has she been sending out invitations?
5. What has been happening in town this weekend?
6. Where have they been delivering your mail?
7. What have the trucks been carrying this week?
8. Which club has been exploring in a jungle?

9. What has Mr Jones been teaching you?
10. How long have the batteries been charging (for)?

### 8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 8.4 Answers

1. What has Len not been telling us?
2. Has anyone not been studying?
3. Who has not been reading this weekend?
4. What has she not been doing right?
5. Have you not been going to dance class regularly?
6. Have I not been giving Wanda enough attention?
7. Why has the wind not been blowing this spring?
8. What questions have the reporters not been asking?
9. Has that sound not been worrying you?
10. Why has the team not been working harder?

### 8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 8.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. The council has been making
2. the beach has been suffering
3. The daily tests have not been meeting
4. What has been causing
5. holiday-makers have not been picking up
6. people have not been cleaning up
7. What has the council been doing
8. Visitors have been collecting rubbish
9. The council has been providing
10. Children have been treating
11. Dog walkers have been ignoring
12. Beach patrols have been warning
13. Why have they been focusing
14. I have been watching
15. the truth has been coming out
16. the water company has been dumping
17. Why has the council not been focusing

18. the beach has finally been getting

#### Cleaning the Beach

(1) The council has been making efforts to improve Worthing's beach. For a long time, (2) the beach has been suffering from soiled water. (3) The daily tests have not been meeting expected levels of cleanness. (4) What has been causing this?

There are two main problems with the water. One is waste from people, where (5) holiday-makers have not been picking up after themselves. Another is waste from animals – where (6) people have not been cleaning up after their dogs.

(7) What has the council been doing to change this?

“Litter pick” stations have been set up. (8) Visitors have been collecting rubbish whilst walking on the beach. (9) The council has been providing bags and “grab sticks” to encourage this. (10) Children have been treating this as a game: how much litter can they pick up in an hour?

Meanwhile, dogs are no longer allowed on the beach during summer. (11) Dog walkers have been ignoring the signs, so there are now big fines in place. (12) Beach patrols have been warning dog walkers not to use certain areas to avoid being fined. Not everyone is happy about this. Hillary Menrose complained, “ (13) Why have they been focusing so hard on dogs, when seagulls make just as much mess. We always pick up after Fluff Doogle on our walks, but (14) I have been watching those birds, and they drop litter, too!”

There were big protests when the council wished to further limit dog walkers, and (15) the truth has been coming out . Actually, there is a third reason that the sea is dirty: (16) the water company has been dumping waste into the sea. Why (17) has the council not been focusing on them? One thing's for sure: (18) the beach has finally been getting the attention it deserves!

#### 8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous

##### 9.1 Answers

1. The final exam will be difficult.
2. Our friends will come for dinner.
3. They are not going to watch the show together.
4. Sasha will not buy the next round of drinks.
5. Amy is going to regret her decision.
6. My shoes are not going to last another winter.
7. You will not agree with me.
8. The church bells are going to ring today.
9. Those geese will steal your bread.
10. The client will approve these new designs.
11. I am not going to lend Charles any more money.
12. Mrs Freda will not teach noisy children.
13. The festival is going to include a lot of musicians.
14. Your new table will arrive tomorrow.
15. This course is not going to take very long.

##### 9.1 Future Simple Statements

##### 9.2 Answers

1. Are you going to the party on Saturday?
2. Is he going to give back your book?
3. Will the actor remember his lines?

4. Is this bus going to stop in Portsmouth?
5. Will the performance start on time?
6. Will Vera meet the man of her dreams?
7. Are the Olympics going to be held in Italy?
8. Will Tom admit that he ate the cake?
9. Is your house going to sell by September?
10. Are you (not) going to finish your coffee?
11. Will the old bicycle need to be repaired?
12. Will James bring his wife to the concert?
13. Are the doors going to be replaced?
14. Is that truck going to fit in the parking space?
15. Is the T-shirt going to shrink in the washing machine?
16. Will you split the bill evenly?
17. Will she learn these words by Tuesday?
18. Are you going to see my cousins at the weekend?
19. Will your town change over the next five years?
20. Is that young man going to propose to his girlfriend?

#### 9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

#### 9.3 Answers

1. Who is going to pay for this damage?
2. When will the builders finish the roof?
3. What is going to happen to the vacant beach huts?
4. How is Harry going to climb that tree?
5. What will the papers write about the new President?
6. Why are you going to lose your job?
7. When will your father return from his holiday?
8. Why is the barbecue going to be held in the park?
9. Where are you going to find a good carpet?
10. How will the mice cause havoc?
11. What will you do while your computer is updating?
12. What is she going to cook for her lunch?
13. When is the new product going to be ready?
14. Who will volunteer to take your Saturday shift?
15. Where will you go for your summer holiday?



### 9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

#### 9.4 Answers

1. Will you not return next year?
2. When are they not going to be at home?
3. What is Drew not going to take on his trip?
4. How will I not watch TV for a week?
5. Are we not going to prepare pasta for dinner?
6. Why is their mother not going to buy them more toys?
7. What terms will they not agree to?
8. Who will not come with us to Kent?
9. Is that tall cake not going to fall over?
10. Who will she not invite to her wedding?

#### 9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

#### 9.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. We are going to build
2. It will not be
3. My Uncle Jimmy will help
4. he is going to need
5. he will say
6. are we going to share
7. he will agree
8. The rocket will fly
9. It is not going to cost
10. my dad will find
11. how many people will fit
12. Is the government going to notice
13. they will not allow
14. our rocket is going to reach
15. We will discover
16. What will you use
17. It is going to work
18. we will persuade
19. the adults will build
20. Uncle Jimmy is not going to steal

## The Spaceship

(1) We are going to build a spaceship in our back garden. (2) It will not be easy, but we have the plans and the right tools. (3) My Uncle Jimmy will help put it together, as (4) he is going to need to earn his keep while he stays with us this summer. We haven't asked him yet, but (5) he will say yes, I am sure. But (6) are we going to share all our plans with him? I hope (7) he will agree without knowing how valuable the project is.

(8) The rocket will fly faster and higher than any before. (9) It is not going to cost much to make, because (10) my dad will find good materials in the dump. I do have some unanswered questions, though: (11) how many people will fit inside? (12) Is the government going to notice what we are doing? If they hear about our amazing rocket, (13) they will not allow us to succeed. The government does not want competition – (14) our rocket is going to reach Venus. (15) We will discover valuable diamonds before they do.

Mum thinks I can't do it. She says, " (16) What will you use to fuel the rocket?"

"Hope," I tell her. " (17) It is going to work because we have hope."

And anyway, (18) we will persuade Jimmy to deal with the other problems. We are the brains and the planners, after all: (19) the adults will build it. As long as (20) Uncle Jimmy is not going to steal our ideas.

## 9.5 Mixed Future Simple

### 10.1 Answers

1. I will be asking everyone two questions.
2. The days are going to be getting longer.
3. My friend will be driving us to Oxford.
4. We will be playing football all morning.
5. You are going to be waiting for hours.
6. Richard is not going to be researching traffic control this week.
7. She will be sweeping the floor.
8. The company is going to be organising a trip soon.
9. I am not going to be working this afternoon.
10. Penny will be aiming for the best results.
11. He is going to be adding songs to his playlist all night.
12. The bank will not be opening a new branch in Rye.
13. We are going to be dancing on stage this Friday.
14. You are not going to be sitting there when I get back.
15. The baby will be waking up soon.

### 10.1 Future Continuous Statements

### 10.2 Answers

1. Are you going to be washing these dishes?
2. Will Jools be taking the train to Detroit?
3. Will they be supplying you with milk?
4. Is Eric going to be expanding his gallery?
5. Is she going to be speaking on the panel?

6. Will the badgers be sleeping during the day?
7. Will the producers be continuing the radio show?
8. Are they going to be closing more stores?
9. Will the planes be landing at this airport?
10. Is Mrs Antwerp going to be spending time here during her visit?
11. Is the Duke going to be announcing his retirement this week?
12. Will you be meeting the neighbours together?
13. Will they be collecting the sofa today?
14. Is the farmer going to be planting wheat in that field?
15. Are you going to be performing at the Royal Albert Hall?

#### 10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

#### 10.3 Answers

1. Where will everyone be sitting this evening?
2. What are you going to be doing in Bali?
3. How often is Tristan going to be exercising this month?
4. What will Greta be talking about on Wednesday?
5. Who are you going to be sharing a room with?
6. When is she going to be jogging?
7. When will they be clearing away this mess?
8. What will you be reading next week?
9. Where will the barman be hanging his new fairy lights?
10. How long is Clive going to be fixing that van (for)?
11. Where are you going to be skating tomorrow?
12. Who will be wearing the best costume?
13. What is the school going to be teaching this spring?
14. When are the bakers going to be selling their doughnuts?
15. Who is going to be accepting the award?

#### 10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

#### 10.4 Answers

1. When will you not be studying this week?
2. Are the girls not going to be swimming tomorrow?
3. Where is he not going to be riding the horse?
4. Why will they not be attending the party?
5. Will the chef not be preparing a new dish?
6. Is the flag not going to be flying for the President's arrival?

7. Why will they not be looking for the escaped mongoose with us?
8. What will Liz not be bringing on this trip?
9. Why are you not going to be joining the badminton club?
10. Is the plumber not going to be repairing the boiler over lunch?

#### 10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

#### 10.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. scouts will be going
2. They are going to be camping
3. The children are not going to be lazing
4. They will be challenging
5. What will the scouts be doing
6. The children will be making
7. They will be hiking
8. they will not be resting
9. everyone is going to be cooking
10. the children will not be calling
11. What else is going to be happening
12. the weather will be changing
13. Mr Ryan will not be letting
14. will it not be raining
15. their activities are going to be occurring
16. I will be preparing
17. What will we be doing

#### The Scout Trip

The Wood Row (1) scouts will be going to the New Forest for four days next week. (2) They are going to be camping in a field where they will study the local wildlife. Their leader, Mr Ryan, said, “ (3) The children are not going to be lazing about. (4) They will be challenging themselves all weekend, so they can learn more.”

What (5) will the scouts be doing on their adventure? A full itinerary has been prepared:

(6) The children will be making notes about the animals they see. ( 7) They will be hiking for three hours each day, and (8) they will not be resting much at camp, as (9) everyone is going to be cooking two meals each day. Phones are banned, so (10) the children will not be calling home.

(11) What else is going to be happening over the weekend? Well, (12) the weather will be changing on Saturday morning – from sunny to rainy – but (13) Mr Ryan will not be letting that stop them. He asked himself, “When (14) will it not be raining ?” and made sure that (15) their activities are going to be occurring at those times.

“(16) I will be preparing alternative indoor activities, too,” he said. “ (17) What will we be doing while it’s raining? Well, there’s a nice old car museum to explore, for starters.”

One thing is for sure: the young scouts are going to be tired.

## 10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

### 11.1 Answers

1. We will have decided by 1 p.m.
2. She will have sold the dress before noon.
3. I am not going to have finished this book by nightfall.
4. The workers will have painted our bedroom.
5. You will have accepted my proposal by Friday.
6. Regina is going to have designed a new logo before the meeting.
7. The champion is going to have played his last game by December.
8. The scientists will have added the new planets to the map.
9. The council will have cleared the roads for the festival.
10. Our neighbours are going to have replaced their windows by Monday.
11. The keys will not have been found by then.
12. The university will have awarded my niece a prize.
13. Victor is going to have escaped before we get back.
14. The groundsmen will have planted new grass over the old field.
15. The eggs will not have gone bad.

### 11.1 Future Perfect Statements

### 11.2 Answers

1. Will they have replaced the batteries by tomorrow?
2. Are you going to have measured the temperature?
3. Will you have washed the dishes in time for dinner?
4. Will the dentist have raised her prices?
5. Are they going to have fixed the leaking sink by 10 a.m.?
6. Are you going to have managed this project well?
7. Are the new batteries going to have arrived in time?
8. Will the hats have sold?
9. Will Billie have brought her best socks?
10. Is Mrs Carter going to have visited her daughter?
11. Will petrol prices have risen again?
12. Is the priest going to have learned to dance before the ball?
13. Are the geese going to have left the park?
14. Will you have made enough scones for everyone?
15. Will the panel have discussed the important issues?

## 11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

### 11.3 Answers

1. Who is going to have eaten before the party?
2. What will have happened to the wall?
3. Where are you going to have stayed this summer?
4. When is Manny going to have returned that book?
5. Where will the pirates have hidden the treasure?
6. How will the manager have handled his own accounts?
7. When are your clients going to have paid you?
8. What will you have learned on the course?
9. When will the sandwiches have been prepared?
10. Where are the traders going to have docked the ship?

## 11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

### 11.4 Answers

1. Where is Darren not going to have been?
2. What will the gerbils not have bitten through?
3. Why will they not have learned from their mistakes?
4. How many cakes are you not going to have made by Saturday?
5. Will the reporter not have written her article on time?
6. Who is not going to have solved this puzzle before the bell?
7. Why is Mrs Harris not going to have fixed her dress before tomorrow?
8. Will the traffic not have caused a delay?
9. Where am I not going to have spoken by the end of my reading tour?
10. Why will they not have delivered the bad news before he arrives?

## 11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

### 11.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. German clients will have arrived
2. They will have finished
3. they are not going to have processed
4. Bob will have started
5. What will he have done
6. he is going to have called
7. What will he not have completed

8. she will have created
9. She will have prepared
10. she is not going to have eaten
11. The pair will have polished
12. they will have sealed

#### The Big Presentation

Bob and Charlotte are giving a big presentation tomorrow at 2 p.m. Their (1) German clients will have arrived by then, and it is important to impress them. There is lots to do. (2) They will have finished the overall report by this evening, but the graphs will be incomplete as (3) they are not going to have processed all the data in time. Charlotte is worried because she has to take her children to school before work, but (4) Bob will have started on the graphs before she arrives.

(5) What will he have done ? She hopes (6) he is going to have called the research department and compiled their data. (7) What will he not have completed ? The graphs themselves. Unfortunately, Bob is not very good with graph software. But Charlotte imagines (8) she will have created all the necessary graphs before noon. That will give them time to prepare to greet the clients.

Charlotte will be so busy, she will not have time for lunch. (9) She will have prepared smoothies in the morning, though. Hopefully the clients won't notice (10) she is not going to have eaten lunch. (11) The pair will have polished their presentation to such a high standard, they should be too impressed to care about anything else. By tomorrow afternoon, Charlotte imagines (12) they will have sealed the deal.

#### 11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

##### 12.1 Answers

1. I will have been learning Mandarin for a month by this Friday.
2. Soon, the couple will have been arguing for 20 minutes.
3. We are going to have been dancing all night long.
4. You will have been choosing the flowers carefully.
5. The storm clouds are going to have been gathering for a while.
6. Georgie will have been listening to pop music again.
7. Our dog will have been sleeping while we were out.
8. I am going to have been cycling all morning, so I'll need a shower.
9. Carl will have been practising for the Olympics.
10. The boats will have been bumping into each other overnight.
11. The spies will have been listening.
12. My uncle is going to have been researching our family history ahead of the reunion.
13. It will have been getting hotter before we go on holiday.
14. The tree will have been shedding its leaves for weeks.
15. She is going to have been laughing at her own radio show.

##### 12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

##### 12.2 Answers

1. Are you going to have been waiting all morning?
2. Will Nancy have been singing throughout the first act?

3. Will they have been baking a cake?
4. Are you going to have been wasting your time?
5. Are the shoppers going to have been queueing for hours?
6. Will Charlie have been shaving regularly during the holiday?
7. Will we have been writing to each other for a long time?
8. Is Sally going to have been working in insurance for two years?
9. Is the tide going to have been going out?
10. Will the grapes have been getting mouldy?

#### 12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 12.3 Answers

1. How long will she have been practising (for)?
2. Where will Jim have been swimming?
3. How far are you going to have been travelling?
4. What are the trucks going to have been carrying?
5. Why will the children have been walking home?
6. How long are you going to have been working on this project (for)?
7. What are they going to have been waiting for?
8. Why will the foxes have been gathering in the garden?
9. Who is he going to have been asking for help?
10. What is the intern going to have been saying about his job?

#### 12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 12.4 Answers

1. Where will the tractor not have been going (to)?
2. Am I not going to have been participating enough?
3. How long is your aunt not going to have been working for?
4. What are we not going to have been seeing?
5. Will they not have been losing hope?
6. Why is he not going to have been preparing for the test?
7. Which buildings will the company not have been developing?
8. Are the coats not going to have been hanging in the right places?
9. Will the guard not have been standing upright?
10. What will our friends not have been showing us?

#### 12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 12.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.



1. things will have been changing
2. they will have been building
3. we will not have been sleeping
4. the population will have been growing
5. new shops will have been opening
6. I will have been living
7. I will not have been working
8. are these outsiders not going to have been hovering
9. we will have been getting
10. they are not going to have been expecting
11. local researchers will have been applying
12. we are not going to have been wasting

#### The Fish of Mugrub

Things have been changing in the fishing village of Mugrub. By November, (1) things will have been changing for five years. Lots of new buildings have been built there; some residents feel that when the next few projects begin (2) they will have been building apartments forever. Resident Liam McDonald said, "And because of the noise, when they finish, (3) we will not have been sleeping for years!"

Tourists and researchers have been coming to Mugrub to see a new glowing fish, discovered almost five years ago. If projections are met this December, (4) the population will have been growing by 25% each year. Should the latest tackle shop get permission, (5) new shops will have been opening at a rate of four a year. But has happiness been increasing in the same way?

"(6) I will have been living here for three decades this August," McDonald said. "And (7) I will not have been working for almost half of that. I liked the peace and quiet before. The mayor says it will calm down, but (8) are these outsiders not going to have been hovering around for five years, soon?"

Not everyone is as unhappy with the changing village. Shop owner Jenny McCluck looks forward to the future: "I imagine (9) we will have been getting visitors from all over the world during the summer. They cannot resist the village, and though (10) they are not going to have been expecting to stay for long, they will do. It's good for business."

It's also good for the glowing fish. This summer, (11) local researchers will have been applying for grants each year for the past five years – and they are confident Mugrub's popularity will finally secure funding this time. Dr Bailey said, "Next year, we expect to uncover the mysteries of the glowing fish, as (12) we are not going to have been wasting time searching for funding!"

#### 12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

#### 13.1 Answers

1. Isn't this easy?
2. There were too many people on the boat.
3. Does Paul not seem quiet today?
4. Swans are very loud.
5. It is not a good day to go swimming.
6. What will you wear to the gala?
7. We waited for hours.
8. They will be at the dock before noon.

9. Does this photo look real to you?
10. When did Nina buy her house?
11. She went to the shop for more mushrooms.
12. I always leave my wallet behind.
13. Won't you tidy your room later?
14. You look too tired to swim.
15. How did the fisherman buy a new boat?
16. This tie appeals to me most.
17. Who did not take their medicine this morning?
18. The President will not give up on this reform.
19. Our house fell apart over a period of many years.
20. Practice makes perfect.

### 13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

### 13.2 Answers

1. Do rabbits eat grass?
2. Did Jimmy fall in the mud?
3. Do you (always) enjoy the circus?
4. Will Wendy be in the market tomorrow?
5. Where does the river run through?
6. How many men waited in the street?
7. Did he sit on the bench for two hours?
8. Will there be twenty people at dinner?
9. What time will the delivery arrive?
10. When do they study very hard?
11. Which was the busiest city that year? or Which city was the busiest that year?
12. Who will watch your child tomorrow?
13. Are men less healthy than women?
14. Will the squirrels steal those nuts?
15. Did the radio's battery run out?
16. Is the marigold her favourite flower?
17. Does Polly own a bicycle?
18. Who saved all the children? or Who did the lifeguards save?
19. When you are older, will you get twenty cats? or Will you get twenty cats when you are older?
20. Before the war, did this shop sell fresh bread? or Did this shop sell fresh bread before the war?

### 13.2 Simple Questions

### 13.3 Answers

1. Does Robert not eat meat? ( or Doesn't Robert eat meat?)
2. Did the investigator not understand the report? ( or Didn't the investigator understand ...)
3. Why won't people give your charity donations? ( or Why will people not give ...)
4. Will she not visit her mother again? ( or Won't she visit ...)
5. Do you not like the bagpipes? ( or Don't you like ...)
6. Will Harry not go to school tomorrow? ( or Won't Harry go ...)
7. Did your friends not meet until college? ( or Didn't your friends meet ...)
8. Are these questions not very strange? ( or Aren't these questions ...)
9. Will running every day not make you fit? ( or Won't running every day make ...)
10. Did you not feed the ducks again? ( or Didn't you feed ...)
11. Who does not practise guitar very often? ( or Who doesn't practise ...)
12. Why did the council not remove your rubbish this week? ( or Why didn't the council remove ...)
13. Will they not be able park their car? ( or Won't they be able to ...)
14. Did Simon not pass his driving test? ( or Didn't Simon pass ...)
15. What does not look right? ( or What doesn't look ...)

### 13.3 Simple Negative Questions

#### 13.4 Answers

1. Correct
2. Incorrect – I do not live there anymore. (or I don't live there anymore.)
3. Incorrect – The kitchen smells like sweet apple pie.
4. Correct
5. Incorrect – Herman and Claire enjoy playing chess on Saturdays.
6. Correct
7. Correct
8. Incorrect – This aeroplane will fly if it is repaired.
9. Incorrect – He did not arrive in time for the show last night.
10. Incorrect – The greyhounds returned after they escaped.
11. Correct
12. Incorrect – The car looks dirty now.
13. Incorrect – The toaster worked when we tried it earlier.
14. Correct
15. Correct

### 13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

### 13.5 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Bill lives
2. His house sits
3. He always dreamed
4. he finally has
5. It took
6. he did not believe ( or he didn't believe)
7. His friends often asked
8. Why do you want
9. Didn't anyone tell
10. Will you not drown ( or Won't you drown)
11. many people said
12. Beach property tends
13. it is not easy ( or it isn't easy)
14. These details did not bother ( or These details didn't bother)
15. he determined
16. he saved
17. He bought
18. he enjoys
19. The water does not come ( or The water doesn't come)
20. Bill is going to invite
21. they will see ( or they'll see)
22. what will he do
23. Does he have
24. Bill imagines
25. He is going to study ( or He's going to study)
26. he will buy ( or he'll buy)
27. Nothing is going to stop

#### A House by the Sea

(1) Bill lives in a bungalow by the sea, now. (2) His house sits opposite the beach. (3) He always dreamed of owning a house with a sea view, and (4) he finally has it. (5) It took him fifteen years to find the right home. At times, (6) he did not believe ( or he didn't believe) it would be possible. (7) His friends often asked , “ (8) Why do you want a home by the sea? (9) Didn't anyone tell you that the sea is dangerous? (10) Will you not drown ( or Won't you drown) ?”

Indeed, before he moved, (11) many people said that storms and floods could damage a seaside home. (12) Beach property tends to be expensive, too. And in England, (13) it is not easy ( or it isn't easy) to find space along the sea, certainly not near big towns. (14) These details did not bother ( or These details didn't bother) Bill. Whatever the price, (15) he determined , his dream would come true.

Finally, (16) he saved enough money and found exactly the right place. (17) He bought his bungalow outright. Now, (18) he enjoys sitting on the porch watching the waves. (19) The water does not come ( or The water doesn't come) high enough to damage the house. (20) Bill is going to invite all his friends down during the summer, and (21) they will see ( or they'll see) for themselves how wonderful it is here.

But now Bill has achieved his dream, (22) what will he do next? (23) Does he have other plans? Yes. (24) Bill imagines what life would be like on the sea. (26) He is going to study ( or He's going to study) to become a boat captain. Then, (27) he will buy ( or he'll buy) a boat. (28) Nothing is going to stop him.

### 13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

#### 14.1 Answers

1. He will be coming back here after he buys some wine.
2. Everyone was enjoying themselves before we got there.
3. Rita was sewing a new dress two days ago.
4. Joe is dancing exceptionally well today.
5. You will be performing first tonight.
6. People will be discussing this for a long time to come.
7. I was partying all night, so I needed to rest.
8. She is sitting in the wrong seat – someone tell her. or Someone tell her she is sitting in the wrong seat.
9. We were arguing in the street but got told to stop.
10. The giraffe was standing under the tree while it rained.
11. The defeated team will be licking their wounds later.
12. I am trying to sleep but it is too noisy outside.
13. We will be learning exciting new techniques next week.
14. The cleaners are emptying the bins right now.
15. You are annoying me, please go away.

#### 14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

#### 14.2 Answers

1. How long were you working (for)?
2. When will they be climbing the mountain?
3. Is your boy (not) studying enough?
4. Is Jenny taking her language test again?
5. Where was he fighting with a gorilla?
6. Will she be entering the contest? or Is she entering the contest?
7. Is Rupert doing lots of exercise?
8. Were you talking too loudly?
9. Where was the gang hanging out?
10. Is Charlotte giving out sweets?
11. Why are the police searching for a pink car?

12. Will she be cleaning up this mess for a long time?

13. Will Bob be waiting in the foyer (at 9 p.m.)?

14. Who was gathering below the balcony?

15. Is Charles tying his shoelaces?

#### 14.2 Continuous Questions

#### 14.3 Answers

1. Are you not eating well?

2. Were they not planning to come?

3. Will you not be joining them?

4. Is it not getting warmer?

5. Why are you not recycling more plastic?

6. Where is the coast guard not patrolling?

7. Why is Henry not giving any presents this Christmas?

8. Were the foxes not standing on the roof?

9. Why is the bookshop not opening early today?

10. Is your team not playing in the match this weekend?

11. What was Sheila not revealing (about her birdcage)?

12. Was the girl not standing there when you took the photo?

13. Will the campers not be expecting (you to have) fresh water?

14. Is that lion not getting (too) close to the shelter?

15. Why were you not waiting in the parlour last night?

#### 14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

#### 14.4 Answers

1. Aren't you reading that magazine?

2. Weren't they working during yesterday's storm?

3. Aren't your tissues running out? or Won't your tissues be running out?

4. Won't Danny be waiting at home?

5. How long weren't you studying for?

6. Why aren't you sitting close to the stage?

7. Won't Hailey be skiing with you?

8. Weren't they fighting over the last piece of cheese?

9. Isn't the weather changing rapidly?

10. What weren't they including in the recipe?

11. Aren't the farmers working in the field?

12. Wasn't Howard gathering mushrooms last week?
13. Why isn't the fireman listening?
14. Aren't the tulips turning a curious shade of purple?
15. Weren't you taking notes?

#### 14.4 Continuous Contractions

#### 14.5 Answers

1. Incorrect – You were singing the right tune.
2. Correct
3. Correct
4. Incorrect – I am baking a wonderful cake.
5. Incorrect – His parents will be visiting tomorrow.
6. Incorrect – The birds were not sitting there yesterday.
7. Correct
8. Incorrect – We were shopping in the mall when the alarm went off.
9. Correct
10. Correct
11. Incorrect – We will not be waiting very long if you call ahead.
12. Correct
13. Correct
14. Incorrect – The cat is staring out of the window again.
15. Incorrect – They will not be performing this evening, after all.

#### 14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

#### 14.6 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. I'm booking
2. What's playing
3. It won't be showing
4. Why are they still making
5. It's getting
6. I'm not going
7. I'm watching
8. What are you doing
9. I was studying
10. Weren't you revising
11. I'll be reading

12. You're working

13. we're not seeing ( or we aren't seeing)

14. What are you thinking

15. Bridget was telling

16. I'm driving

Going to the Cinema

Billy: (1) I'm booking tickets for the cinema. Do you want to come?

Angela: Hmm. (2) What's playing ?

Billy: It's a superhero movie. (3) It won't be showing for much longer, so we need to go now.

Angela: Another superhero movie! (4) Why are they still making them?

Billy: This is the best one yet – (5) it's getting amazing reviews.

Angela: I don't care – (6) I'm not going to another superhero film.

Billy: Well, (7) I'm watching it whether you come or not. (8) What are you doing , anyway?

Angela: (9) I was studying for my exam on Friday before you interrupted, actually.

Billy: (10) Weren't you revising all day yesterday?

Angela: Yes, and (11) I'll be reading all day tomorrow, too. So what?

Billy: (12) You're working too hard! Come to the cinema and have a break.

Angela: Fine. I'll go to the cinema, but (13) we're not seeing ( or we aren't seeing) that superhero film.

Billy: (14) What are you thinking of watching instead?

Angela: There's a new thriller. With a twist. (15) Bridget was telling me about it last week.

Billy: Hmm. Fine. But (16) I'm driving !

#### 14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

##### 15.1 Answers

1. I had finished my essay but was not happy with it.
2. Ryan has bought a new camera and cannot stop talking about it.
3. The shop will have closed before you get there.
4. You have not prepared the salad, have you?
5. Many artists had recorded the tune before John produced a cover.
6. Has the door been forced open?
7. Our friends will not have arrived yet, by this time tomorrow.
8. Will the weather have changed by the weekend?
9. She had started a new book even though she was still reading one.
10. Sam will have walked home, if he is not at the school.
11. I have not seen this film before; it looks good.



12. Had they eaten so many scones that they could not have cake?
13. The children have built a den, so the living room is a mess.
14. Had the priest gone before she arrived?
15. The restaurant will not have served dinner by 7 p.m., as the chef is missing.

#### 15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

#### 15.2 Answers

1. Have you been to Hungary before?
2. Had they locked the door before going out?
3. Has the chef cooked soup today?
4. Will you have rested before the train comes?
5. Had someone punctured the wheel deliberately?
6. Have you told her this before?
7. Has the water boiled yet?
8. Had the minister taken the wrong backpack?
9. Will the snow have cleared by morning?
10. Have you seen many Japanese films?
11. Has the university received my application?
12. Have they released the lobsters too early?
13. Had she written the right answer?
14. Will Maria have cooked the pies by 2 p.m.?
15. Has it become harder to buy property?

#### 15.2 Perfect Questions 1

#### 15.3 Answers

1. What has Shirley done?
2. How had he got inside?
3. Where will the courier have left the package?
4. Where has Luke put all the empty milk cartons?
5. What had the man (at the front desk) said?
6. Why has no one opened a window (in here)?
7. Who has drawn all over your papers?
8. Where had the badgers hidden?
9. When will the boats have docked (by)?
10. How had Tim broken his phone?
11. Where has she put the remote control?
12. What had the caretaker cleaned the floor with?

13. When had the package arrived?
14. Who has showed the most potential this year?
15. What (decorations) have we stored in the garage?

#### 15.3 Perfect Questions 2

#### 15.4 Answers

1. Have you not seen Alfred this month?
2. Has the mail not arrived yet?
3. Had the explorers not taken the correct turn?
4. Will the hosts not have prepared for a hundred guests?
5. Has it not been 45 minutes since you put the bread in the oven?
6. What question had you not asked before?
7. Will they not have reserved their seats at the theatre?
8. Had the cupboard not squeaked as loudly (that morning)?
9. Has her boyfriend not returned yet?
10. Have we not paid for this meal already?
11. Will the shops not have closed by 7 p.m.?
12. Why had Harriette not packed the correct shoes?
13. Had he not rested before he started work?
14. Have you not signed up for lessons?
15. Will the taxi not have arrived by midnight?

#### 15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

#### 15.5 Answers

1. Which goals hasn't the President achieved?
2. Why haven't you heard this tune before?
3. Hadn't the thieves hidden the jewels?
4. Won't the men have distributed the presents in time?
5. What hadn't she wanted (that she received)?
6. Where hasn't the tour group visited?
7. How hadn't they known the door would be locked?
8. What won't our opponents have planned for?
9. Haven't you helped with the dishes?
10. Which chair hasn't the kitten damaged?
11. Hadn't he noticed the creature (was following him)?
12. What won't you have completed by New Year?

## 15.5 Perfect Contractions

### 15.6 Answers

1. Incorrect – I have not seen that play, but I hear it is good.
2. Correct
3. Correct
4. Incorrect – Victor has not learned to play the piano yet.
5. Correct
6. Incorrect – It had not been easy, but the girls replaced the punctured tyre.
7. Incorrect – We hadn't brought a map and got hopelessly lost.
8. Incorrect – Had Sue fed animals before or not?
9. Incorrect – He will have heard the good news before the meeting.
10. Correct
11. Incorrect – They will have collected all the flowers before the wedding day.
12. Correct
13. Incorrect – She has not lived here for long, has she?
14. Incorrect – I will have recovered by the time they arrive tomorrow.
15. Correct

### 15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

### 15.7 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been
2. the owners have renovated
3. they have decorated
4. they will have spent
5. the house will have been
6. Why has it failed
7. hasn't sold
8. the owners had painted
9. we'd asked
10. Why had the owners hired
11. they haven't done
12. We've lived
13. the damp has never bothered
14. mushrooms had grown

15. we'd expected
16. Has anyone ever moved
17. Mr Murray hasn't found
18. have become
19. What had they brought
20. how many agents will we have tried

#### The House that Would Not Sell

The building on Grand Avenue (1) has been up for sale for a long time now. The owners (2) have renovated it recently: (3) they have decorated all the rooms, and are currently building a new garage. They claim (4) they will have spent more than £10,000 on these improvements when they are done. But (5) the house will have been on the market six months by next week.

(6) Why has it failed to sell?

The property probably (7) hasn't sold because of the damp problems. One couple who went to view it complained that (8) the owners had painted over mould on one wall. The real estate agent expressed frustration about this: "I wish (9) we'd asked more questions before taking on the house. (10) Why had the owners already hired two different estate agents? Because the others quit after they discovered the damp!"

The owners, Jeff and Winn Murray, insist (11) they haven't done anything wrong. Jeff said, " (12) We've lived here for ten years and (13) the damp has never bothered us. When we first moved in, (14) mushrooms had grown on the carpet. Did we complain? No, because (15) we'd expected a few problems beforehand. (16) Has anyone ever moved house without problems?"

(17) Mr Murray hasn't found his potential customers forgiving, however. Buyers can easily to spot damp now, as moisture scanners (18) have become so effective. Winn Murray said, "One young couple's clothes beeped while we showed them around. (19) What had they brought in their pockets? A damp-measuring device! Perhaps we need a new estate agent, who will bring less devious buyers. But (20) how many agents will we have tried then? Perhaps we should just keep the house!"

#### 15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

##### 16.1 Answers

1. Ben had been watching TV for an hour while the soup simmered.
2. Why has your phone been ringing since you started your shower?
3. Our friends had been visiting us once a week until they left town.
4. The gate has not been opening properly for a week now.
5. You had been studying medicine for two years last time I saw you.
6. They will have been waiting all evening by the time you get to the party.
7. Jason has not been calling the council every day this week.
8. How long will I have been travelling for when I finally get home?
9. We had been seeing each other for a year before we got married.
10. The men will have been climbing for days before they reach the summit.
11. Has she been trying to learn Spanish before her holiday next month?
12. I have been considering whether or not to go out this evening.

##### 16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

##### 16.2 Answers

1. Had he been studying for a long time before the exam?

2. Will they have been building that wall all summer?
3. Had you been sitting or standing when the bell rang?
4. Have you been reading about giraffes this week?
5. Will Ben have been living on a boat for two years this August?
6. Has she been staring at me all morning?
7. Had you been looking for a new bag last time I saw you?
8. Has my wife been cooking something that smells delicious?
9. Had mushrooms been growing under the floorboards?
10. Will our nephew have been walking for months before we see him?
11. Has Hillary been arguing with the neighbours?
12. Will the squirrels have been sleeping all winter?

#### 16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 16.3 Answers

1. Who had been banging on the door that night?
2. Where has she been hiding her silverware?
3. Why has Greg been sending the TV station angry letters?
4. What has the plumber been doing in the basement (for a long time)?
5. How long will Jane have been learning to ride camels (for) (come March)?
6. Who had Simon been talking to before dinner?
7. Where will the cake have been cooling (for three hours) before tea?
8. How long had the birds been flying (for) (before they arrived at the lake)?
9. What have you been writing in your journal?
10. Will you have been practising (that dance) for two weeks (before the show)?

#### 16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 16.4 Answers

1. Have the tomatoes not been growing in this soil?
2. Had Veronica not been sending the letters?
3. Had they not been collecting (any) names during the survey?
4. Will you not have been working here long enough for a raise this month?
5. Had she not been paying attention when the homework was set?
6. Has the old man not been eating his beans?
7. Will the couple not have been renting for long before they buy?
8. Have Roger and Kim not been washing their towels?
9. Had your aunt not been buying anything online?
10. Why will Sandy not have been working today?

#### 16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

#### 16.5 Answers

1. Who hadn't been wearing her crown at night?
2. Won't he have been travelling through Europe (next month)?
3. What hadn't Sally been sharing (with anyone)?
4. Haven't you been using the blue pen?
5. Hadn't Dennis been searching for his wallet all morning?
6. Which cookery shows haven't I been watching?
7. How long hasn't she been replying to my messages (for)?
8. Won't the club have been expanding quickly enough to earn a bonus?
9. Why hasn't the charity been accepting donations since January?
10. Hadn't the cupboard been squeaking last time we were there?

#### 16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

#### 16.6 Answers

1. Correct
2. Incorrect – The Smiths had not been closing their windows at night, even when it rained.
3. Incorrect – The children have been playing outside this week.
4. Correct
5. Incorrect – We have not been meeting as often now as we used to.
6. Correct
7. Incorrect – Mandy had been letting her sister use the computer that summer.
8. Correct
9. Correct
10. Incorrect – She will have been reading the correct book.
11. Incorrect – Jim will have been working for eight days by tomorrow morning.
12. Correct
13. Correct
14. Incorrect – Have our guests been waiting long? They look bored.
15. Incorrect – My car has not been starting since the accident last Thursday.

#### 16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

#### 16.7 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been training
2. has been taking place

3. has been running
4. hadn't been swimming
5. had never been climbing
6. will have been learning
7. Why has she been working
8. Janet had been getting
9. She'd been seeing
10. Claude has been competing
11. What had she been thinking
12. she'd been rising
13. Her diet hadn't been helping
14. she's been feeling
15. she hasn't been getting
16. Her life has also been improving
17. she's even been sleeping
18. she's been growing
19. Will she have been practising
20. Janet will have been working

#### Extreme Endurance

Janet (1) has been training to complete the Extreme Endurance Race in July. The race (2) has been taking place in Devon for eight years now, and involves swimming, running, cycling and climbing. Janet (3) has been running and cycling since she was young, but before last January she (4) hadn't been swimming for a long time and (5) had never been climbing. By the time of the race, she (6) will have been learning to climb for only six months!

(7) Why has she been working so hard for this? Before Christmas, (8) Janet had been getting ill frequently. (9) She'd been seeing doctors two or three times a week, and all of them said she needed more exercise. Her friend (10) Claude has been competing in tough races for decades, and he suggested she try one. So she chose the toughest. (11) What had she been thinking?

By February, (12) she'd been rising every morning at 5am for two months. (13) Her diet hadn't been helping, so she cut out sugar and dairy. The improvements were rapid. Janet has not only lost weight and raised her stamina, (14) she's been feeling more awake and alive. What's more – (15) she's not been getting ill anymore. (16) Her life has also been improving in other ways she did not expect – (17) she's even been sleeping better.

But the Extreme Endurance Race is quickly approaching, and (18) she's been growing more nervous by the day. (19) Will she have been practising for long enough to face it? She isn't sure, but one thing is certain: by the time it's over, (20) Janet will have been working hard enough to form a habit. Now she's started getting fit, she doesn't expect to stop.

#### 16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

---

#### 17.1 Answers

1. Billy completed his homework before tea. or Billy was completing his homework before tea.
2. We agreed to meet at 4 p.m.
3. Lynn called while I was waiting for a bus.

4. He is only here because you invited him.
5. We could see that the ship was sinking.
6. John burst into the room to deliver the news.
7. She found her glasses under the sofa.
8. Only three students submitted their essays early.
9. They left early because they were not enjoying the film.
10. The boy cried when a bee stung him.
11. I lost phone while I was relaxing in Spain.
12. Vera forgot to lock the door again.
13. Ruth was caring for her mother, so could not go to the party.
14. The dog snarled because it was protecting its toy.
15. Fred was loading the car when he remembered his goggles.
16. We discovered our parents were paying too much for gas.
17. What were you doing at the time that the fire started?
18. When did she explain how to turn on the fridge?
19. Where did the thieves hide the diamonds?
20. Why was Julia laughing during the meeting?

#### 17.1 Complete or Process 1

#### 17.2 Answers

1. "Are you going on holiday this year?"

"No, I went on one already."

1. "I heard you gave up science classes."

"Yes, I thought I wasn't learning enough."

1. Penny collected model buses for many years. She was trying to get enough to start a museum.

2. "Why did we stop using disposable cups?"

"Because management decided to reduce plastic."

1. Sparrows were nesting in our loft. We could hear them above us.

2. "What did that sign say?"

"I couldn't see, it was swaying in the wind."

1. The new restaurant was a massive success. Hundreds of customers came in the first two days.

2. "You're home early tonight."

"Yes, I hurried back to watch the game."

1. Didn't that man look terribly cold? Wasn't he shaking all over?

2. "Look at how many burgers I have!"

"Wow, did you buy them all?"



1. "Your father called to ask where you were. Didn't you tell him we were going to the beach?"

2. "I heard they gave Michelle a first-class ticket to Bali."

"Yes, I think so – wasn't she consulting on the site of a new hotel?"

#### 17.2 Complete or Process 2

#### 17.3 Answers

1. There were no biscuits left because she had eaten them all.
2. The guests surprised her, as their flight had arrived early.
3. Our neighbours had been shouting for hours when we asked them to stop.
4. All our lights went out. I had forgotten to pay the meter.
5. Raccoons had been raiding our bins every night, so we added locks.
6. She had been preparing a presentation but went out before it was finished.
7. He left the café because his friends had been laughing at him.
8. Anna had read all the author's books except one.
9. Which book had she been reading before she found this one?
10. When had they opened the new bar? It looked very vibrant.

#### 17.3 Complete or Process 3

#### 17.4 Answers

1. Sheila was ironing her dress during a storm.
2. When we arrived at the hotel, it looked closed.
3. Though they seemed dim, the lights were on.
4. By 3 p.m. all his shares had risen; he was having a good day.
5. No one moved: the man had a gun.
6. Her husband always bought books when he felt bored.
7. You were having a bad dream, so I woke you.
8. At the time, they did not understand the problem.
9. Throughout July, we were often trying to paint our shed.
10. Geoff was listening to the radio at 11 a.m.
11. She had not fully decided, but she preferred the yellow curtains.
12. I was reading War and Peace but took a break to read a comic.
13. The man was choosing a tie for so long that they closed the shop.
14. As she entered the garage, Enid heard a curious sound.
15. Luke studied hard because he was aiming to get top marks.
16. Would work send me to Italy? It was exactly what I wanted.
17. He waited for a decision. Did they believe his story?

18. When we met Lana, did she smell of smoke?
19. The parrots surprised everyone – why did they appear so angry?
20. While I made tea, were you looking in my diary?

#### 17.4 Past States 1

#### 17.5 Answers

1. I was tired because I had been studying in the library.
2. Jolene had loved her backpack, but it was time to give it away.
3. We had tasted success while working at the bank.
4. Two wolves had been lurking near the camp at night.
5. Though he had seemed kind when he visited, he stole my ring.
6. The shop had been suffering from a lack of donations, so they ran an advert to help.
7. Marius had lived in Lewes for thirteen years before he moved to Germany.
8. Claude had been living in Lewes for thirteen years when he was asked to move.
9. The cheese had smelled fine in the morning, but was bad by lunch.
10. Tammy had believed it was impossible until she discovered the answer.

#### 17.5 Past States 2

#### 17.6 Answers

1. The hotel had cost a lot because it was the height of summer.
2. They exchanged letters only after they had separated.
3. My father had bought a new car two days before he visited us.
4. I passed my driving test once I had taken 40 lessons.
5. She wanted to ride her bike but the chain had broken the day before.
6. Miles had played the guitar for three years before he lost interest in it.
7. Where was the water he had asked for?
8. Shelly left early because she had completed her assignment.
9. The doctor had prescribed some medicine but Jim stopped taking it after a day.
10. By the time the firemen arrived, the building had been evacuated.
11. I had wanted boiled eggs but they gave me beans on toast.
12. The bridge needed repairing because the river had flooded that morning.
13. The children who achieved the best results had studied hardest.
14. By the time the procession started, thousands of people had gathered to see the Queen.
15. Our aunt retired early because she had started saving at an early age.

Note that these answers consider the most appropriate structure grammatically, where the past perfect indicates an earlier past time. However, though the past perfect is used to add clarity, many sequences can be understood without it. For example, sentences 2, 7 and 11 could have both verbs in the past simple.

## 17.6 Past Sequences 1

### 17.7 Answers

1. They needed to hurry because the ice was melting.
2. Roland could not find the toy because his friend had hidden it.
3. The pie was burning, so I switched the oven off.
4. Grandma had escaped, so we sent out a search party.
5. Hillary knew a lot because she had read all the books in the library.
6. I could not hear the news because my son was talking.
7. Though Tom had repaired his computer, the screen still did not work.
8. She called her mum while she was walking home.
9. The family was planning a garden party until they forecast rain.
10. Claus could not go to the shops because Herman had borrowed his car that morning.
11. Though the game had ended, the crowd did not go home.
12. We sat on the bench as the bus was taking a long time to arrive.
13. Neil stopped studying the letter; he had found the answer.
14. When she was travelling across Europe, Gina visited Switzerland.
15. Because the tree had fallen, the road was blocked.

## 17.7 Past Sequences 2

### 17.8 Answers

1. By the time I left Romania, I had been teaching there for three years.
2. While Jen was washing the dishes, Roy cleaned the table.
3. We sheltered in the barn because it was raining.
4. The track was impassable as it had been snowing heavily.
5. Alan was speaking to his bank manager all morning. or Alan had been speaking to his bank manager all morning.
6. You would have heard my answer if you had been listening.
7. I didn't use the sink as the tap had been leaking lately.
8. The bus was making funny noises, so we pulled over.
9. He could not drive home because he had been drinking wine.
10. The cleaners had been talking, and decided it was time to take action.

## 17.8 Processes in the Past

### 17.9 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. decided
2. wanted
3. was not

4. was not
5. asked
6. did she have
7. said
8. Did you leave
9. did not know
10. had
11. walked
12. remembered
13. found
14. told
15. needed
16. Did you see
17. asked
18. did you not put
19. answered
20. explained
21. was not
22. locked
23. was
24. was
25. sat
26. was not
27. could he do
28. was
29. returned
30. had
31. grabbed
32. charged
33. ran
34. did not
35. arrived
36. were not
37. did they go

38. understood

39. did not like

40. were

#### Felix and the Umbrella

Felix (1) decided to go the park last Saturday. He (2) wanted to see the pond and feed the ducks. It (3) was not a sunny day, so he needed an umbrella. The umbrella (4) was not in its usual place. He (5) asked his sister: (6) did she have his umbrella? She (7) said no.

“(8) Did you leave it at school?” she replied.

He (9) did not know . He (10) had the umbrella when he (11) walked home on Thursday. He (12) remembered leaving it to dry in the bathroom.

Felix (13) found the bathroom door locked. His father (14) told him the bath (15) needed replacing.

“(16) Did you see my umbrella in there?” Felix (17) asked .

“Why (18) did you not put it back by the door?” his dad (19) answered .

Felix (20) explained that it had been wet. But the umbrella (21) was not in the bathroom when he (22) locked the door, his dad (23) was sure. (24) Where was it ?

Felix (25) sat on the stairs, sad. It (26) was not possible to visit the park without the umbrella. What else (27) could he do ?

Just as he (28) was about to give up hope, his mother (29) returned from shopping. She (30) had the umbrella!

Felix (31) grabbed the umbrella from her startled hands, and (32) charged outside, finally ready to visit the park. He (33) ran down the road, and (34) did not stop for anything on the way. He (35) arrived at the pond, at long last. The ducks (36) were not there. Where (37) did they go ?

Of course, Felix (38) understood , standing in the rain. The ducks (39) did not like the rain either. They (40) were safe , inside, out of sight.

He would have to come back another day.

Note that this passage demonstrates a narrative following a clear sequence of completed action. For clarity, the past perfect may be used in some instances here, such as for 21 and 22, but is not essential. The past continuous may also be used in some instances, to focus on the process instead of completion, such as with 10 and 11 – but we can use the past simple because the action was completed.

#### 17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

#### 17.10 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. was searching
2. were running
3. were providing
4. Was the place selling
5. was it offering
6. was trying
7. was not discussing
8. was bustling
9. were not handling
10. were running
11. was not smiling
12. was he wearing

13. were the managers dressing
14. was opening and closing
15. were waiting
16. how were they expecting
17. was rumbling
18. was not listening
19. was watching
20. was he planning
21. was having
22. were swimming
23. were serving
24. were becoming
25. was standing
26. were leaving
27. was eating
28. was not coming
29. were laughing
30. were enjoying
31. Were the chefs putting
32. was everyone not questioning
33. was not fooling
34. was devouring

#### An Unsatisfactory Restaurant

When I (1) was searching for a new restaurant, I discovered Calbini's had opened in the town centre. They (2) were running a promotion that week: three courses for £12.95. Very cheap, as others nearby (3) were providing a main course for £18! (4) Was the place selling itself short? Or (5) was it offering a worse service?

I visited on a Wednesday night with my colleague Gunther. He (6) was trying to decide what to eat on the way, from the online menu, but he (7) was not discussing it with me. Gunther is a quiet man.

On our arrival to the restaurant, the building (8) was bustling with people. Very busy for a Wednesday night! And the staff (9) were not handling it well: waiters (10) were running around, hot-faced, and the man who welcomed us was tired and (11) was not smiling. Moreover, what (12) was he wearing? Not a smart uniform, but brightly patterned rags covered in stains. Why (13) were the managers dressing their staff like clowns?

Our table was at the back of the room, next to the kitchen. The door (14) was opening and closing constantly. Even worse, we (15) were waiting for fifteen minutes before a waiter gave us a menu. The writing was badly printed: (16) how were they expecting anyone to read this?

We used Gunther's online menu instead. By then, my stomach (17) was rumbling. We had to give our orders twice because the waiter (18) was not listening. He (19) was watching the other tables; with so many people there, (20) was he planning a route of attack?

Eventually, our order was placed: for the main course, I (21) was having the calzone and Gunther chose tortellini.

Our starters arrived – prawns for both of us. The prawns (22) were swimming in brine. Undercooked. I stood and demanded to know if they (23)

were serving us garbage.

The waiters, of course, were too busy to notice. The other customers (24) were becoming noisier as the restaurant only got busier. And now, as I (25) was standing, I saw the food on other tables. All as bad as ours.

I told Gunther we (26) were leaving at once, only to discover he (27) was eating the vile prawns!

"It's not bad," he told me. Clearly he (28) was not coming with me.

He wasn't the only one happy. Other people (29) were laughing. They (30) were enjoying this cheap, busy restaurant! (31) Were the chefs putting something special in the food? Or (32) was everyone not questioning the quality because it was so cheap?

Either way, it (33) was not fooling me. I gathered my things and left. The last time I saw him, Gunther (34) was devouring my meal, too.

#### 17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

#### 17.11 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. had been looking
2. had prepared
3. had made
4. had been making
5. had reached
6. had disappeared
7. had put
8. had commented
9. had it gone
10. had taken
11. Had someone sneaked
12. had been watching
13. had not heard
14. had not been listening
15. had become
16. had left
17. had not been disturbed
18. had wanted
19. Had a squirrel come
20. Had he not noticed
21. had not found
22. had he been playing
23. had let
24. had received

25. had been dreaming

26. had thought

27. had taken

28. had he not prepared

### The Mystery of the Missing Sandwich

Lunch was approaching. Xavier (1) had been looking forward to his sandwich all morning. He (2) had prepared a special sandwich today: halloumi, salad and hummus that his wife (3) had made. She (4) had been making her own hummus for years, and now it (5) had reached perfection.

But when Xavier opened the fridge, the sandwich (6) had disappeared. He stared in disbelief: he (7) had put it there last night. His wife (8) had commented on it at 9 a.m., when she took milk for her tea, "That looks nice!" Where (9) had it gone?

Xavier was alone that morning. His wife (10) had taken the train to York for the day. (11) Had someone sneaked in while he (12) had been watching TV? He (13) had not heard anything, but he (14) had not been listening carefully.

Xavier searched the house for signs of an intruder – or clues to what (15) had become of the missing sandwich. His daughter's room was locked, because she (16) had left for university a week ago. The other bedroom and the living room (17) had not been disturbed.

The garden door was open, because Xavier (18) had wanted some fresh air. He stood checking the trees. (19) Had a squirrel come inside and opened the fridge? (20) Had he not noticed a genius thief?

After searching the garden for crumbs, Xavier returned to the kitchen. He (21) had not found any evidence of an intruder or the sandwich's fate. Why (22) had he been playing the TV so loud? His distraction (23) had let some terrible person steal his amazing sandwich.

Finally, Xavier decided to call his wife and tell her about this tragedy. But first, he saw he (24) had received a message from her already.

"Thank you for preparing that lovely sandwich – it was everything I (25) had been dreaming of all morning!"

Xavier stared in horror. His wife (26) had thought the sandwich was for her. She (27) had taken it with her when she left! But he could only blame himself. Why (28) had he not prepared one for her, too?

### 17.11 Mixed Past Perfect in Use

#### 17.12 Answers

1.

- Neil was cycling when it started raining.
- Neil had cycled home in the rain, so he arrived wet.
- Neil cycled home in the rain yesterday.
- Neil had been cycling since 9 a.m., so he stopped for lunch.

2.

- Carla passed the salt to Jeremy after he asked for it.
- Carla had been passing the same man all year when she walked to work.
- Carla was passing the shop when a bracelet caught her eye.
- Carla had passed this shop before, was she going the right way?

3.

- Our teacher had given us a difficult assignment, so I could not go out.
- Our teacher gave us too much homework this afternoon.
- Our teacher had been giving us too much homework ever since term started.



d. Our teacher was giving us an exam when the bell rang.

4.

a. The band played until 3 a.m. last night.

b. The band had been playing for five hours before they had to stop.

c. The band were playing when the lights went out.

d. The band had played all the songs they knew and had to stop.

#### 17.12 Mixed Past Matching

#### 17.13 Answers

1. A) he ate dinner B) Carl washed

2. A) she was preparing B) the ambassador arrived

3. A) I had been studying B) I took

4. A) Boris closed the door B) the cat slept

5. X – simultaneous

6. A) someone had taken B) we could not enter

7. A) he was fixing B) the post arrived

8. A) she finished B) Kim went

9. A) our neighbours were talking B) they left

10. A) he had borrowed B) Roland returned

11. X – simultaneous

12. X – simultaneous

13. A) had Jim been asking B) you sent

14. X – simultaneous

15. A) what did they put B) the cake tasted

#### 17.13 Past Time Sequences

#### 17.14 Answers

1. At 07:55 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was on the bus. – TRUE

b. ... Jen was listening to music. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was checking her make-up.

d. ... Jen arrived at the Friends Centre.

1. At 9:35 yesterday ...

a. ... Jen was entertaining children.

b. ... Jen had drunk a coffee. – TRUE

c. ... Jen was walking through town. – TRUE

d. ... Jen had started her second job.

1. At 12:45 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen had eaten a burrito. – TRUE
- b. ... Jen was reading a magazine.
- c. ... Jen had been reading a magazine. – TRUE
- d. ... Mary bought a burrito.

1. At 15:30 ...

- a. ... Jen was travelling to the Friends Centre.
- b. ... Jen had been visiting schools for over two hours. – TRUE
- c. ... Jen was teaching adults.
- d. ... Jen finished visiting schools.

1. At 19:30 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen finished work for the day. – TRUE
- b. ... Jen had taught magic to adults. – TRUE
- c. ... Jen was cooking dinner.
- d. ... Jen went to get the bus. – TRUE

1. At 10:30 yesterday ...

- a. ... Jen practised new tricks.
- b. ... Jen fell asleep.
- c. ... Jen had eaten dinner. – TRUE
- d. ... Jen was reading a book. – TRUE

17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

17.15 Answers

- 1. Ongoing Past Process
- 2. Past State
- 3. Past State
- 4. Past Action Completed Earlier
- 5. Past Action Completed Earlier
- 6. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
- 7. Past State
- 8. Past Possession
- 9. Past Action Completed Earlier
- 10. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
- 11. Past State
- 12. Earlier Past State

13. Earlier Past State
  14. Earlier Ongoing Past Process
  15. Past Action Completed Earlier
  16. Past State
  17. Past Action
  18. Past Action
  19. Ongoing Past Process
  20. Ongoing Past Process
  21. Past Action
  22. Past Action
  23. Ongoing Past Process
  24. Past Action
  25. Ongoing Past Process
  26. Past Action Completed Earlier
- 17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses
- 17.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. announced
2. had been meeting
3. submitted
4. loved
5. had been experiencing
6. formed
7. argued
8. had been decreasing
9. was trying
10. had drawn
11. showed
12. had gathered
13. had become
14. (had) got
15. (had) removed
16. could not
17. had improved
18. insisted

19. had asked
20. (had) visited
21. had been researching
22. had not seen
23. persuaded
24. were delaying
25. held
26. had grown
27. gave
28. led
29. was coming

#### A New Pier

In April, the seaside town of Trilby-on-Sea (1) announced plans to build a new pier. Before this decision, Trilby's council (2) had been meeting with local charities and tourist organisations for six months. A Scottish architect (3) (had) submitted designs including shops and rides. Most of the town (4) loved the designs, but the council were unsure. They (5) had been experiencing budget cuts for the past few years.

Local residents (6) formed a group called Pier Alliance in January to convince the council. They (7) argued that the new pier would bring wealth to Trilby. Visitor numbers (8) had been decreasing since two summers before, and everyone (9) was trying to find a solution. They remembered: Trilby's old pier (10) had drawn massive crowds, many decades ago.

Newspaper clippings (11) showed that hundreds of people (12) had gathered on the pier daily. It (13) had become unstable in the 1980s, when the supports (14) (had) got damaged in a terrible storm. The council (15) (had) removed the pier, saying they (16) could not afford to maintain it.

Technology (17) had improved a lot since then, so Pier Alliance (18) insisted the new pier would be cheaper and safer. By time of the final decision, they (19) had asked ten different experts to speak to the council about it. In March, a gentleman from America (20) (had) visited the town. He (21) had been researching piers for thirteen years and said he (22) had not seen a better design than Trilby's new proposal. Slowly, Pier Alliance (23) persuaded the council. The men in charge (24) were delaying the decision, so the town finally (25) held a rally to demonstrate how support (26) had grown for the new pier.

Finally, the council (27) gave in, and the April announcement (28) led to great celebrations. The new pier (29) was coming at last!

#### 17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

#### 17.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. had taken
2. had disappeared
3. was repairing
4. were you doing
5. were not sitting
6. Were you watching
7. had not been looking
8. had not been working
9. asked

10. was making
11. did not see
12. Had he drunk
13. suspected
14. were wandering
15. had not been
16. (had) caught
17. had told
18. had been enjoying
19. Had she let
20. Did you take
21. looked
22. had been admiring
23. had
24. was not being
25. was getting
26. grabbed
27. cried
28. had been lying
29. ran
30. was already leaving
31. was standing
32. Had he been watching
33. did he steal
34. showed
35. had been getting
36. had exposed

#### The Pen Thief

Vicky was certain Clive (1) had taken her pen. It (2) had disappeared while she (3) was repairing the printer.

"What (4) were you doing ten minutes ago?" Vicky asked. "You (5) were not sitting at your desk, I am sure."

"(6) Were you watching me?" Clive replied.

She (7) had not been looking his way, no. But he (8) had not been working when she fixed the printer, not if he stole her pen. She (9) asked him to answer her question.

"I (10) was making tea," he told her.

Vicky (11) did not see a mug of tea on his desk. (12) Had he drunk it already? She (13) suspected not. "You (14) were wandering around my desk,

weren't you?"

"Absolutely not!" Clive protested. He (15) had not been near her desk since Vicky (16) (had) caught him stealing her paper a month ago. She (17) had told him to stay away, and she (18) had been enjoying the results ever since.

(19) Had she let her guard down too soon?

"(20) Did you take my pen?" she asked, plainly.

Clive shook his head, but (21) looked scared. "I did not, I would not, I never!"

He (22) had been admiring her pen ever since she bought it; it (23) had a platinum grip. Vicky decided he (24) was not being honest. But she (25) was getting nowhere with words. She (26) grabbed him quickly, and he (27) cried out when she found the pen in a pocket. He (28) had been lying all along!

Vicky (29) ran towards her manager, but when she got there Clive (30) was already leaving. The manager (31) was standing nearby. (32) Had he been watching all along?

"What (33) did he steal this time?" the manager asked.

Vicky (34) showed him the pen, and the manager sighed sadly. Clive (35) had been getting away with these thefts for too long. But they (36) had exposed him, at last.

17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

18.1 Answers

1. My family usually eats dinner at 7 p.m.
2. He is paying for this meal.
3. Jonas teaches at St Mary's High School.
4. Our children do not play any instruments.
5. This bed always creaks noisily.
6. We are buying a new house.
7. Albert is not trying hard enough – he can do better.
8. You are sitting in my chair, please move.
9. Every time I visit Gran, she gives me sweets.
10. Her friends are not helping her this time.
11. This professor's course fills very quickly each year.
12. Sam serves food at the soup kitchen on Tuesdays.
13. I am not studying to become a lawyer anymore.
14. Why do the geese fly south each winter?
15. How is Jenna travelling through the mountains on her trip?
16. Are you choosing a new tie for the wedding ceremony?
17. Which shops do not offer non-dairy chocolates?
18. What is happening on the beach right now?
19. Who owns that bright pink car?
20. Where are your parents staying this weekend?

## 18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

### 18.2 Answers

1. Dominic is usually so nice. Why is he being naughty?
2. The sun is setting very late this month. Usually, the sun sets earlier.
3. She refuses to say sorry. She is not apologising.
4. Harry just climbed a tree. He is swinging from a branch.
5. You will love the way Deidre cooks potatoes. She always fries them.
6. Mia has not given an answer yet – she is thinking about it.
7. I never usually buy nectarines for myself, but today I am buying some for my mother.
8. The boy is watching TV. He is not bouncing his ball.
9. “Where is my magazine?”

“I think it is lying by the sofa.”

1. “We are decorating our living room.”

“Oh, what colour are you painting it?”

1. “Mr Harris is not coming to dinner.”

“Strange. He does not cancel often.”

1. “The volleyball team surprised everyone by reaching the final.”

“Do they not normally win?”

1. “Are you holding a bottle of wine?”

“No, it’s a bottle of olive oil.”

1. The building supervisor does not allow smoking. We are breaking the rules!
2. “I drew this picture.”

“Ah, you are improving quickly!”

## 18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

### 18.3 Answers

1. This fish tastes strange, is it old?
2. Caroline looks very elegant in her new dress.
3. My uncle is reading a biography of Julius Caesar.
4. I do not want your banana, thank you.
5. The cows are stomping on all the flowers.
6. Leo is struggling to understand algebra.
7. Our neighbours seem very quiet today.
8. Laila and Howard are not sharing their peanuts.
9. Finley has all the best Xbox games currently available.
10. The customers doubt that they are being given a good deal.

11. Eli is getting everyone a round of beers.
12. I might not go to Calcutta – I am having second thoughts about it.
13. Though she needs a new chair now, Anna is comparing all the options first.
14. We promise to deliver the table by Friday.
15. Why do my hands appear to be so dirty?
16. Does that clock need new batteries too, now?
17. Who is listening to my radio show this week?
18. What are you wearing to school today?
19. Does Maria not hear that singing bird?
20. Why do beavers love building dams?

### 18.3 Present States

### 18.4 Answers

1. She's frustrated because she is always cleaning up. (habitual action)
2. The beach is crowded today. (state)
3. It is getting dark, I don't think we should walk home. (changing state)
4. They usually eat in the dining room. (repeated event)
5. When you flick a switch, the light comes on. (general fact)
6. This cheese smells awful. (state)
7. "Now, I declare this store open!" (spoken action)
8. I am always looking for new books to read. (habitual action)
9. Our grandparents visit twice a month. (repeated event)
10. They say actions speak louder than words. (general fact)
11. The swimmers are competing for the gold medal. (temporary action)
12. I propose we take a different route home. (spoken action)
13. Gary is not home, he is walking the dog. (temporary action)
14. Seagull numbers are increasing because tourists are leaving food around. (changing state, temporary action)
15. Look, that tree is swaying in the wind! (temporary action)

### 18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

### 18.5 Answers

1. This bread has gone mouldy.
2. Alison created a website this morning.
3. He did not sweep the floor before dinner.
4. The boiler has broken again, so there is no hot water.
5. I cannot come to class. Last time, Mr Rogers told me not to come back.



6. Nathan has passed his driving test because he did not quit.
7. My cousin hates spiders, so he has sealed all of his windows.
8. The garden has bloomed with the recent hot weather.
9. The sailors moved quickly because the winds were favourable.
10. Chloe is visiting, but she has not said how long she will stay.
11. My phone battery has died, can I use your charger?
12. She could not find her purse, so paid with her credit card.
13. Did you see? My essay has won the competition.
14. Did you receive the coffee machine you ordered?
15. We put our poster up in the hall, have you seen it?
16. Did you buy the candles when you went shopping yesterday?
17. Have you not given in your assignment yet?
18. Why has that woman taken all the baguettes? There are none left!
19. Lola is telling everyone about her new job, has she spoken to you about it?
20. Did the farmer deliver that milk, or have you been to the shop?

#### 18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

#### 18.6 Answers

1. I was going to pottery classes earlier this year.
2. Tristan was printing fake money and now he is in jail.
3. You have been working too hard this month, take a break.
4. She was not helping her dad build the shed until Friday.
5. The teenagers were cleaning the streets last week. Are they back?
6. Hundreds of thousands of people have been signing the petition. It could reach a million by tomorrow.
7. We have been taking lessons since January, to improve our pronunciation.
8. The king was avoiding his responsibilities, so a committee was formed.
9. The ivy has been spreading over our wall. We must cut it back before it gets worse.
10. They have not been opening the window – it stinks in here!
11. Were you waiting here before me?
12. Has the museum been showing this exhibit for long?
13. Have the children been bothering you today?
14. Was the wheel squeaking when you used the bike?

#### 18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

#### 18.7 Answers

1. Who left this bag here? It has left a stain.
2. You have not convinced me to come to the game.

3. I know Germany well, because I lived there for six months last year.
4. The car just made an awful noise – I think we hit a log.
5. She was sure about it: Simon broke the vase.
6. I could not bring the book home. The librarian refused to lend it to me.
7. This kitchen is unsanitary. Rats have infested the cellar.
8. My phone has stopped working. Can I borrow yours?
9. What is in the oven? Have you cooked potatoes?
10. Who designed these wonderful curtains? Did you do them?
11. Someone is stealing my socks. Did Billie take them?
12. How is your degree? Has it got any easier?

#### 18.7 Past Present Emphasis

#### 18.8 Answers

1. We have been using this washing machine for fifteen years.
2. I am walking to work for the whole week, starting today.
3. She is considering which scarf to buy.
4. The couple have been shopping for a while.
5. William has not been playing computer games for very long.
6. You have been watching me since I came in – stop it!
7. Alice is buying doughnuts every day this week, we have decided.
8. That man is selling hats at a discount for the next two hours.
9. You've been quiet. Have you been reading all morning?
10. I need the car later. Are you using it all day?
11. She has been unwell for weeks. Has she not been taking her medicine?
12. Why is he asking me so many questions right now?

#### 18.8 Duration in the Present 1

#### 18.9 Answers

1. Martha has opened six shops in Brighton.
2. We have stayed in hotels many times this year.
3. The sea has been getting warmer all summer.
4. He has not gone to class a single time this week.
5. You have washed the dishes twice today.
6. I have not been receiving as many letters as I used to, and hope that will change.
7. Claudia has been spying on her brother for fifteen minutes.
8. Eliot has not watched any television since yesterday.

9. Margaret has been studying her geography textbook since last Wednesday.
10. You have been putting your shoes in the wrong cupboard for months.
11. The boy has given his teacher an apple once a week this year.
12. The girl has been taking the bus to school almost every day this year, but sometimes walks.
13. How many times have they said they would repair the road?
14. Have you been bowling in Oxford recently?
15. Has she been cutting her hair short for a long time?
16. How long have the clients been waiting for? Get them some water!

#### 18.9 Duration in the Present 2

#### 18.10 Answers

1. We have loved each other for twenty years.
2. They have believed in magic ever since they saw the Great Roberto perform.
3. I have been listening to rap music for the past three weeks.
4. Axel has been tired since he woke up.
5. She has been reading Victorian ghost stories all night.
6. You have not been relaxing during this holiday.
7. Doris has heard all the children's speeches today.
8. What has Carter been doing in his shed all morning?
9. How long have they known about the secret passage for?
10. Why have we not understood everything he has been saying?
11. How long has that fox been sitting on our fence for?
12. Have the villagers seemed restless for long?

#### 18.10 Duration in the Present 3

#### 18.11 Answers

1. Correct – repetitive action
2. Correct – repetitive action
3. Correct – let me explain refers to a perceived temporary problem
4. Incorrect – never implies it is timeless
5. Correct – appearances can be temporary
6. Correct – the smell can be temporary
7. Correct – the repeated occurrence can be temporary
8. Incorrect – flood implies a general rule, not a temporary situation
9. Correct – an informal question within the moment
10. Incorrect – the belief is not temporary

11. Incorrect – the liking of the gift is not temporary
12. Correct – an informal question within the moment

#### 18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

#### 18.12 Answers

1.

- a. The pie is cooling on the shelf.
- b. The pie has cooled enough to eat.
- c. The pie has been cooling for an hour already.
- d. When the pie cools, we can eat it.

2.

- a. Tania has had her dinner, and is going to bed.
- b. Tania has been having strange dreams constantly this week.
- c. Tania has lots of friends, because she is nice.
- d. Tania is having a party, so no one can sleep.

3.

- a. The professor is studying a new language right now.
- b. The professor has studied ten languages already.
- c. The professor studies languages as a hobby.
- d. The professor has been studying languages for 50 years.

4.

- a. What have you done with my pen? I can't find it.
- b. What are you doing with my pen? Use your own!
- c. What do you do with my pen when you borrow it? It always comes back wet!
- d. What have you been doing with my pen? You've had it all morning.

#### 18.12 Mixed Present Matching

#### 18.13 Answers

1. X – simultaneous
2. A) the teacher has marked B) my sister is asking
3. A) the TV is not working B) he is reading (A caused B)
4. A) we have been visiting B) it is getting more crowded
5. A) which has been B) my mother cooks
6. X – simultaneous
7. A) I have been complaining B) they are repairing
8. A) Lottie has learned B) she is wandering
9. A) have you seen B) what are you watching

10. X – simultaneous

18.13 Present Time Sequences

18.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. writes
2. is working
3. has become
4. has granted
5. has been researching
6. has
7. is editing
8. include
9. do you like
10. has fame changed
11. do you get
12. have you been writing
13. do you not like
14. is
15. seem
16. Has Reid not heard
17. has been touring
18. has met
19. wants
20. comes
21. has lived
22. gives
23. is now funding
24. fears
25. has not visited
26. frightens
27. do her readers care
28. have only been raising
29. Is Emma making
30. thinks

31. has been

32. has been wasting

33. has been waiting

#### A Difficult Interview

Emma (1) writes for the Daily Sentinel newspaper. She (2) is working on a feature article about pop icon, Natalie Reid. It is a very important piece for the newspaper, because Reid (3) has become one of the most famous musicians in the world, and she (4) has granted Emma an exclusive interview. Emma (5) has been researching the singer for a month, to make sure she (6) has an informed set of questions to ask.

Today, Emma (7) is editing her interview questions. Some of her examples (8) include :

What (9) do you like to do in your free time?

How (10) has fame changed your life?

Where (11) do you get your ideas from?

How long (12) have you been writing music for?

What (13) do you not like about being famous?

Emma (14) is worried, because these questions (15) seem too ordinary. (16) Has Reid not heard them a hundred times before? Reid (17) has been touring the world for the past six months. She (18) has met thousands of people who probably asked the same things.

Emma (19) wants to ask something different. Reid (20) comes from an unusual background; she (21) has lived in a poor neighbourhood all her life, and (22) gives generously to charities. The singer (23) is now funding the construction of new housing. But Emma (24) fears asking questions about these topics, because she (25) has not visited Reid's neighbourhood herself. The area (26) frightens her. And (27) do her readers care about these things? On social media, Reid's fans (28) have only been raising questions about her relationships for the past few months.

(29) Is Emma making things too complicated?

No, Emma (30) thinks , now, it's time to get on with it. She (31) has been foolish to avoid these topics. And she (32) has been wasting time worrying about it. Most likely, Reid (33) has been waiting for someone to ask the important questions!

#### 18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

##### 18.15 Answers

Barry gets to work at 6 p.m. He talks with the teachers, if they are still in the school.

Barry starts work by vacuuming all the carpets. He lifts the chairs onto tables to clear the floors, and empties the bins in each room. Barry wipes the boards clean, if it is necessary.

Then, Barry sweeps the tiled floors in the corridors and halls. On Fridays ( or Because it is Friday) , he mops these floors. He uses two buckets, one for soapy water and one for rinsing.

Once all the floors are finished, Barry cleans the washrooms. He sprays them with disinfectant and scrubs the toilets. He replaces the soap and toilet paper when they run out ( or if they have run out) .

After his cleaning duties are finished, Barry usually takes a break at the time as the headmistress. He makes tea for himself and the headmistress when ( or if) he gets to the common room first. If the headmistress arrives first, she prepares the tea. Barry usually reads a book during the break, but if he forgets to bring one, he listens to the radio.

After his break, Barry focuses on more varied tasks. Firstly, he completes repairs, such as on doors, furniture or fences. During winter , Barry spreads grit outside to stop the paths getting slippery. During summer , he cuts weeds and prunes hedges.

Barry normally finishes work at 9 p.m., but stays later if there are extra tasks to do. Sometimes , teachers need help moving furniture or preparing equipment for a class. The teachers and Barry do these tasks together. He gets paid extra for this.

#### 18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

##### 18.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. are joining
2. are fielding
3. have performed
4. have been competing
5. qualifies
6. open
7. are taking
8. chase
9. move
10. has
11. is sprinting
12. faces
13. is closing
14. clash
15. steals
16. is making
17. is
18. are letting
19. races
20. has hit
21. is rolling
22. has stopped
23. are gathering
24. has pushed
25. have got
26. is blowing
27. is showing
28. Is the referee handling
29. seems
30. have calmed
31. goes
32. has not broken
33. has scored
34. has saved

35. have both been practising

36. steps

37. shoots

38. scores

39. have taken

40. promises

#### Doves United vs The Firecats: Live Commentary

You (1) are joining us live for an exciting match between two women's soccer teams, Doves United and The Firecats. They (2) are fielding strong teams today, and both teams (3) have performed brilliantly to reach this semi-final. They (4) have been competing since June 1st for a chance at the championship trophy, and today's match decides who (5) qualifies for the final!

Doves United (6) are opening the game, they (7) are taking the kick-off now. The Firecats (8) chase them right away; oh my, these women (9) move fast!

United's captain, Morales, (10) has the ball, and she (11) is sprinting up the right flank. But she (12) faces trouble! Firecats defender Lux (13) is closing on Morales. They (14) clash ! Lux (15) steals the ball and she (16) is making a break. The United team (17) is spread out; they (18) are letting her through!

Lux (19) races into the penalty box – only the keeper to beat!

Oh no! Lux is down! United's centre-half (20) has hit her from behind. An awful foul! Lux (21) is rolling on the floor, she could be injured. The referee (22) has stopped play, and The Firecats (23) are gathering in their opponent's half. Someone is shouting – someone else is on the floor. Another player (24) has pushed her over! Things (25) have got out of hand.

The referee (26) is blowing her whistle! She (27) is showing the red card to United's centre-half. And to a Firecats player! (28) Is the referee handling this well? Yes. It (29) seems she has everything under control again.

The players (30) have calmed down. Play will resume with a penalty.

Lux (31) goes to the penalty spot, apparently she (32) has not broken any bones. This is an exciting pairing – Lux (33) has scored eight out of her last nine penalties in this tournament, but the United keeper (34) has saved nine out of her last ten! No doubt they (35) have both been practising very hard. Lux (36) steps back from the ball, ready to strike! She (37) shoots – she (38) scores !

One minute in, The Firecats (39) have taken the lead! This game (40) promises to be thrilling.

#### 18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

#### 18.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Do you want

2. delivers

3. prepare

4. combine

5. begin

6. reacts

7. takes

8. want

9. warm



10. goes
11. affects
12. touch
13. gives
14. Have you mixed
15. You've created
16. absorbs
17. do we develop
18. doesn't require
19. Place
20. takes
21. Isn't
22. Put
23. becomes
24. needs
25. you've formed
26. rises
27. does the dough spring
28. use
29. traps
30. goes
31. opens
32. remove
33. produces
34. makes
35. Does it sound
36. Don't eat
37. Rest
38. you've baked

#### How to Bake a Perfect Loaf

(1) Do you want to make a perfect loaf of bread? This recipe (2) delivers great results.

To make life easier, (3) prepare your ingredients in advance: 500g of strong flour, 8g of yeast, 300ml of water and 10g of salt. These simple ingredients (4) combine for a basic but delicious loaf.

Before you (5) begin, a word about temperature. When it is hot, the mixture (6) reacts faster. On colder days, the recipe (7) takes longer to complete. For balance, we (8) want the mixture to be about 75 degrees. If you (9) warm the water, you can manage this temperature.

Step one: combine the water and the yeast in a bowl. The flour (10) goes in next, then the salt on top of the flour. This order is important, because the salt (11) affects the yeast if they (12) touch directly.

Mix the ingredients: you can use a spoon, but hand mixing (13) gives you a better feel for the results.

(14) Have you mixed it thoroughly now? (15) You've created a dough! Leave it for about 20 minutes: during this time, the flour (16) absorbs water.

Next: how (17) do we develop gluten? This recipe (18) doesn't require kneading, but uses folding instead. (19) Place the dough on a floured counter and fold one side to about halfway in. Turn 90 degrees and fold again. It (20) takes two or three turns, usually, until you have a tight ball. (21) Isn't that easy?

(22) Put the dough back in the bowl, covered by a towel, and leave it to rise for about 90 minutes. When the dough (23) becomes light and airy, it is ready. Back on the counter, where it (24) needs to be folded again, like a letter. Fold to the centre, then turn, until you (25) you've formed a tight parcel.

Now, the dough (26) rises one more time – leave it for another hour to 90 minutes. When you press it with a finger, (27) does the dough spring back? Then it is ready.

We (28) use a Dutch Oven to do the cooking, preheated to 475 degrees. A Dutch Oven (29) traps steam with a lid, for the best results. The dough (30) goes in seam side up. The seam (31) opens during cooking to give a nice rustic look.

Put the Dutch Oven and dough in the oven for 25 minutes, then (32) remove the lid. Another 15–20 minutes in the oven (33) produces a golden loaf with a firm crust. A properly cooked loaf (34) makes a hollow thump when you tap the base.

(35) Does it sound done? (36) Don't eat it yet! (37) Rest the loaf on a wire rack for 30 minutes, so the interior crumb can set, making it easier to cut. Congratulations: (38) you've baked a perfect loaf!

#### 18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

##### 19.1 Answers

1. Because Lucas is tired, Regina will make him a tea.
2. This Halloween, Tina is going to dress as a zombie.
3. My brother is outside, will you let him in?
4. Those men have used the wrong timber. The house is going to collapse.
5. Claire thinks her boss will like her latest report.
6. Is that a woodpecker in the tree? I will get my binoculars to check.
7. Despite the cold summer, the building managers are not going to activate the heating until October.
8. We've been looking forward to our train journey; we are going to travel across the Swiss Alps.
9. When Paul gets back from Scotland, he is going to start a new job.
10. Tim's parents said he cannot go outside for a month, so he is going to play computer games every weekend.
11. I would like to go climbing, but I will wait and see if this rain stops!
12. The swimming pool is always busy; it is going to be busy today, I am sure.
13. "Where are you going with that knife?"

"I am going to cut a piece of birthday cake."

1. "What drink would you like?"

"I will have a cocktail."

1. "Where can I complain about the smell in our room?"

"The lady behind the counter will help you."

## 19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

### 19.2 Answers

1. Dawn is visiting her parents next Tuesday.
2. Our bus arrives at 12 noon.
3. The family is staying home next Christmas.
4. Ian is not working during the following three weekends.
5. The meeting this afternoon involves every department.
6. Hurry, the play starts at 8 p.m. and I don't want to be late!
7. Everyone is waiting for Cathy, because she is bringing champagne.
8. The ghost appears at sundown, we must be ready.
9. Construction work begins on the new apartment block tomorrow.
10. Are you coming to the dance on Thursday?
11. Is Adrian giving the speech this evening?
12. Are we meeting for a piano class in the morning?
13. Does the train leave at three or four?
14. Is your new girlfriend joining us for dinner?
15. Does the post office deliver today?

## 19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

### 19.3 Answers

1. "We need volunteers to clean the beach."

"I'll do it if I have time."

1. "Izzy is on holiday next week."

"Oh, is she travelling somewhere nice?"

1. "Will our bus get to the airport in time?"

"I think so, check in closes in half an hour."

1. "Have you heard the weather forecast?"

"Yes, they said it's going to rain."

1. "My aunt is in town this Friday. What should we do?"

"The museum is running an exhibition on Victorian clothes, you could try that."

1. "What time should we leave for the game on Saturday?"

"Early – the rail workers are on strike this weekend."

1. "I need to go home and feed my cats. What time does this show finish?"

2. "Do you know we've run out of printer paper?"

"Yes, I'm going to buy some this afternoon."

1. "Are you okay? You look very pale."

"No, I'm going to be sick!"

1. "Can you come with me to the ballet performance?"

"Unfortunately not, I'm playing golf this afternoon."

1. "Have you seen the mess on our window?"

"No, I'll clean it in a minute."

1. "Why are you writing in such a rush?"

"Because the show starts in half an hour!"

1. "Shall we check out Dover Castle tomorrow?"

"I can't, I'm working all day tomorrow."

1. "Does anyone want to go for an ice cream?"

"Me, I'll come!"

### 19.3 Mixed Future Simple

### 19.4 Answers

1. I will meet you in the park later. ( or I am going to meet / am meeting you in the park later)
2. He is going to sell me his car. ( or He will sell me his car.)
3. They will be playing hockey for hours. ( or They are going to be playing hockey for hours.)
4. It is going to be getting colder over the next two weeks. ( or It will be getting colder over the next two weeks.)
5. The college will accept new students in September. ( or The college is going to accept / is accepting new students in September.)
6. We are meeting up and travelling together – our friends will already be waiting at the station for us.
7. Rebecca will be staying in the Hilton while she's in town. ( or Rebecca is going to be staying in the Hilton while she's in town.)
8. The mayor is going to open the new leisure centre this Wednesday. ( or The mayor will open / is opening the new leisure centre this Wednesday.)
9. My wife will cook dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late. ( or My wife is going to be cooking / is cooking dinner this evening, as I won't come back until late.)
10. Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she will be eating before then. ( or Sean cannot visit his gran until 6 p.m. because she is going to be eating before then.)
11. Will you be working this Sunday? ( or Are you going to be / Are you working this Sunday?)
12. Are they going to deliver all the bread before 6 a.m.? ( or Will they deliver / Are they delivering all the bread before 6 a.m.)
13. Will she be driving at 3 p.m., in case we need to call? ( or Is she going to be driving at 3 p.m., in case we need to call?)
14. Will Frank be hiking in Scotland all weekend? ( or Is Frank going to be hiking / Is Frank hiking in Scotland all weekend?)
15. Will I make the right choice next time? ( or Am I going to make the right choice this time?)

### 19.4 Future Processes

### 19.5 Answers

1. Shirley will take her exams in June. She will have graduated by August.
2. Our parents will visit at Christmas. They will bring presents.

3. You are going to buy some new shoes. Will you have earned enough money?
4. The tide will be highest at 11 a.m., because it will have come all the way in.
5. Brenda is going to have baked a cake before the party. She will make it from scratch.
6. Ulrich will have passed his test by 1 p.m. We are going to throw him a party.
7. Workers will close the high street this evening. They are going to divert traffic.
8. I hope the weather will improve tomorrow. They say it is going to rain in the morning.
9. Are you going to tell Jon about the wedding soon? By next week, he will have heard it from someone else.
10. Will you have repaired your door before you go away? You will not leave with it in that state, will you?

#### 19.5 Future Sequences

#### 19.6 Answers

1. My parents will have been living together for 20 years this October.
2. The fishermen will be returning in 15 minutes.
3. You are going to be studying all evening.
4. He will have been trying to fix the sink all day before he admits he needs help.
5. By the time of the competition, Sally is going to have been training for eighteen months.
6. I am going to be travelling for three days, so I won't be able to call.
7. The cat will be sleeping in the loft during the party.
8. Inflation will have been rising for five months by February.
9. Colin is going to have been walking all day if he reaches the seaside by sunset.
10. At midnight, we will be watching the fireworks.
11. At noon, we will have been waiting for Robert for an hour.
12. The days will be getting shorter in September.

#### 19.6 Duration in the Future 1

#### 19.7 Answers

1. The eggs will have been sitting in the fridge for a month by the weekend.
2. I will have written my essay by 5 p.m.
3. Eric will have been researching Vikings for two years before he writes his book.
4. The tourists will have visited all the pubs in town before they go home.
5. You won't see any birds, because they will have migrated south for the winter.
6. Before long, Ola will have been searching for her missing sock for a week.
7. We will have been talking for two hours when Jim joins us.
8. If it survives much longer, the tree will have been growing for fifteen years.
9. By the time we leave school, our teacher will have taught us everything.
10. Peggy will have been demanding a pony for three months by her birthday.

#### 19.7 Duration in the Future 2

## 19.8 Answers

1.

- a. I am going to buy a house once I save up enough money.
- b. I am going to have bought a house by September, you can come visit in October!
- c. I am going to be buying a house this summer, so won't have much free time.
- d. I am going to have been buying houses all summer – I'll be exhausted in autumn!

2.

- a. Clarence is joining us this evening – shall we make a soup?
- b. Clarence will have been driving all day – will he want to rest when he gets here?
- c. Clarence will have eaten on the way, he won't want dinner.
- d. Clarence will be staying in the guest room – please prepare the bed.

3.

- a. The post office is going to open a new store in June.
- b. The post office is going to have moved to a new store by June.
- c. The post office is going to be too busy opening their new store to serve customers.
- d. The post office is going to have been opening new stores all year, come New Year.

4.

- a. The new phone will have sold out by Tuesday.
- b. The new phone will be impressing customers all month.
- c. The new phone will come with a velvet carry case.
- d. The new phone will have been selling for two months by January.

## 19.8 Mixed Future Matching

### 19.9 Answers

- 1. A) they finish playing B) they will come
- 2. A) the last guest leaves B) the party will finish
- 3. A) we last another summer B) we will have been married
- 4. A) the van is fixed B) Tim will drive
- 5. A) they will have been working B) the company releases
- 6. X – simultaneous
- 7. A) the banks calls B) I will come back
- 8. A) the referee arrives B) the match will start
- 9. X – simultaneous
- 10. A) they have inspected B) our luggage will be cleared
- 11. X – simultaneous

12. A) Larry collect B) the shop closes
13. B) your passes will have been ordered B) who is attending
14. A) we will have to pay B) does the train leave
15. A) will she have seen B) Aunt Gina leaves

#### 19.9 Future Time Sequences

#### 19.10 Answers

1. After you take a nap, you will feel a lot better.
2. You need to finish your work before you go home at 6 p.m.
3. I think I will buy bread from the corner shop when it opens.
4. We are having a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting. ( or We will have / are going to have a garden party on Sunday, weather permitting.)
5. Before we start our lesson, we are going to review yesterday's class. ( or Before we start our lesson, we will review yesterday's class.)
6. We will be sitting in the shelter when the bus comes.
7. I'm very sorry, it seems Dr. Jones will not come back until 2 p.m.
8. I don't think you will have any problems when you land in Boston. ( or I don't think you are going to have any problems when you land in Boston.)
9. On Friday at 8 o'clock, I am meeting my friend. ( or On Friday at 8 o'clock, I am going to meet / will meet my friend.)
10. The English lesson starts at 8:45. (as a schedule)
11. Look at the clouds – it is going to rain in a few minutes. ( or Look at the clouds – it will rain in a few minutes.)
12. When you get off the train, I will be waiting for you by the ticket machine. ( or When you get off the train, I am going to be waiting for you by the ticket machine.)
13. You are going to take your children with you to France, aren't you? ( or You are taking your children with you to France, aren't you?)
14. This time next week, I will be skiing in Switzerland!
15. Now I will check my answers. ( or Now I am going to check my answers.)

#### 19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

#### 19.11 Answers

1. The train arrives at 12:30. (as a schedule)
2. We are going to eat dinner at a seaside restaurant on Sunday. ( or are eating / will eat)
3. It will be snowing in Brighton throughout the parade. ( or is going to be snowing)
4. By the time we get home, they will have been playing football for 30 minutes.
5. Paul is flying to London on Monday morning. ( or is going to fly)
6. Wait! I will drive you to the station.
7. This summer, I will have been living in Goring for four years.
8. The baby should be due soon, next week Erin will have been pregnant for nine months.
9. Are you still writing your essay? If you finish by 4 p.m., we will go for a walk.
10. I am going to see my mother in April. ( or I am seeing / will see my mother in April.)

11. In three years, I am going to live in a different country. ( or In three years, I will be living in a different country.)
12. When they get married in March, they will have known each other for six years.
13. You're carrying too much. I will open the door for you.
14. Do you think the teacher will have marked our homework by Monday morning?
15. When I see you tomorrow, I will show you my new book.

#### 19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

#### 19.12 Answers

1. At 10.35, the Robinsons ...
  - a. ... will be parking the car.
  - b. ... will have walked into town. – TRUE
  - c. ... will be having tea. – TRUE
  - d. ... are seeing the cathedral.

1. At 12.40, the Robinsons ...
  - a. ... will be in "The Old Vine". – TRUE
  - b. ... will have been touring the cathedral for an hour.
  - c. ... are going to explore the town.
  - d. ... are going to have finished lunch.

1. At 15.15, the Robinsons ...
  - a. ... will be heading home.
  - b. ... are going to be seeing the old mill. – TRUE
  - c. ... will have been exploring Winchester for over three hours. – TRUE
  - d. ... will have eaten lunch. – TRUE

1. At 18.00, the Robinsons ...
  - a. ... are going to be driving.
  - b. ... will arrive home. – TRUE
  - c. ... will have eaten dinner.
  - d. ... will have travelled for two hours or more. – TRUE

#### 19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

#### 19.13 Answers

1. At 10:00, the guests will start to arrive.
2. Between 10:00 and 10:30, the ushers will be helping people to find seats.
3. When the ceremony begins, the bride will have had about 30 minutes to get ready.
4. By 11:20, the ceremony will have been running for almost an hour.
5. At 11:35, the ceremony will have ended and the couple will be signing their documents.



6. All the guests will move to McGruber House after the photos have been taken.
7. The couple will host welcome drinks in the Library Hall.
8. Everyone will have taken a seat in the Banquet Hall before lunch is served.
9. The jazz band will be playing during lunch.
10. At 15:00, the groom will give his speech. The other speeches will follow.
11. A magician will be performing tricks while the jazz band is playing in the Library Hall.
12. Someone will have cleared the dance floor before the couple's first dance.
13. A taco van will be providing more food later in the evening, in case guests get hungry.
14. When the party finishes, people will have been dancing for hours.
15. The bus will return guests to their hotels at the end of the night.

#### 19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

#### 19.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. Are you going to come ( or Are you coming)
2. I'll join
3. we're taking ( or we'll take)
4. I'll check
5. you'll be working
6. It'll only take
7. The bus will have arrived
8. I'm going to use
9. are you going
10. I'm playing
11. You're meeting
12. will I do
13. Aren't you going to see ( or Aren't you seeing)
14. I'll invite
15. She's coming
16. She'll have
17. You'll be enjoying
18. Won't she be
19. she won't have been travelling
20. I'll make
21. I'm going to cook (emphatic)
22. I'll prepare

23. you'll have barely started

24. We'll order

25. The bus leaves

26. I'll look

Plans for the Day

Lucy: (1) Are you going to come ( or Are you coming) with me to the lake today?

Charles: I've finished my work, so (2) I'll join you, yes. Shall I drive?

Lucy: No, (3) we're taking ( or we'll take) the bus. The car is making funny noises.

Charles: (4) I'll check it out, maybe I can fix it.

Lucy: Oh, don't – (5) you'll be working on the car for hours!

Charles: (6) It'll only take a few minutes, I'm sure.

Lucy: (7) The bus will have arrived before you finish.

Charles: But (8) I'm going to use the car this evening, too. I'd best get it working.

Lucy: This evening? Where (9) are you going ?

Charles: (10) I'm playing poker at Gilbert's, from 8 o'clock until late.

Lucy: (11) You're meeting your friends? What (12) will I do?

Charles: (13) Aren't you going to see ( or Aren't you seeing) a play this evening?

Lucy: Oh no, that was cancelled weeks ago. Perhaps (14) I'll invite Janet round. (15) She's coming back from Ireland today.

Charles: Great! (16) She'll have lots of stories, I'd like to see her.

Lucy: But (17) you'll be enjoying your game instead.

Charles: Maybe she could come another day. (18) Won't she be tired this evening?

Lucy: Ireland isn't far – (19) she won't have been travelling too long. And (20) I'll make her some dinner.

Charles: A meal, too? No – (21) I'm going to cook this evening, and (22) I'll prepare more for you two.

Lucy: (23) You'll have barely started before you have to go to poker, I'm sure! It's fine. (24) We'll order a takeaway, if we have to. Now, are you coming to the lake? (25) The bus leaves in around ten minutes.

Charles: Okay, okay! (26) I'll look at the car later.

19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

19.15 Answers

The future tenses can be flexible, so the answers below are recommended based on the tense, with explanations. In most cases the will / to be going to / present continuous forms may be interchangeable or may not impact the meaning significantly. There is also some flexibility between the simple and continuous forms shifting focus from the arranged event to the process. This is one reason that the present continuous form is so useful for future meanings, as it describes an arrangement and also a process.

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. finishes (present simple – scheduled)
2. has (present simple – scheduled)
3. is going to (future simple – arrangement)

4. is going to study (future simple – arrangement)
5. will last (future simple or present simple – scheduled)
6. qualifies (present simple – time clause)
7. is going to get (future simple – arrangement)
8. is working (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
9. is going to save (future simple – determined arrangement)
10. is letting (future simple – arrangement)
11. is travelling (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
12. is not working (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
13. will be exploring (future continuous – process)
14. meets (present simple – time clause)
15. will have been travelling (future perfect continuous – duration)
16. will have visited (future perfect – completed event)
17. is continuing (future simple or continuous – arrangement / process)
18. will come (future simple – arrangement)
19. have seen (future perfect – completed event)
20. will travel (future simple – arrangement)
21. will make (future simple – arrangement)
22. will be swimming (future continuous – process)
23. hiking (future continuous – process)
24. stays (present simple – time clause)
25. is going to read (future simple – arrangement)
26. moves (present simple – time clause)
27. will have completed (future perfect – completed event)
28. meets (present simple – possibility)

#### Summer Plans

Amber (1) finishes school in the middle of July. She (2) has three months of holiday, then she (3) is going to university in the autumn. She (4) is going to study Law in Oxford. The course (5) will last four years, and once she (6) qualifies Amber (7) is going to get a job in London.

Over the summer, Amber (8) is working in the local garden centre. She (9) is going to save money for university, and also to travel. The garden centre (10) is letting her take two weeks off in August. During that break, she (11) is travelling to France with her friends, Holly and Jaime.

All three friends have different plans for the trip. Holly (12) is not working this summer, and (13) will be exploring Europe for two months. When Amber (14) meets her in France, she (15) will have been travelling for three weeks already. She (16) will have visited Germany and Italy, and after France she (17) is continuing to Spain.

Jaime only has one week of holiday, so she (18) will come later, after Amber and Holly (19) have seen Paris. They (20) will travel south together, to stay by a lake. Amber hopes it (21) will make her fit before university, as the girls (22) will be swimming and (23) hiking every day – as long the weather (24) stays good. She (25) is going to read books to prepare for her course, too. By the time Amber (26) moves to Oxford, she (27) will have completed all the advance reading.

Unless she (28) meets a nice young man to distract her!

#### 19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

#### 19.16 Answers

The future tenses can be flexible, so the answers below are recommended based on the tense, with explanations. In most cases the *will* / *to be going to* / *present continuous* may be interchangeable or may not impact the meaning significantly. One form can be more appropriate than another, however, for example when using *to be going to* to emphasise determination, or *will* to show casual plans that we may not be fully certain about. There is also flexibility between the simple and perfect forms, as the perfect tense is rarely absolutely necessary.

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. hits
2. will finish
3. will study
4. are testing
5. are going to finalise
6. will go
7. are going to host
8. will be serving
9. will be wearing
10. will not complete
11. will be making
12. will have been playing
13. is not going to complain
14. are going to release
15. have not been corrected
16. will have invested
17. will give
18. will not have tried
19. are going to make
20. will be
21. will have been working
22. will celebrate
23. will change
24. are going to dress
25. are going to ask
26. will happen
27. will entertain
28. will have fixed

## An End in Sight

The computer game *Badger Spies* (1) hits the shelves in three months. Over the next month, the developers (2) will finish building the game so they can test it. Beta players (3) will study the game in detail, trying to spot problems. While they (4) are testing the game, the marketing team (5) are going to finalise an ambitious marketing campaign.

*Badger Spies* (6) will go on sale in thirteen countries, to start with, including the USA, the UK and Germany. The developers (7) are going to host a big launch party for the many releases, where they (8) will be serving food and drinks inspired by the game. The staff at the party (9) will be wearing costumes from the *Badger Spies* world.

Not everyone is in a party mood, though. One designer, Rupert, worries they (10) will not complete the game in time. He expects he (11) will be making improvements until the last minute, which means the beta players (12) will have been playing an incomplete version for months before they report. He (13) is not going to complain to the team leader about it, though. They (14) are going to release the game on the set date, even if the mistakes (15) have not been corrected. The company (16) will have invested too much time and money in the marketing to slow down.

Rupert worries about the marketing campaign, too. It (17) will give people the wrong impression of the game, he thinks. The marketing team (18) will not have tried the game, and have not discussed it with the design team. The boss announced, with great determination, that they (19) are going to make it sexy. Rupert does not think *Badger Spies* (20) will be a sexy game.

Maybe he just feels negative because he is tired. By the time the game is out, Rupert and his team (21) will have been working on the project for almost three years. Whether the game is good or not, he (22) will celebrate finally being able to do something else. But the rest of the team are optimistic. The boss says *Badger Spies* (23) will change everything – children (24) are going to dress in badger costumes and movie producers (25) are going to ask for the rights to make a film. Rupert does hope all of that (26) will happen. Mostly, though, he hopes the game (27) will entertain people, and that by the release day they (28) will have fixed all the errors.

### 19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

#### 20.1 Answers

1. Completed action
2. Future action
3. Future action
4. Present rule
5. Present rule
6. Present state
7. Completed action
8. Present rule
9. Future action
10. Completed action
11. Future action
12. Past state
13. Present state
14. Future action
15. Completed action
16. Future state
17. Present rule
18. Future state

19. Completed action

20. Past state

20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

20.2 Answers

1. Future arrangement
2. Temporary / ongoing process
3. Temporary / ongoing process
4. Temporary / ongoing process
5. Process of change
6. Future arrangement
7. Emphatic repeated action
8. Emphatic repeated action
9. Future arrangement
10. Temporary / ongoing process
11. Temporary / ongoing process
12. Temporary / ongoing process
13. Future arrangement
14. Temporary / ongoing process
15. Process of change
16. Process of change
17. Temporary / ongoing process
18. Temporary / ongoing process
19. Future arrangement
20. Temporary / ongoing process

20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

20.3 Answers

1. Past affecting the present
2. Ongoing state / activity
3. Past affecting the present
4. Past state duration
5. Past affecting the present
6. Ongoing state / activity
7. Completed at a past time
8. Completed at a future time
9. Completed at a past time

10. Past affecting the present
11. Duration of ongoing activity
12. Past state duration
13. Completed at a future time
14. Ongoing state / activity
15. Completed at a future time
16. Past state duration
17. Completed at a past time
18. Duration of ongoing activity

#### 20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

#### 20.4 Answers

1. Present process started in the past
2. Duration of present process
3. Completed past process
4. Duration of future process
5. Present process started in the past
6. Duration of future process
7. Duration of present process
8. Completed past process
9. Duration of present process
10. Completed past process
11. Duration of future process
12. Completed past process
13. Duration of future process
14. Present process started in the past
15. Duration of present process
16. Present process started in the past
17. Duration of future process
18. Present process started in the past
19. Duration of present process
20. Completed past process

#### 20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

#### 20.5 Answers

- 1.

- a. Dave is driving to work, so he cannot answer his phone.
- b. Dave drove to work and has parked under the tree.
- c. Dave was driving to work when he heard the news on the radio.
- d. Dave drives to work most days, but not today.

2.

- a. The museum opened to the public last December.
- b. The museum opens on Tuesdays at 8 a.m.
- c. The museum has opened a new wing where you can see old costumes.
- d. The museum was opening late on Thursdays until funding ran out.

3.

- a. That student has read everything on the reading list already.
- b. The student is reading what looks like a very long book.
- c. The student read ten books last month.
- d. The student had read the book before class started.

4.

- a. Becca wanted to travel but could not afford it.
- b. Becca has wanted to travel since she was very young.
- c. Becca is travelling around Europe right now.
- d. Becca was travelling through Spain when her car broke down.

#### 20.5 Past Present Matching

#### 20.6 Answers

1. They paint the pier every year.
2. Norman is cleaning his house this week.
3. I have been listening to classical music since I was a child.
4. The fisherman caught a huge salmon last night.
5. We were discussing philosophy, but it became too confusing.
6. You were whistling a funny tune when you came in, what was it?
7. Look, the gardener has cut the heads off the roses!
8. Mr Willis bought two bags of potatoes but left one in the shop.
9. Were you outside when it rained? You look absolutely soaked.
10. Can you pass me the sugar? I am baking an apple pie.
11. The dogs have been digging holes again; look at that mess.
12. Why is Susan leaving? Stop her – we have dessert!
13. The reporter appeared tired, but kept talking anyway.
14. Someone has stolen my socks. They were here a second ago.



15. When I met the twins, I thought I was seeing double.

#### 20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

#### 20.7 Answers

1. Can I borrow your pen? I left mine at home.
2. A crowd is protesting in town because the council raised taxes.
3. My sister has invited me to tea, so I am buying flowers for her.
4. Has Bob finished that book he was reading?
5. The children were excited to see Aunt Maggie, as she always gave them chocolate.
6. Vivian always works late, that's why she wasn't home when we called.
7. School tests have been getting harder, so students have started complaining.
8. The door was locked earlier, so I still do not know how the burglar got in.
9. Robert is upset because he was not watching the game when his team scored.
10. We started running in the summer, but we have been going less often as the weather has worsened.
11. Are the potatoes not ready yet? Did you not turn on the oven before we went out? ( or Didn't you turn on the oven before we went out?)
12. Is Sue coming to the cinema? She has not joined us for months.
13. I washed the dishes yesterday. I am not washing them again today.
14. Frank's son wants to drive to Scotland, but he has not passed his driving test yet.
15. Is that woman climbing a tree now? She has been distracting us all morning!

#### 20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

#### 20.8 Answers

1. We are building a tree house so the children will play outside more often.
2. Daisy is coming home tomorrow, because her flight has been delayed.
3. Howard is waiting for the bus that arrives at eleven.
4. I have a book in my bag, which I will be reading when you arrive.
5. The men have loaded the truck already, so it will definitely get there on time.
6. Will it rain later? I hope not as I have not taken a coat.
7. Are you going to make tea after you wash those mugs? ( or Will you make / Are you making tea after you wash those mugs?)
8. The phone has been ringing all morning, I am going to disconnect it soon!
9. Who will win the race? It looks too close to tell.
10. I am going to the shop later. What do you want me to get?
11. Tyler is learning to ski but he will not be ready in time for the holiday. ( or Tyler is learning to ski but he is not going to be ready in time for the holiday.)
12. He will have been playing that old guitar for a year this October, I think it's time he got a new one.
13. Brittany washes her hair every day – she will not cope well when they go camping. ( or Brittany washes her hair every day – she is not going to cope well when they go camping.)

14. Look, the horses are racing across that field – we will never catch them!

15. The men will be delivering our new fridge in an hour, so I am trying to finish my work quickly.

#### 20.8 Present Future Cloze

#### 20.9 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. are eating
2. has been praising
3. has been
4. am getting
5. am going to fall asleep ( or will fall asleep)
6. is
7. will revive
8. don't know
9. makes
10. are you worrying
11. states
12. want
13. won't want ( or will not want)
14. is running
15. will have finished
16. will have lifted
17. am feeling
18. always feel
19. eat
20. have not been eating
21. is inspiring
22. has given
23. will teach ( or is going to teach)
24. will try
25. have been talking
26. have been setting up
27. is that man carrying
28. will find out ( or are going to find out)

It's 13.45 and Bilbo and Jam (1) are eating lunch together. Bilbo (2) has been praising the clown convention for twenty minutes already.

"The day (3) has been wonderful so far," he says.

"But I (4) am getting tired," Jam says. "I (5) am going to fall asleep during the afternoon talk."

"Nonsense! There (6) is a break before it. And the workshop after lunch (7) will revive you."

"I (8) don't know about that. Physical comedy (9) makes me very nervous."

"Why (10) are you worrying so much? The information pack (11) states that you can watch if you don't want to join in."

"But I (12) want to join in, right now. I only fear I (13) won't want to when everyone (14) is running around hitting their heads on planks."

"Well, by 2 p.m. we (15) will have finished this hearty meal and perhaps your spirits (16) will have lifted. I (17) am feeling much livelier already, myself."

"You (18) always feel lively, Bilbo. It might be because you (19) eat too much sugar."

"Ha! I (20) have not been eating any sugar for two months, in fact. I am lively because this conference (21) is inspiring me. The workshop on children (22) has given me lots of new ideas, and the talk on clown history (23) will teach us about what it takes to really succeed."

"Okay, okay. I (24) will try to enjoy the afternoon. I think that while we (25) have been talking, they (26) have been setting up the workshop. Why (27) is that man carrying two buckets of water?"

"We (28) will find out soon!"

#### 20.9 Present Future Narrative

#### 20.10 Answers

1. He was going to eat all the cake, but it was too much. ( or He would have eaten all the cake, but it was too much.)
2. They were going to buy a hot tub until they saw the running costs.
3. Shirley was going to go to university if she got the grades. ( or Shirley would go to university if she got the grades.)
4. She was going to learn to dance before the end of the year. ( or She would learn to dance before the end of the year.)
5. Our neighbours were going to repair the fence. ( or Our neighbours would repair the fence.)
6. I was going to travel to Germany for Oktoberfest. ( or I thought I would travel to Germany for Oktoberfest.)
7. The poster said it would start at 7 p.m. ( or The poster said it was going to start at 7 p.m.)
8. I was going to meet Geoff in the park. ( or I would meet Geoff in the park.)
9. They said it would rain. ( or They said it was going to rain.)
10. Uncle Jim was going to supply beer for the party.
11. Luke said he would not drink my tea.
12. Sam did not think she would pass her exams. ( or Sam thought she was not going to pass her exams.)

#### 20.10 Future in the Past

#### 20.11 Answers

1. A) I wrote B) my boss has asked
2. A) she saw B) Tess has been learning
3. A) it has been getting B) I am starting
4. A) who left B) Brian and Freda are arguing
5. A) it rained B) the bench is
6. A) they found B) our company is moving

7. A) she started B) Jenny drives
8. A) the woodland animals were B) Bernice has barely slept
9. A) my family came B) have lived
10. A) she was having B) the hot water ran out C) has stopped
11. A) we asked B) have they brought
12. A) I didn't see B) what are you drinking
13. A) the driver said B) are we riding C) we must exit
14. A) we studied B) who has completed
15. A) the dog was B) where is

#### 20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

#### 20.12 Answers

1. A) Dad is eating B) we are going
2. A) he is practising B) they will be expecting
3. A) the price seems B) I will buy
4. A) who is preparing B) Tyler is going to get
5. A) she is earning B) she will spend
6. A) I love chocolate B) it will make
7. A) I am making B) will you wear
8. A) are the police investigating B) will the thief escape
9. A) is the table B) not everyone will fit
10. A) I have not checked in B) Does the flight leave

#### 20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

#### 20.13 Answers

1. A) we are peeling B) they will be ready
2. X – simultaneous
3. A) the girl he met B) Ron is going to introduce
4. A) she failed B) she has been studying C) Mia is taking
5. A) that sign was not B) someone has put
6. A) and B) X – simultaneous (dark clouds suggest / storm is coming) C) will it strike
7. A) she ate B) when Wendy gets here C) we will ask
8. A) he added B) and C) X – simultaneous (The chef admits / he claims) D) he will not do
9. A) they broke B) they have not apologised C) the boys are not playing
10. A) she has been happily married B) Tina is publishing
11. A) What did that man say B) You have been sitting

12. A) Is Dermot ready B) is he going to train
13. A) My uncle gave B) I gave C) Does Cindy have
14. A) Had Pat tried B) he visited C) He orders
15. A) have you seen B) Will you come

20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

20.14 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been learning
2. has been ( or had been)
3. thought
4. lives
5. is working
6. goes
7. drives
8. teaches
9. said
10. has been listening
11. enjoys
12. watches
13. bought
14. had been playing
15. was enjoying
16. yearned
17. was saving
18. wished
19. was not earning
20. had been collecting
21. had planned ( or had been planning)
22. is doing ( or has been doing)
23. will help ( or are going to help)
24. will not have ( or is not going to have)
25. is going to come ( or will come / will be coming)
26. is going to find ( or will find)
27. will be playing ( or is going to be playing)

Emily's Piano

Emily (1) has been learning to play the piano for eight months. It (2) has been ( or had been) a dream of hers for many years, but she never (3) thought it would be possible until last November. She (4) lives with her parents in a small house and, for now, she (5) is working as a waitress before she (6) goes to university. Her father (7) drives buses and her mother (8) teaches in the local school. The family live comfortably, but her father (9) said they had no space or money for a piano.

Still, Emily (10) has been listening to piano concertos since she was a child, and (11) enjoys reading books about musicians and music theory. She (12) watches all the online videos about piano tuition that she can find. When she was little, her parents (13) bought her a miniature keyboard. She (14) had been playing on it every day for years when the keyboard broke. But by then she (15) was enjoying school and parties too much to care.

As Emily got older, she (16) yearned to play music again. While she (17) was saving money to continue her education, she secretly (18) wished for a piano instead. She (19) was not earning enough for both, though. Then, in November, her father revealed that he (20) had been collecting extra money himself. Emily's parents (21) had planned ( or had been planning) to buy her a piano as a gift before university, all along! They even paid for lessons, and now Emily (22) is doing ( or has been doing) so well that they (23) will help ( or are going to help) her to continue once she moves to university. She (24) will not have ( or is not going to have) space at university for a piano, but (25) is going to come ( or will come / will be coming) home every other weekend, and is sure she (26) is going to find ( or will find) a piano somewhere on campus. In fact, Emily is certain she (27) will be playing ( or is going to be playing) piano for many years to come.

#### 20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

#### 20.15 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been watching
2. have been getting
3. has improved
4. have also been changing
5. did not like
6. prefer
7. had been following
8. came
9. would have considered
10. started
11. spread
12. will continue
13. has quickly made ( or is quickly making)
14. likes
15. enjoys
16. have already bought
17. has not read
18. is looking
19. will meet
20. has had
21. will help
22. will give

23. thinks
24. will not turn
25. does not believe
26. are going to invade
27. sounded
28. will be talking

#### Wizards and Dragons

For the past few weeks, Bernice (1) has been watching a new television show about wizards and dragons. Such fantasy shows (2) have been getting more popular in recent years. This is partly because technology (3) has improved enough to make fantasy more realistic. But attitudes to fantasy (4) have also been changing. Bernice (5) did not like fantasy before; she and her friends usually (6) prefer shows about crime and mysteries. They (7) had been following a seaside detective drama for five years, before this fantasy show (8) came along. None of them (9) would have considered fairy tales seriously before.

Then, everyone (10) started talking about this new show. It (11) spread across the internet, and (12) will continue to spread even more when the new series arrives. The popularity of the show (13) has quickly made ( or is quickly making) it cool to like fantasy. Bernice (14) likes that, because she really (15) enjoys the show.

In fact, Bernice and her friends (16) have already bought all the books that accompany the show. She (17) has not read any yet, but (18) is looking forward to them. Their group (19) will meet and discuss the books, once everyone (20) has had a chance to read some. The books (21) will help them understand the wider story of the television show, and (22) will give them an idea of what to expect in future. Bernice (23) thinks that the wizards (24) will not turn evil, and she (25) does not believe the theories that zombies (26) are going to invade the fantasy world. That (27) sounded be silly.

Whatever happens next, Bernice is sure they (28) will be talking about this show for many years to come!

#### 20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

#### 20.16 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. is being
2. is not moving
3. will return
4. is getting
5. has served
6. is not closing
7. will upgrade
8. does this mean
9. puts
10. are bringing
11. will strengthen
12. will close
13. have given
14. will buzz

15. form
16. are creating
17. listened
18. responded
19. are eagerly awaiting
20. will have closed
21. will sit
22. is working

#### A New Library

The Worthing Library (1) is being relocated later this year. It (2) is not moving far, and it (3) will return soon enough – new and improved. The reason: the existing building (4) is getting renovated. The current library (5) has served the community since 1975, so locals are happy that it (6) it is not closing for good. With the improvements, it (7) will upgrade its status to a “community hub”. What (8) does this mean ?

This concept (9) puts public buildings at the heart of the community; the council (10) are bringing many services together in one place. This (11) will strengthen the community aspect of the library, although buildings offering other services (12) will close .

In remodelling the library, the designers (13) have given consideration to quiet and private spaces, but the “hub” (14) will buzz with other activity. Sarah Blemming, involved in the project, said, “Libraries (15) form the heart of a community. We (16) are creating something that embraces and celebrates that.”

During the public consultation, the council (17) listened to various proposals for how to remodel the library. The public (18) responded very favourably, and now (19) are eagerly awaiting the results. By the time the community hub is complete, the council (20) will have closed the library for six months. But the relocated services (21) will sit just across the road. Meanwhile, the council (22) is working with more partners to identify other locations for community hubs.

#### 20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

#### 20.17 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. has been hosting
2. looks
3. bought
4. has been maintaining
5. raised
6. are now raising
7. has spread
8. have settled
9. are living
10. would not come
11. is becoming ( or has been becoming)
12. have learned
13. will not recover
14. will have been flying



15. will they have done
16. did not want
17. has come up with
18. does not work
19. has been studying
20. bought
21. is arranging
22. will drive
23. has gathered
24. will have been travelling
25. will cause
26. does not mind
27. is going to spend

#### Holiday Plans

Gerry Davies (1) has been hosting family Christmas celebrations at his mountain lodge for the past twelve years. The lodge is in the French Alps and (2) looks beautiful surrounded by snow. Gerry (3) bought it in 1973, and (4) has been maintaining it himself, ever since. He (5) raised two children who have married and (6) are now raising his five grandchildren. The extended family (7) has spread out across Europe: Gerry lives in England, but his son's family (8) have settled in Scotland, and his daughter's family (9) are living in Ukraine while she completes a teaching contract.

Gerry was worried that his family (10) would not come to France this Christmas. Last year, his children said that it (11) is becoming less and less desirable to travel in the holiday, as they (12) have learned terrible things about global warming. His daughter says frequent flying damages the planet, and it (13) will not recover. They (14) will have been flying to France every Christmas for thirteen years, next year! How much damage (15) will they have done by then?

But Gerry (16) did not want to lose these special times with his family, and he (17) has come up with a solution. He (18) does not work anymore, so he has lots of free time. For the past few months, he (19) has been studying all the latest information about the healthiest ways to travel. He (20) bought an electric car last week and for the next Christmas he (21) is arranging for his family to meet him via train at convenient locations. He (22) will drive them the rest of the way to the mountain lodge. By the time everyone (23) has gathered for Christmas, he (24) will have been travelling for two weeks himself, but it (25) will cause minimal harm to the environment. And Gerry (26) does not mind collecting everyone. It means he (27) is going to spend even more time with his family!

#### 20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

#### 20.18 Answers

The complete correct text follows the numbered answers below.

1. gathered
2. had been
3. have been hiding
4. is lying
5. have been practising
6. had not heard
7. was going to reveal

8. wanted
9. did not murder
10. are searching
11. has not made
12. have been feeling
13. have been working
14. swear
15. was working
16. did he have ( or does he have)
17. were going to defend
18. are all conspiring
19. Are you going to explain
20. had avoided
21. will not tolerate
22. am going to leave
23. is not coming
24. instructed
25. Is he related
26. Will you talk
27. did you find
28. were asking ( or asked)
29. did not say
30. were drinking
31. were you discussing
32. had discovered
33. were
34. were going to pour
35. had not seen
36. did not know
37. would inherit
38. pulled out
39. will survive
40. had been waiting
41. had heard
42. am arresting

## Murder Mystery

Detective Stevens (1) gathered the manor guests in the games room, along with the butler, the cleaner and the cook. There were eight people left, now that three others (2) had been killed.

“People (3) have been hiding their true identities,” Detective Stevens announced.

“Yes!” the butler said. “Dr Julian is lying about being a heart surgeon!”

“How insulting!” said Dr Julian. “I (5) have been practising surgery for ten years!”

“When I phoned the hospital this morning, they (6) had not heard of him.”

Dr Julian was trapped. “Very well. But I (7) was going to reveal the truth before leaving, honestly. I am a bank clerk – I only (8) wanted to impress Miss Tatiana! But I (9) did not murder her! And if we (10) are searching for liars, what about the cook? He (11) has not made a good meal all weekend!”

“I (12) have been feeling unwell,” the cook said. “But I (13) have been working here since the manor opened, I (14) swear .”

“He (15) was working here when I arrived,” the cleaner confirmed. “And what reason (16) did he have to kill Miss Tatiana, Mr Fredericks or the manager, Mr Bollier?”

“Ah ha!” Detective Stevens said. “I thought you (17) were going to defend him. You (18) are all conspiring together. The house staff and ... Colonel Stamp! (19) Are you going to explain , or shall I?”

Colonel Stamp, who (20) had avoided attention until then, looked worried. He said, “I (21) will not tolerate this, no. I (22) am going to leave as soon as my driver arrives.”

“But your driver (23) is not coming ,” Detective Stevens said. “I (24) instructed him to take the night off. You see, Colonel Stamp is, in fact, Lemuel Bollier!”

“Bollier?” said the final guest, Mrs Smythe. “ (25) Is he related to the manager?”

“(26) Will you talk , now, Lemuel? Your secret is out.”

“How (27) did you find out?” Colonel Stamp – actually Lemuel Bollier – said.

“Simple,” Detective Stevens said. “When we dined on Friday night, you (28) were asking many strange questions about the manor. And you (29) did not say anything about your own history. While we (30) were drinking brandy in the parlour, Miss Tatiana saw you talking with the cook and the butler. What (31) were you discussing , I wonder?”

“I (32) had discovered a draught in my room and wished to be moved!”

“There (33) were no other rooms available, until Mr Fredericks died. Indeed, you requested a change because you (34) were going to pour poison through the floorboards, onto the manager while he slept! Your father, who (35) had not seen you since childhood, and (36) did not know you (37) would inherit his manor. Having promised to reward all the house staff!”

Lemuel Bollier (38) pulled out a gun. “Very well, it is all true. But no one (39) will survive to tell the story.”

The doors burst open. Police officers (40) had been waiting in the hall, and (41) had heard everything. The criminals were trapped. Detective Stevens said, “Lemuel Bollier, I (42) am arresting you for murder.”

## 20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

### 21.1 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Past simple (regular)
3. Past simple (irregular)
4. Bare infinitive
5. Past simple (regular)

6. Bare infinitive
7. Bare infinitive
8. Past simple (regular)
9. Past simple (irregular)
10. Bare infinitive
11. Bare infinitive
12. Past simple (regular)

#### 21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

#### 21.2 Answers

1. Present simple
2. Bare infinitive
3. Bare infinitive
4. Present simple
5. Present simple
6. Bare infinitive
7. Bare infinitive
8. Present simple
9. Bare infinitive
10. Bare infinitive (imperative)
11. Present simple
12. Bare infinitive (imperative)

#### 21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

#### 21.3 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Bare infinitive
3. Present simple
4. Past simple (regular)
5. Bare infinitive
6. Past simple (irregular)
7. Past simple (irregular)
8. Present simple
9. Bare infinitive
10. Bare infinitive
11. Present simple

12. Past simple (irregular)

### 21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

#### 22.1 Answers

1. We have been living here for twenty years. (Past participle)
2. What kind of nuts did you use in this meal? (Bare infinitive)
3. I will be waiting for your return. (Bare infinitive)
4. They have had enough of the loud music now. (Present auxiliary)
5. The internet has had a huge impact on the way we interact. (Past participle)
6. Will you direct me to the nearest post office? (Bare infinitive)
7. I have beaten the eggs; now to complete the cake. (Past participle)
8. The criminal had broken the window twice before they found him. (Past participle – passive tense)
9. We will have visited Grandma before Christmas Day. (Past participle)
10. You must mend the garden shed before it collapses. (Bare infinitive)
11. When they have mastered the art of dancing, they will try fencing. (Past participle)
12. Julio ran through the bath-house naked, because Frank had stolen his robe. (Past participle)

#### 22.1 Past Participles

#### 22.2 Answers

1. He had peeled all the potatoes, ready for dinner. (Past participle)
2. We were singing too loudly, that's why they complained. (Present participle)
3. Have they been watching us for long? (Present participle)
4. Give me a hand with this log – I can't move it myself. (Bare infinitive)
5. The plumber had worked on the sink all morning. (Past participle)
6. I have been studying for hours; I need a break. (Present participle)
7. She will slip on the ice, in those silly shoes. (Bare infinitive)
8. Hans was reading when his chair collapsed. (Present participle)
9. Are you seriously wearing that jacket again? (Present participle)
10. Smoking is not allowed here. (Present participle – used as a noun)
11. Will the game have finished by the time we get there? (Past participle)
12. I will be there in a minute, I am just cleaning this cup! (Present participle)

#### 22.2 Present Participles

#### 23.1 Answers

1. Bare infinitive
2. Past participle
3. Bare infinitive
4. Bare infinitive

5. Present participle
6. Past participle
7. Bare infinitive
8. Bare infinitive
9. Past participle
10. Bare infinitive
11. Present participle
12. Past participle
13. Past participle
14. Bare infinitive
15. Bare infinitive
16. Past participle
17. Present participle
18. Bare infinitive
19. Bare infinitive
20. Present participle

#### 23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

#### 23.2 Answers

1. When will you be catching the train? (Present participle)
2. Jamie can't dance , she's too old! (Bare infinitive)
3. I have never made so many sandwiches in all my life. (Past participle)
4. What did he ask you about? (Bare infinitive)
5. Is this group of gymnasts performing all month? (Present participle)
6. Why Kylie had taken the biscuits, no one knew. (Past participle)
7. The canaries will have escaped , the cage door was left open! (Past participle)
8. You will have been learning all this for nothing, if you don't apply it later. (Present participle)
9. I cannot bear to think about the war. (Bare infinitive)
10. Can you whistle ? (Bare infinitive)
11. It was snowing when we left the house, but it has stopped now. (Present participle, past participle)
12. Why did that shop assistant give you so much trouble? (Bare infinitive)
13. Have you been looking for these hairclips? (Present participle)
14. She couldn't afford any more pork scratchings. (Bare infinitive)
15. Has your business grown much since we last met? (Past participle)
16. That man has played his last game of chess, he's banned now. (Past participle)

17. It was tragic that the game was cancelled when they were winning . (Present participle)

18. Do you think you will pass all of your modules at university? (Bare infinitive)

19. We are completing our assignments next week. (Present participle)

20. Have I written enough about the seaside? (Past participle)

### 23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

#### 23.3 Answers

1. I don't want any more muesli.
2. He is flying to Norway.
3. Jane will be very happy with the results.
4. The students have handed in their final project.
5. What do the parrots look like?
6. Why have you broken my favourite mug?
7. Where are you going to put your bag?
8. It must have been difficult to learn Chinese.
9. Have you seen this new chair I bought?
10. She was thinking of phoning her mum.

### 23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

#### Full Exercise List

#### Tense Forms

#### Forming the Past

##### 1. Past Simple

##### 1.1 Past Simple Statements

##### 1.2 Past Simple Questions 1

##### 1.3 Past Simple Questions 2

##### 1.4 Past Simple Negative Questions

##### 1.5 Mixed Past Simple

##### 1. Past Continuous

##### 2.1 Past Continuous Statements

##### 2.2 Past Continuous Questions 1

##### 2.3 Past Continuous Questions 2

##### 2.4 Past Continuous Negative Questions

##### 2.5 Mixed Past Continuous

##### 1. Past Perfect

##### 3.1 Past Perfect Statements

##### 3.2 Past Perfect Questions 1

3.3 Past Perfect Questions 2

3.4 Past Perfect Negative Questions

3.5 Mixed Past Perfect

1. Past Perfect Continuous

4.1 Past Perfect Continuous Statements

4.2 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 1

4.3 Past Perfect Continuous Questions 2

4.4 Past Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

4.5 Mixed Past Perfect Continuous

Forming the Present

1. Present Simple

5.1 Present Simple Statements

5.2 Present Simple Questions 1

5.3 Present Simple Questions 2

5.4 Present Simple Negative Questions

5.5 Mixed Present Simple

1. Present Continuous

6.1 Present Continuous Statements

6.2 Present Continuous Questions 1

6.3 Present Continuous Questions 2

6.4 Present Continuous Negative Questions

6.5 Mixed Present Continuous

1. Present Perfect

7.1 Present Perfect Statements

7.2 Present Perfect Questions 1

7.3 Present Perfect Questions 2

7.4 Present Perfect Negative Questions

7.5 Mixed Present Perfect

1. Present Perfect Continuous

8.1 Present Perfect Continuous Statements

8.2 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 1

8.3 Present Perfect Continuous Questions 2

8.4 Present Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

8.5 Mixed Present Perfect Continuous



## Forming the Future

### 1. Future Simple

#### 9.1 Future Simple Statements

#### 9.2 Future Simple Questions 1

#### 9.3 Future Simple Questions 2

#### 9.4 Future Simple Negative Questions

#### 9.5 Mixed Future Simple

### 1. Future Continuous

#### 10.1 Future Continuous Statements

#### 10.2 Future Continuous Questions 1

#### 10.3 Future Continuous Questions 2

#### 10.4 Future Continuous Negative Questions

#### 10.5 Mixed Future Continuous

### 1. Future Perfect

#### 11.1 Future Perfect Statements

#### 11.2 Future Perfect Questions 1

#### 11.3 Future Perfect Questions 2

#### 11.4 Future Perfect Negative Questions

#### 11.5 Mixed Future Perfect

### 1. Future Perfect Continuous

#### 12.1 Future Perfect Continuous Statements

#### 12.2 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 1

#### 12.3 Future Perfect Continuous Questions 2

#### 12.4 Future Perfect Continuous Negative Questions

#### 12.5 Mixed Future Perfect Continuous

## Forming Mixed Tenses

### 1. Mixed Simple Tenses

#### 13.1 Simple Tenses Scramble

#### 13.2 Simple Questions

#### 13.3 Simple Negative Questions

#### 13.4 Mixed Simple Corrections

#### 13.5 Mixed Simple Tenses

### 1. Mixed Continuous Tenses

#### 14.1 Continuous Tenses Scramble

14.2 Continuous Questions

14.3 Continuous Negative Questions

14.4 Continuous Contractions

14.5 Mixed Continuous Corrections

14.6 Mixed Continuous Tenses

1. Mixed Perfect Tenses

15.1 Perfect Tenses Scramble

15.2 Perfect Questions 1

15.3 Perfect Questions 2

15.4 Negative Perfect Questions

15.5 Perfect Contractions

15.6 Mixed Perfect Corrections

15.7 Mixed Perfect Tenses

1. Mixed Perfect Continuous Tenses

16.1 Perfect Continuous Scramble

16.2 Perfect Continuous Questions 1

16.3 Perfect Continuous Questions 2

16.4 Negative Perfect Continuous Questions

16.5 Perfect Continuous Contractions

16.6 Mixed Perfect Continuous Corrections

16.7 Mixed Perfect Continuous

Tenses in Use

1. The Past in Use

17.1 Complete or Process 1

17.2 Complete or Process 2

17.3 Complete or Process 3

17.4 Past States 1

17.5 Past States 2

17.6 Past Sequences 1

17.7 Past Sequences 2

17.8 Processes in the Past

17.9 Mixed Past Simple in Use

17.10 Mixed Past Continuous in Use

17.11 Mixed Past Perfect in Use

17.12 Mixed Past Matching

17.13 Past Time Sequences

17.14 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Times

17.15 Past Tenses in Use: Identifying Uses

17.16 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

17.17 Past Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

1. The Present in Use

18.1 Timeless or Temporary 1

18.2 Timeless or Temporary 2

18.3 Present States

18.4 Mixed Simple or Continuous

18.5 Past and Present Complete Actions

18.6 Past and Present Continuous Actions

18.7 Past Present Emphasis

18.8 Duration in the Present 1

18.9 Duration in the Present 2

18.10 Duration in the Present 3

18.11 Present Continuous Emphasis

18.12 Mixed Present Matching

18.13 Present Time Sequences

18.14 Present Tenses in Use: Present Narration

18.15 Present Tenses in Use: Routines

18.16 Present Tenses in Use: Live Reporting

18.17 Present Tenses in Use: Rules and Instructions

1. The Future in Use

19.1 Future Simple Will or to Be Going to

19.2 Future Simple with Present Simple or Continuous

19.3 Mixed Future Simple

19.4 Future Processes

19.5 Future Sequences

19.6 Duration in the Future 1

19.7 Duration in the Future 2

19.8 Mixed Future Matching

19.9 Future Time Sequences

19.10 Mixed Future Tenses 1

19.11 Mixed Future Tenses 2

19.12 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 1

19.13 Future Tenses in Use: Schedule 2

19.14 Future Tenses in Use: Making Plans

19.15 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 1

19.16 Future Tenses in Use: Narrative 2

1. Mixed Tenses in Use

20.1 Simple Tenses Uses

20.2 Continuous Tenses Uses

20.3 Perfect Tenses Uses

20.4 Perfect Continuous Tenses Uses

20.5 Past Present Matching

20.6 Past Present Cloze 1

20.7 Past Present Cloze 2

20.8 Present Future Cloze

20.9 Present Future Narrative

20.10 Future in the Past

20.11 Time Sequences: Past and Present

20.12 Time Sequences: Present and Future

20.13 Time Sequences: Mixed Tenses

20.14 Mixed Tenses 1: Narrative

20.15 Mixed Tenses 2: Narrative

20.16 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

20.17 Mixed Tenses 5: Narrative

20.18 Mixed Tenses 3: Narrative

Infinitives and Participles

1. Identifying Bare Infinitives

21.1 Past Bare Infinitives

21.2 Present Bare Infinitives

21.3 Mixed Bare Infinitives

1. Participles

22.1 Past Participles

22.2 Present Participles

1. Mixed Verb Types

23.1 Identifying Bare Infinitives and Participles

23.2 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 1

23.3 Mixed Infinitives and Participles 2

A Note from the Author

Also by Phil Williams

Answers

1.1 Answers

1.2 Answers

1.3 Answers

1.4 Answers

1.5 Answers

2.1 Answers

2.2 Answers

2.3 Answers

2.4 Answers

2.5 Answers

3.1 Answers

3.2 Answers

3.3 Answers

3.4 Answers

3.5 Answers

4.1 Answers

4.2 Answers

4.3 Answers

4.4 Answers

4.5 Answers

5.1 Answers

5.2 Answers

5.3 Answers

5.4 Answers

5.5 Answers

6.1 Answers

6.2 Answers

6.3 Answers

6.4 Answers

6.5 Answers

7.1 Answers

7.2 Answers

7.3 Answers

7.4 Answers

7.5 Answers

8.1 Answers

8.2 Answers

8.3 Answers

8.4 Answers

8.5 Answers

9.1 Answers

9.2 Answers

9.3 Answers

9.4 Answers

9.5 Answers

10.1 Answers

10.2 Answers

10.3 Answers

10.4 Answers

10.5 Answers

11.1 Answers

11.2 Answers

11.3 Answers

11.4 Answers

11.5 Answers

12.1 Answers

12.2 Answers

12.3 Answers

12.4 Answers

12.5 Answers

13.1 Answers

13.2 Answers

13.3 Answers

13.4 Answers

13.5 Answers

14.1 Answers

14.2 Answers

14.3 Answers

14.4 Answers

14.5 Answers

14.6 Answers

15.1 Answers

15.2 Answers

15.3 Answers

15.4 Answers

15.5 Answers

15.6 Answers

15.7 Answers

16.1 Answers

16.2 Answers

16.3 Answers

16.4 Answers

16.5 Answers

16.6 Answers

16.7 Answers

17.1 Answers

17.2 Answers

17.3 Answers

17.4 Answers

17.5 Answers

17.6 Answers

17.7 Answers

17.8 Answers

17.9 Answers

17.10 Answers

17.11 Answers

17.12 Answers

17.13 Answers

17.14 Answers

17.15 Answers

17.16 Answers

17.17 Answers

18.1 Answers

18.2 Answers

18.3 Answers

18.4 Answers

18.5 Answers

18.6 Answers

18.7 Answers

18.8 Answers

18.9 Answers

18.10 Answers

18.11 Answers

18.12 Answers

18.13 Answers

18.14 Answers

18.15 Answers

18.16 Answers

18.17 Answers

19.1 Answers

19.2 Answers

19.3 Answers

19.4 Answers

19.5 Answers

19.6 Answers

19.7 Answers

19.8 Answers

19.9 Answers

19.10 Answers

19.11 Answers

19.12 Answers

19.13 Answers



19.14 Answers

19.15 Answers

19.16 Answers

20.1 Answers

20.2 Answers

20.3 Answers

20.4 Answers

20.5 Answers

20.6 Answers

20.7 Answers

20.8 Answers

20.9 Answers

20.10 Answers

20.11 Answers

20.12 Answers

20.13 Answers

20.14 Answers

20.15 Answers

20.16 Answers

20.17 Answers

20.18 Answers

21.1 Answers

21.2 Answers

21.3 Answers

22.1 Answers

22.2 Answers

23.1 Answers

23.2 Answers

23.3 Answers

Copyright

Copyright © 2019 by Phil Williams

The moral right of Phil Williams to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All the characters in this book are fictitious, and any resemblance to actual persons living or dead is purely coincidental.

All rights reserved.

This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

ISBN: 978-1-913468-07-1

Cover design by Phil Williams

Cover images © Bob Wright, © schiva (Depositphotos)